Arthur Rider his Book 1705

Dec 1st 6

B Parker Scrapbook 1892

Centennial Works

Birch Birch Bir Richard

Sennertus Works. Vol. 3

Practical Physick;

THE THIRD BOOK, IN FOURTEEN PARTS

Part I. Of Diseases of the Stomach and Gullet.
Part II. Of Diseases and Symptoms of the Gut.
Part III. Of the Diseases of the Mesentery, S[weet]-bread and Omentum.
Part IV. Of Preternatural Diseases of the Spleen.
Part V Of the Diseases of the Hypochondrion or side.
Part VI. Of the Scurvey.
Part VII. Of the Diseases & Symptoms of the Liver.
Part VIII. Of the Symptoms of the Liver.
Part IX. Of the Diseases of the Kidnies & Ureters.
Part X. Of the Symptoms of the Kidnies.
Part XI. Of preternatural Diseases of the Bladder.
Part XII. Of the Symptoms of the Bladder.
Part XIII. Of the Diseases of the Privities in Men.
Part XIV. Of Symptoms in the Privities, and Generation in Men.

By *Daniel Sennertus*, *N. Culpeper*, And *Abdiah Cole*, DOCTORS OF PHYSICK.

Being Part of the
Physitian's Library.

London, Printed by *Peter Cole*, Printer and Bookseller, at the Sign of the Printing-press in *Cornhill*, near the *Royal Exchange*. 1662.

The Printer to the Reader of this Third Book.

I think it needleſs to trouble the R[illegible] with any other Epiſtle to th[illegible] Book, Than what I printed before [illegible] firſt and ſecond Book of *Practical Phyſick* of this Author, which was in theſe words, *VIZ.*

FOr as much as in his *Majeſties Ships of War, and in Merchants Ships that go long Voyages, tending to the encreaſe of the honor and wealth of theſe Nations, united under his Majeſties juſt Government; the Surgeons (time out of mind) have ſupplied, and do ſtill ſupply the place of Phyſitians, for the Cure of all Diſeaſes incident to the Body of Man. They being generally ignorant or little skilled in the Latin Tongue. And becauſe in many remote parts of* England, Scotland *and* Ireland, *far diſtant from any eminent City or Town, there is want of Learned Phyſitians, ſo that Surgeons, Apothecaries, ingenious Ladies, and other charitable Gentlewomen, are fain to ſupply that defect. It hath been thought a very charitable, neceſſary, and meritorious work, to tranſlate the moſt profitable Phyſick-books into our Mother Tongue; whereupon in the time of Queen* Elizabeth *of famous Memory, I find there have been printed one hundred thirty and nine ſeveral Books in Engliſh*

of Physick and Chyrurgery. All which I can shew upon any good occasion (to such as shall desire to be satisfied therein) were printed before the year 1595. Also I will shew by whom, in what Volumn, and in what year they were printed. But finding almost all of them out of print, and not to be got with- great difficulty, I did resolve (with the assistance and ad- of very Learned men in that profession) to publish to the English the Works of Sennertus, Riverius, Platerus, Riolanus, Johnston, Culpeper, Cole, Ru- Fernelius. *All which are of excellent use, and than any of those heretofore printed in English.*

What parts of the aforesaid Authors are printed, you may see in the Catalogue of Physick Books, printed in the beginning of all the Books I have lately printed.

At the request of divers Friends, I intend to print all the Physick Books that I shal hereafter print in the same Volumn this is printed, That they may not be above the reach of a poor mans purse: and they may be carried about a man with ease.

For what is treated of in this small Book, I refer thee to the Contents printed before the Book.

Friendly Reader, *the Book is so full of Art as passes my power to express, be thou thy self Judge, And as thou findest, so express thy Gratitude to*

Thy Friend and Servant,

PETER COLE.

Several Physick Books of Nich. Culpeper.

Physitian and Astrologer, and Abdiah Cole *Doctor of Physick, commonly called,* The Physitian's Library, *containing all the Works in English of* Riverius, Sennertus, Riolanus, Bartholinus. *Viz.*

1. A GOLDEN Practice of Physick: after a new, easie and plain Method of knowing, foretelling, preventing, and curing all Diseases incident to the body of Man. Full of proper Observations and Remedies, both of Ancient and Modern Physitians. Being the fruit of one and thirty years Travel, and fifty years Practice of Physick. By Dr. *Plater*, Dr. *Cole*, and *Nich. Culpeper.*

2. *Bartholinus* Anatomy, with very many larger Brass Figures, than any other Anatomy in English.

3. *Sennertus* thirteen Books of Natural Philosophy: Or the Nature of all things in the world.

4. *Sennertus* Practical Physick; the first Book in three Parts. 1. Of the *Head.* 2. Of the *Hurt* of [illegible] in ses 3. Of the [illegible] in five Sections.

5. *Sennertus* Practical Physick; the second Book, in four Parts. 1. Of the *Jaws* and *Mouth.* 2. Of the *Breast.* 3. Of the *Lungs.* 4. Of the *Heart.*

6. *Sennertus* Third Book of Practical Physick in fourteen Parts, treating, 1. Of the *Stomach* and *Gullet.* 2. Of the *Guts.* 3. Of the *Mesentery, Sweetbread* and *Omentum.* 4. Of the *Spleen.* 5. Of the *Side.* 6. Of the *Survey.* 7 and 8. Of the *Liver* 9 Of the *Ureters.* 10 Of the *Kidnies.* 11. and 12. Of the *Bladder.* 13. and 14 Of the *Privities* and Generation in men.

7. *Sennertus* Art of Chyrurgery in six Parts. 1. Of

Tumors. 2. Of Ulcers 3. Of the Skin, Hair, and Nuls. 4. Of Wounds, with an excellent Treatise of the Weapon Salve. 5. Of Fractures. 6. Of Luxations.

...inertus two Treatises. ...ox. 2. Of the Gout. ...of Practical Physick. ...Books.

...four Books of ...e of Physick, being the Works of that Learned and Renowned Doctor *Lazarus Riverius*, Physitian and Counsellor to the late King, &c.

11. *Veslingus* Anatomy of the Body of Man.

12. A Translation of the New Dispensatory, made by the Colledg of Physitians of *London*, in Folio and in Octavo. Whereunto is added, The Key of *Galen's* Method of Physick.

13. A Directory for Midwives, or a guide for women

14. *Galens* Art of Physick.

15. A new Method both of studying and practising Physick.

16. A Treatise of the Rickets.

17. Medicaments for the Poor: Or, Physick for the Common People.

18. Health for the Rich and Poor, by Diet without Physick

19. One thousand New, Famous and Rare Cures, in Folio and Octavo.

20. A Treatise of Pulses and Urins.

21. A Treatise of Bloodletting, and Cures performed thereby.

22. A Treatise of Scarification, and Cures performed thereby.

23. *Riolanus* Anatomy.

24. The English Physitian enlarged.

The *London Dispensatory* in Folio, of a great Caracter in Latin.

Divinity Books Printed by Peter Cole.

All Mr. *Bridge's* Works.

All Mr. *Hooker's* Works.

And Seventeen several Books of Mr. *Jeremiah Burroughs's.*

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK OF Practical Physick.

Of Diseases and Symptomes of the Lower Belly.

THE FIRST PART.

Of Diseases of the Gullet and Stomach.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of the Diseases of the Gullet* 1

Chap. 2. *Of Swallowing hurt* 7

Chap. 3 *Of strange things swallowed* 8

Chap. 4 *Of the Distemper of the Sto-*

Page

Stomach : of Diſtempers in general. 9

Chap. 5 *Of the cold Diſtemper of the Stomach* 10

Chap. 6 *Of the hot Diſtemper of the Stomach.* 13

Chap. 7 *Of the moiſt diſtemper of the Stomach* 15

Chap. 8 *Of a dry diſtemper in the Stomach* 16

Chap. 9 *Of compound Diſtempers of the Stomach* 17

Chap. 10 *Of Diſtempers of the Stomach with matter* 18

Of Tumors in the Stomach.

Chap. 11 *Of Inflation of the Stomach* 22

Chap. 12 *Of Inflammation of the Stomach* 23

Chap. 13 *Of cold Tumors in the Stomach* 27

Chap. 14 *Of the Extenuation, Straitneſs, Adſtriction, and diſplacing of the Stomach* 28

Page
Chap. 15 *Of strange preternatural things found in the Stomach.* 29
Chap. 16 *Of Wounds in the Stomach* 30
Chap. 17 *Of Ulcers in the Stomach* 31

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK.

THE SECOND SECTION.

Of the Symptoms of the Stomach.

Page
Chap. 1. *Of want of Appetite and Loathing* 34
Chap. 2 *Of long Abstinence from meat and drink* 38
Chap. 3 *Of loathing of some kinds of Meats* 41

Page

Chap. 4 *Of great Hunger, Dogs-appetite, and Boulimos* 42

Chap. 5 *Of Pica, or vitious Appetite* 46

Chap. 6 *Of the Appetite of drink hurt: And first of thirst wanting* 49

Chap. 7 *Of too great Thirst.* 50

Chap. 8 *Of symptoms in retention of Meat and Drink* 52

Chap. 9 *Of Chyle or Concoction hurt in the Stomach, and Weakness of it* 53

Chap. 10 *Of Hickets* 57

Chap. 11 *Of Belching* 60

Chap. 12 *Of Vomiting and Loathing* 61

Chap. 13 *Of the Disease Choler* 66

Chap. 14 *Of dry Choler* 69

Chap. 15 *Of pain and trouble in the Stomach* 71

Chap. 16 *Of burning of the Stomach, and resolution of the Stomach,*

Page
mach, and of Numneſs 75
Chap. 17 *Of Preternatural things voided by the Stomach, and its qualities altered* 76

THE CONTENTS OF THE SECOND PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of Diſeaſes and Symptoms of the Guts.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of Diſeaſes in the Guts.

Page
Chap. 1 *Of Diſtemper in the Guts. And firſt of a cold Diſtemper* 78

Page

Chap. 2 Of *Inflammation of the Guts* 81

Chap. 3 Of *straitness of the Guts* 83

Chap. 4 Of *Smoothness of the Guts, and their growing bigger.* 85

Chap. 5 Of *things preternatural found in the Guts, and of Worms* ibid.

Chap. 6 Of *the altering of place of the Guts, and of a Rupture.* 92

Chap. 7 Of *coming forth of the Anus or Fundament* 96.

Chap. 8 Of *Wounds in the Guts.* 98

Chap. 9 Of *Ulcers and Gangrene of the Guts* 99

Chap. 10 Of *the Diseases of the straight Gut* ibid.

THE

THE Contents OF THE THIRD BOOK, AND THE SECOND SECTION.

Of Symptoms in the Guts.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of the action of the Guts hurt, and chiefly of the motion of the Guts turned, or* Ileos 104

Chap. 2 *Of the Colick* 108

Chap. 3 *Of the Iliack pain* 118

Chap. 4 *Of the Retention of Excrements, or the Belly bound.* ibid.

Chap. 5 *Of fluxes of the Belly in*

Page
ral: and of the Cœliack and lientery 120
hap. 6 *Of Diarrhœa* 125
Chap. 7 *Of a Dysentery* 136
Chap. 8 *Of Bloody Liver-flux.* 154
Chap. 9 *Of the voiding of Excrements of the Belly, by a wrong place* 158
Chap. 10 *Of strange things voided by stool, and rumbling of the Guts* ibid.

OF SYMPTOMES of the Fundament.

Chap. 11 *Of Palsie, numness. and pain of the Fundament* 160
Chap. 12 *Of Tenesmus or needing* 161
Chap. 13 *Of the Hæmorrhoids.* 163

THE Contents OF THE THIRD BOOK.

THE THIRD PART.

Of the diseases of the Mesentery, Sweetbread and Omentum.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of the Mesentery, Meseraicks, and milkie Veins* 171

Chap. 2 *Of the Distemper of the Mesentery* 174

Chap. 3 *Of the straitness of the vessels of the Mesentery, and stoppage thereof* 176

Chap. 4 *Of the Inflammation of the Mesentery* 178

Chap.

Page
Of other Tumors of the Mesentery, Impostbumes, with Suppuration and Corruption. 180
Chap. 6 Of Symptoms from humors gathered in the Mesentery, and chiefly of pain 182
Chap. 7. Of the Diseases of the Pancreas 184
Chap. 8. Of the Diseases of the Omentum 186

THE
CONTENTS
OF THE
FOURTH PART
OF THE
THIRD BOOK.
Of preternatural Diseases of the Spleen.

Chap. 1 Of the use of the Spleen, and the Nature of Melancholy 188
Chap. 2 Of the Distemper

per of the Spleen
Chap. 3 *Of the organical di of the Spleen, and chiefly of structions* 19
Chap. 4 *Of the Spleen too big and puffed up* 196
Chap. 5. *Of the Inflammation of the Spleen* 197
Chap. 6. *Of a Scirrhus, and hard Tumor of the Spleen* 199
Chap. 7 *Of Wounds in the Spleen* 202
Chap. 8 *Of Ulcers of the Spleen* ibid.
Chap. 9. *Of the proper actions of the Spleen hurt* 203
Chap. 10. *Of pains in the Spleen* 204
Chap. 11 *Of the black Jaundies* 205

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE FIFTH PART. OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of the Diſeaſe of the Hypochondrion or ſide, and of the Scurvey.

THE FIRST SECTION. Of the Hypochondriack diſeaſe.

Page

CHap. 1 *Of the Nature of the Hypochondriack Diſeaſe* 207

Chap. 2 *Of the part affected* 209

Chap. 3 *Of the Cauſes of the Hypochondriack diſeaſe* 210

Chap. 4 *Signs and Symptoms in the Hypochondriack diſeaſe* 213

Chap.

Chap. 5 *The Prognostick*
Chap. 6 *The Indications and* ibia
Bleeding. 221
Chap. 7 *The Diet* 221

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK. THE SIXTH PART. THE *SECOND SECTION.* Of the Scurvey.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of the Names and Nature of the Scurvy* 222
Chap. 2 *Of the Subject and Cause of the Scurvey.* 224

Chap.

e Contents.

Page

3 Of the first external ..uſes of the Scurvey 229
Chap. 4 Of the ſigns of the Scurvey, and of the diſeaſes and Symptoms that follow it 230
Chap. 5 The Prognoſticks 238
Chap. 6. Of the Cure of the Scurvey in general 239
Chap. 7 Of the ſpecial Cure of ſome Scurvey or ſcorbutick Diſſes 247
Of Straitneß of the Breaſt. ibid.

Chap. 8. Diet 253
Chap. 9 Of Preſervation againſt the Scurvey 254

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE SEVENTH PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of the diseases and symptoms of the Liver.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of the Distemper of the Liver in general* 255

Chap. 2 *Of the Obstruction and preternatural opening of the Vessels of the Liver* 260

Chap. 3. *Of inflation or puffing up of the Liver* 265

Chap.

Page

4 *Of the Inflammation of e Liver* 266

nap. 5. *Of the Scirrhus and other Tumors of the Liver* 271

Chap. 6. *Of Stones, Worms, and Bliſters in the Liver* 273

Chap. 7. *Of Wounds of the Liver* 274

Chap. 8 *Of Ulcers and Sphacel of the Liver* 276

Chap. 9 *Of the Diſeaſes of the Gall* 278

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK THE EIGHTH PART.

Of the Symptomes of the Liver.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of Sanguification hurt in general, and of Weakneſs of the Liver* 279

Chap. 2 *Of Cachexy* 282

Chap. 3 *Of the Dropſie and Sanguification hurt in general, and of Aſcites* 285

Chap. 4 *Of a Tympany* 301

Chap. 5 *Of Anaſarca* 304

Chap. 6 *Of pain in the Liver.* 306

Chap. 7 *Of the Jaundies* 307

THE CONTENTS OF THE NINTH PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of the Diseases of the Kidnies and Ureters.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of the Diseases of the Kidnies and Ureters.

Page

Chap. 1 *A Paradox concerning the use of the Kidnies.* 313

Chap. 2 *Of the distemper of the Kidnies, and first of a hot and dry distemper* 314

Chap. 3 *Of the number of the Kidnies*

Kidnies altered, and some ...ses in them 3
Chap. 4 *Of the straitness of th... vessels in the Kidnies* 317
Chap. 5 *Of the opening of Veins in the Kidnies* 318
Chap. 6 *Of the Stone in the Kidnies* 319
Chap. 7 *Of other preternatural things bred in the Kidnies, as Worms* 325
Chap. 8 *Of Inflammation of the Kidnies* 326
Chap. 9 *Of other Tumors of the Kidnies, and the Consumption of them* 328
Chap. 10 *Of Wounds in the Kidnies* 329
Chap. 11 *Of Ulcers of the Kidnies* 330
Chap. 12 *Of Diseases in the Ureters* 332

THE Contents OF THE THIRD BOOK, THE TENTH PART. THE SECOND SECTION.

Of the Symptoms of the Kidnies.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of weakneſs of the Kidnies, and the ſeparating of the Serum hurt* 334

Chap. 2. *Of Diabetes* 335

Chap. 3. *Of the Nephritick Pain* 339

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK.

THE ELEVENTH PART.

Of preternatural Diſeaſes of the Bladder.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Bladder.

Page

Chap. 1 *Of the Diſtemper and ſtraitneſs of the Bladder, and number changed* 341

Chap. 2 *Of the Stone in the Bladder* 342

Chap. 3 *Of Worms and preternatural things bred in the Bladder* 346

Chap. 4. *Of ſtretching and inflammation of the Bladder, and of*

Page
place of it changed, first of stretching 346
Chap. 5 *Of Wounds in the Bladder* 348
Chap. 6 *Of Scabs and Ulcers in the Bladder* 349
Chap. 7. *Of Diseases of the passages of the Urin, and first of the cooling of the Sphincter of the Bladder, and the double passage of the Urin* 353
Chap. 8 *Of straitness of the passage of Urin* ibid.
Chap. 9 *Of a Caruncle, Callus, or Warts in the passage of Urin and of Ulcers* 354

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK.

THE TWELFTH PART.

THE SECOND SECTION.

Of the Symptomes of the Bladder.

Page

Chap. 1 Of *pain of the Bladder, and numnes and resolution of the Sphincter of the Bladder* 357

Chap. 2 Of *suppression of Urin called Ischury, and dimunition of Urin called Dysury* 358

Chap. 3 Of *little pissing* 360

Chap. 4 Of *the Strangury.* 361

Chap. 5 Of *Dysury and heat of Urin* 364

Chap. 6 Of *involuntary pissing, and*

Page
not holding the Urin. 366
ap. 7 Of black, red, and bloody Urin 368
Chap. 8 Of ſtrange things voided by Urin 370
Chap. 9 Of voiding Urin by other places ibid.

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK.

THE THIRTEENTH PART.
Of the Diſeaſes of the Privities in Men.

THE FIRST SECTION.
Of the Diſeaſes of Mens privie Parts: and firſt of the Diſeaſes of the Stones.

Page
Chap. 1 Of Diſtemper of the Stones 372
Chap.

Chap. 2 *Of the number Stones vitiated, and Pible Stones found in the Stones or Testicles* 374
Chap. 3 *Of great Stones or Testicles; and of Inflammation and other Tumors thereof* ibid.
Chap. 4 *Of the alteration of the Cods* 377
Chap. 5 *Of Wounds, Ulcers, and Cancers, and Gangrene in the Cods* ibid.
Chap. 6 *Of Diseases in the Cods* 379
Chap. 7. *Of a rupture and tumor in the Cods* ibid.
Chap. 8 *Of the Diseases of the Yard: and first of the diseases of the passages of the Yard* 385
Chap. 9 *Of Tumors and Verrucæ or Warts of the Yard* 386
Chap. 10 *Of the Glans not perforated, or without a hole.* 387
Chap. 11 *Of Wounds, Ulcers, Fistula's*

Page
s and Gangrenes of the Yard ibid.
hap. 12 *Of Diseases of the Fore-skin or Prepuce* 389
Chap. 13 *Of Hermaphrodites and change of Sex* 391

THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK.

THE FOURTEENTH PART.

THE *SECOND SECTION.*

Of Symptoms in the Privities, and Generation in Men.

Chap. 1 *Of Sterility in Men, and first of Generation of Seed hurt* 393
Chap. 2 *Of the impediment in standing of the Yard, and spending of Seed* 397

Chap. 3 *Of Lechery, and ſtanding Priapiſm* 39
Chap. 4 *Of running of the Reins, and loſs of Seed* 401
Chap. 5 *Of Nocturnal Pollution.* 405
Chap. 6 *Of Symptoms happening in Copulation* 406
Chap. 7 *Of ſtrange things voided at the Yard* 407
Chap. 8 *Of pain in the Teſticles and Yard, and Itching of the Cods and Prepuce* 408

THE

CONTENTS

OF THE

THIRD BOOK.

THE LAST PART.

Of the outward diſeaſes of the Navel and Belly.

Chap. 1 *Of the opening of the Navel, and the voiding of divers things by it.* 410

Chap.

Page

Chap. 2 Of *the Navel-rupture.* 411

Chap. 3 Of *Inflammation, Impoſthume, and Ulcer of the Navel.* 415

Chap. 4 Of *Worms and Stones bred in the Navel* ibid.

Chap. 5 Of *the Wounds of the Navel, and breaking of its Veſſels* 417

Chap. 6 Of *Diſeaſes of the Peritonæum* ibid.

Chap. 7 Of *Inflammation of the Muſcles, of the Abdomen, and Impoſthumes* 418

Chap. 8 Of *the Cramp in the Belly* 420

Chap. 9 Of *the Tumors of the Belly* 421

Chap. 10 Of *Wounds in the Belly.* 422

Chap. 11 Of *Fiſtula's and burning of the Belly* 423

FINIS.

THE THIRD BOOK OF Practical Physick.

Of Diseases and Symptomes of the Lower Belly.

THE FIRST PART.

Of Diseases of the Gullet and Stomach.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Chap. 1. *Of the Diseases of the Gullet.*

THE Gullet is the passage way of meat to the stomach, it hath its private diseases, as all kinds of distempers: hot, dry, moist and cold. Hot and dry, from vapors in burning fevers,

vers, or from sharp humors vomited up, or from vapors from the womb, which make it dry and rough. It is often too moist by Catarrhs, and hurt by external causes, as hot air, smoak, dust, &c.

Signs. It is known generally by the hinderance of swallowing, all parts in the gullet are alike without straitness or pain, with voice hurt, and the rough artery, also by its nearness.

To know the cause, there is distemper, redness, and roughness of tongue, because the tunicle is the same. In a hot and dry distemper, there is thirst, not in a moist, but much spittle.

The Prognostick. The distempers are not in themselves dangerous, but the danger is in the cause, the greater that is, the worse.

The Cure. Every distemper must be altered by its contraries, hot by coolers: as Syrup of Violets, Pomegranates, Purslane water, Water-lilly water, &c. These are to be swallowed by degrees, that they pass not too suddenly; therefore they must be a little clammy: or wash the mouth with juyces and cooling Waters. In a cold distemper use hot, as shal be shewed in the cold distemper of the stomach. In a dry distemper, give good broaths of Chickens, or these Troches to be held under the tongue. Take *Mallow, Melon, and Citron seeds husked, Gum Arabick, Tragamh, each a dram; Lettice seed half a dram, with Syrup of Violets* make Troches. In a moist distemper, use heaters that dry also.

Also the gullet hath tumors as other parts, and from the same courses. As strokes, hard and sharp things fallen in it, and sastned in it, that cause pain, flux of blood, and inflammation.

The Signs. A tumor is known by pain, which hinders swal-

swallowing. If there be thirst, it is hot, and if it be constant, whether there be thirst or not, there is a feaver. When the matter of the tumor is turned to quittor, pain, heat and feaver increase, but when it breaks, there is chilness, and all vanish.

These are hard to be cured, and almost suffocate the patient by compressing of the rough artery. *The prognostick.*

For hot humors at first, let blood, and take away the matter with Clysters and Lenitives. *The Cure.*

Also use repellers outward, as Oyl of Roses, Quinces, juyce of Plantane, Purslane, with Vinegar and Wax, to make an Oyntment. Or use a Cataplasm of Barley and Lentil meal or swallow Syrup of Violets, Pomegranates, of the juyce of Currans, Barberries, Diatraganth frigid; and eat Barley, and other cool things with Vinegar.

In the state use only discussers, and only a little to repel inwardly and outwardly, as a Cataplasm of Chamomil flowers. Inwardly Lohoch de pino, or of the species Diaireos, with Syrup of Jujubes and Hyssop.

If it tend to Suppuration, add Fats and Plaisters, inward and outward. As, Take *Brank-ursine a handful, boyl them soft, bruise them,* add *meal of Fænugreek and Linseed, each an ounce; two yolks of Eggs, with Oyl of sweet Almonds* make a Pultis. If it be already ripe to break it, ad Orris roots, or Horehound, and cleanse the ulcer with Barley water, brown Sugar, and Honey of Roses.

Straitness of the Gullet.

It is made narrow. 1. From the luxation of the vertebræ of the neck and back inwardly. 2. By tough flegm and curdled milk vomited up which stick to the part in the gullet. 3. From things swal-

swallowed that are thick and hard, that stick there. 4. By worms arising from the stomach and guts. 5. From an ulcer. 6. From vapors or wind ascending that fill the gullet, as in Hypochondriack diseases and the Scurvey. Lastly, astringent medicines do the same, as a Countryman by taking Comfrey roots boyled in Wine, had his swallowing hindered, but by taking Vinegar he was delivered from the fear of being choaked.

The Signs It is known by meat or drink, stopping in a place. The signs of the causes are gathered by relation, or from signs of melancholy, or worms.

The Prognostick. It is more or less dangerous as the cause things swallowed suddenly, endanger suffocation, as in one that swallowed a whole Hens eg, which by stopping the rough artery, choaked him.

The Cure. Things fallen in must be vomited out, or thrust into the stomach; and if they cannot be moved, you must give Cassia, or Oxymel, or fat Broths with much butter. And use Cataplasms and emollient Oyls outward. Some *put down a long wax candle, and draw it out, and tie a sponge to a thread as big as a Hazel-nut, and swallow it, and draw it out again.* The instrument of *Fabricius Hildanus* is good. *Hipp. 5. epid. sec.*

If that which sticks, cause an inflammation. First, cure that, and suppurate it. If it be from thick flegm, first lick Vinegar of Squils, and then provoke vomiting. If it come from wind, drive it down with hot drink, and then remove the cause of wind.

Relaxation of the Gullet.

Contrary to the former, is too much loosness of the gullet, when the lower part of the gullet, and the mouth of the stomach above gape, and will

will not contain meat. The cause is a moist distemper, a catarrh flowing from the head, and often vomiting.

It is by astringents, as Marmalade of Quinces, syrup and juyce of Pomegranates and Currance. *The*

Outwardly this. Take *Pomegranate peels, Mirtles and Coriander seed, each two drams; Acacia, red Coral, each half a dram; Hypocistis, Labdanum, each half a dram. Spikenard, Cypress, Cloves, each a scruple; Oyl of Nutmegs by expression half a dram, with Oyl of Mastich, Myrrh, Wax,* make a Liniment.

The wounds of the Oesophagus or Gullet.

It may be wounded by a bone swallowed, and if it be great, it is hard to be cured, because it hinders swallowing so there is danger of death, and you must take heed that the medicines given be not hurtful to the stomach. Give this Potion. Take *Mousear, Horstail, Ladies-mantle, each half a handful; Pomegranate flowers half a dram, Comfrey, five leaved Grass and Tormentil roots, each a dram; Coriander seeds two drams, Cinnamon three drams,* boyl them *in Barley water,* strain and add *Conserve of Roses an ounce.* This may be taken as drink, or injected into a wound.

For a Digestive. Take *Syrup of dried Roses half an ounce, Bole a dram, Mastich, sanguis Draconis, each a scruple; half the yolk of an Eg, and Cypress Turpentine,* mix them.

Ulcers in the Gullet.

An ulcer in the Oesophagus is after a wound, and sharp things fixed in it, or from a sharp humor vomited up; or from sharp vapors, Aqua

forts sublimate, Arsnick and the like.

It is known by biting and pain, especially when sharp, sour, salt things are swallowed, sometimes matter is voided. The outward causes may be related.

Signs. The ulcer in the Gullet is known by pricking or pain, when they eat or drink sharp, or sour things, and sometimes there is sharp matter spit up.

The Prognostick. Ulcers after wounds are dangerous, and they are cured with difficulty, by reason the part is membranous, and because a medicine will not stay there, old men so taken are in great danger.

The Cure. First cleanse the ulcer with Honey and Wine, or Barley water and red Sugar, or Smallage boyled with Sugar often used, if there be an inflammation which will hinder the Cure, breath a vein, then give Barley cream, or emulsions of Poppy seeds and Rose water, or syrup of Poppies, or Diacodium. Or thus.

Take *Fleabane seeds not bruised, Quince seeds, each four drams; white Poppy seeds three drams,* make a *Mucilage* by infusing them in Water, ad a little *Sugar Candy*, swallow down medicines by degrees to heal it of *syrup of dried Roses, Myrtles, Gum arabick, tragacanth, Mastich, Frankincense, Coral, Bole, sealed Earth, &c.*

If *Aqua fortis* or any corroding thing have been taken, give Mucilage of Quince seeds with syrup of Violets.

If poyson be taken, vomit it up, give salt broath, milk, and the like to hinder excoriation. Or, Take *Raisons an ounce, Sebestens, Jujubes, sweet Prunes, each twenty; Liquorish, Roses, an ounce and half, Tamarinds two ounces, Quince seeds,*

and

and the four great Cold seeds, each two scruples; boyl them in Water, strain and take it often.

Chap. 2. *Of Swallowing hurt.*

IT is hurt when the fibres or small veins of the Gullet are hurt, by whose help the meat goes into the stomach, sometimes from the faculty hurt when the nervs of the sixth or seventh conjugation that go to the Gullet are resolved or contracted.

Somtimes it is from hurt of the Organ, when the Guilet is dried in a burning Feaver.

The Signs. If swallow be hindered by straitness, liquid things are easier swallowed then solid, but in resolution or Palsie of the Gullet, the contrary is, for then solid things are better swallowed then liquid. If it be from defluxion, there is heaviness of head, or stretching of the neck, or there was a defluxion into some part of the mouth. If it be from a convultion the mouth is shut, and there is pain in the parts adjacent.

The Prognostick. It is dangerous if it be from Palsie of the muscles of the Jaws, or luxation of the vertebræ of the neck, it is less dangerous from a defluxion. If it be from loss of strength, as in acute diseases, it is a sign of Death. They that are wounded and swallow not, die speedily of a Convulsion. *Hipp. 5. epid. sec. 7.*

The Cure. Swallowing hurt from a Palsie is cured by things used in the Palsie of the tongue, as this Gargle. Take *Acorus half an ounce, Orris two scruples, Sage, Rosemary, each a handful; Rue, Lavendar flowers each a pugil; Nutmegs two, Cloves a scruple,* boyl them in a close vessel in

Mead and Wine take a pint and half strained, *Honey of Rosemary two ounces, Vinegar of Squils a scruple.*

Chap. 3. *Of strange things swallowed.*

lb. 5. de hum. corp. fabr. c. 3.

Lib. 5. a-nato.

Some either rashly or by chance, or for profit swallow down strange things, as *Vesalius* writes of a Spaniard that swallowed four great Pearls and a golden Crucifix, and *Columbus* speaks of *Lazarus* the Glass-eater that he would eat clay, linnen and woollen, stones, wood, living creatures, coles, and whatsoever came before him. *Columbus* opened him after he died, at *Padua*. If such be, or any thing get into the Stomach, make the belly slippery with an emollient decoction and fat broaths. If it be sharp, give gentle meats and slimy, that it may be wrapt in them, and fall into the belly.

Many times things swallowed get not to the Stomach, but nature drives them out another way, as one that swallowed a bone, and after two months, it came out at the skin, of which there are many Histories.

Question *Why are solid things swallowed easily, and liquid things not without fear of choaking?*

Somtimes the cause is in the Epiglot when the adjacent parts have a slimy humor, the Epiglot cannot exactly cover the rough artery, and so liquid things get into it and endanger suffocation, but things that are hard press down the Epiglot, and so get to the Stomach.

When

When solid things are worse to be swallowed then liquid, there is a weakness in the strait fibres of the internal tunicle of the Oesophagus.

But when solid things are eaher swallowed then liquid, it comes from the Palsie of the parts, that serve for thrusting down of the neck, because solid things are more easily thrust down then liquid, and require more strength from the motive faculty.

Chap. 4. *Of the Distemper of of the Stomach: of Distempers in general.*

THe Stomach useth natural heat for its work, this is perfected by heat that is added and brought into act; therefore among diseases that hurt its constitution: there is a distemper of the similar parts of the Liver.

They are external or internal, the external is very hot meat and drink, very cold moist or dry, also such medicines inward or outward. The internal causes are, some member adjacent, as a distempered Liver, humor or vapor. *The Causes*

They are simple distempers, as hot, cold, dry, moist, or mixed, as hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and dry, and all these are with or without matter. *The Differences.*

It is in general known from concoction hurt, and the appetite, when there is neither tumor nor ulcer, nor other hurt in the stomach, also there is heavinesse in the stomach because concoction is slow. *The Signs.*

Distempers from cold or heat are easier cured then *gnostick.* *The Pro-*

they that are from moist and dry, so they be not in the habit of the body.

They are by contraries, to the distemper to alter it: the external causes must be removed, and the internal taken away by contraries. and the natural heat of the stomach is to be preserved by which she doth her work best.

Distemper alone needs not blood-letting, except you fear flux of blood to it, or inflammation, the medicines for the Stomach must be without evil savor, not nauseous, because the orifice is very sensible, and the heart consents with it, and you must endeavor to make them stay in the Stomach, and not presently to go to parts that need them not. Therefore let them be given with meat which wil be received and kept, without loathing, avoid things that loosen or attenuate too much both inwardly and outwardly, also sharp, salt, and corroding things, and strong purges which are enemies to the stomach.

Half a dram of Coral is good against any distemper of the Stomach, let cold and dry distempers be corrected with hot and moist, the inward skin of Pigeons and Hens gizzards are very good, apply outward things about the Sword-like gristle. And other things shall be shewed in particular cures thereof.

Chap 5. *Of the cold Distemper of the Stomach.*

THere is a double coldness of the Stomach, positive, and privative. The first is caused when the heat of the Stomach is weakned by inward or outward cold, the last is by accident, when

when the Stomach is cold from want of natural heat, and this may be caused by too hot things given in great quantities. Therefore they that have this weakness from this cause, do ill to use Spices that dry, Spirit of Vitriol and the like. Also too much heat in the Liver disperseth and consumeth the radical moisture of the Stomach, hence it is that they that have hot Livers have commonly cold Stomachs.

There is no thirst, nor burning in the mouth of the Stomach, the appetite is greater, and the concoction is worse, there are many sour belchings which are from another cause, and do not shew this cold distemper, there were causes of cold before, he is delighted and benefited by cold things. *The S.*

A Positive coldness is easier cured then a privative: the more it is declined from a natural temper, the harder is the cure. *The Prognostick.*

Though it be cured by hot things, they must not be too hot, least you dry up the radical moisture, and cause a privative coldness; therefore take hot things with broath, and anoynt with Oyls and Fats, and hot things mixed therewith. *The Cure.*

Take *Cinnamon two drams, Cloves half a dram, Galangal grains, Ginger, each two scruples; Pepper, Cardamoms, Nutmeg, each a scruple;* bruise them and infuse them in four pints of *Spirit of Wine,* then pour it off, with four ounces of it, make a Pottle of Claret, with Wine by Infusion. Or, Take *Cinnamon a dram, Ginger, Galangal, each two scruples; Cloves, Nutmegs, Calamus, Mace, Pepper, each a scruple; Spirit of Wine four pints,* infuse them four daies, then take off the *Liquor,* add *Syrup of Citrons an ounce, of Quinces*

four

...four ounces: make a Drink.

A Magistral. Take *Conserve of Roses, Vitriolated* half a pound, *of Betony* three ounces, *Aromaticum rosatum* a scruple, *Cloves* half a scruple, *Amber-greese* six grains, *Calamus* candied two scruples, *with Syrup of green Ginger* make an Electuary.

Or, Take *Conserve of Roses* three ounces, *Diacydonium* an ounce, *candied Nutmegs* two, *red Coral prepared* a dram, *Aromaticum rosatum, Cloves*, each half an ounce; *with Syrup of Quinces* make an Electuary.

Or, Take *extract of Aromaticum rosatum* fifteen grains, *of Calamus aromaticus* half a dram, *Sugar dissolved in Rose-water* three ounces, make *troches, with oyl of Cinnamon* three drops, *of Mace* two drops, *of Cloves* one drop.

Take *Aromaticum rosatum* two scruples, *Diaxylaloes* a scruple, *Sugar dissolved in Mint, and* half an ounce *of Cinnamon water* three ounces: make Roules.

Or Powders thus. Take *Aromaticum rosatum* a dram, *Ambergreese* six grains, *Sugar* two scruples, give two scruples *with a sop in Wine.*

Or Ointments for the navel and left side. Take *Nard Oyl* an ounce, *Oyl of Mastich* half an ounce, *Aromaticum rosatum* a scruple, *Oyl of Cloves* six drops, *with Wax* make a Liniment.

Or, Take *Oyl of Wormwood and Nard Oyl*, each half an ounce; *Oyl of Mints* distilled half a dram, *of Nutmegs by expression* a scruple, *Cloves, Calamus*, each half a dram; *with Wax* make an Ointment.

Crato's Stomach-ointment is excellent, or *Galen's* Cerot in the stops. Or, Take *Mastich, Frankincense, Galangal, Cloves, Mace*, each a scruple; *Calamus* two drams, *Coriander, Cypress-*

roots,

roots, each half a scruple; Storax Calamite two scruples, both Corals, each a dram; grains of Paradise half a scruple, Labdanum two drams, make a Powder, *with Wax and Pitch, and a hot pestle* make a masse.

Make a Fomentation thus: Take *Mints, Horsewood, each two handfuls; Scoenanth half a handful, Cypress roots, Galangal, Cloves, each two scruples:* Boyl them in Wine.

Let it be flesh of good juyce, easie of concoction, seasoned with Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, Mace, Cloves, and other Spices, and old Wine: let him sleep much. *The Diet.*

Chap. 6. *Of the hot distemper of the Stomach.*

THis is caused by hot meats, and spices, and strong wine, and hot medicines. *The Signs.*

Thirst, corruption and burning of meat, whence comes nidorous belching and choler. There is want of appetite, and heat about the stomach, tongue and jaws, the lips are dry. Cold things do good and hot hurt.

It is less dangerous then a cold distemper, for that is as it were a quenching of the natural heat of the stomach, if it be great. *The Prognostick.*

This must be cooled, but take heed of excess, cool not so much as the disease requires, for heat makes concoction *Indications*

Water or decoction of Violets, Roses, Strawberry leaves, Purslane, Sorrel, and Spirit and Salt of Vitriol are good. *The Cure.*

Take *the four great cold Seeds, each two scruples; Barley water a pint, Strawberry water four ounces, Rose-*

Rose water an ounce, make an Emulsion, ad *syrup of Violets an ounce.* Or Decoctions thus. Take *Succory roots half an ounce, yellow Sanders two scruples, Tamarinds half an ounce,* boyl them *in half a pint of Barley water,* strain and add *Conserve of Roses an ounce,* strain and add *some drops of Spirit of Vitriol.* Electuaries are thus made. Take *Conserve of Roses two ounces, Syrup of Currans, Succory and Lettice roots candied, each half an ounce; red Coral prepared, Diamargariton frigid, yellow Sanders, each a dram; with Syrup of Violets* make an Electuary.

Or make Roules. Take *Diamargariton frigid, Diarrhodon, each two drams; yellow Sanders, red Coral, each a dram; with Sugar dissolved in Rose-water two ounces.*

You may make outward medicines of the same but let them not touch the Diaphragma. As, Take *Oyl of Violets, Roses and Water-lillies, each half an ounce; Mucilage of Fleabane made in Rose-water two scruples, with Wax* make an Oyntment. Or, Take *Oyl of Roses omphacine an ounce, white Sanders, red Roses, each a dram; with Wax* make an Oyntment.

Use the Cerot of Sanders: Or, Take *red Roses white and red Sanders each two scruples; Pomegranate flowers, Myrtles, red Coral, each a scruple; with Oyl of Roses and Wax* make an Emplaster: Or make bags of the same.

Or Fomentations thus. Take *Oyl of Roses omphacine, each two ounces; juyce of Purslane three ounces, sharp Wine an ounce and half, with a sponge* foment. Or make Cataplasms of Quinces boyled in red Wine, with Vinegar, Grapes, Barley-meal, Roses, Violets, and Oyl of Roses, &c.

The Diet. Let the diet be cold and of easie concoction,

as Barley broath, with flesh, Lettice, Sorrel, Purslane for Sallets. Avoid Melons and Cowcumbers, because they easily corrupt. Drink Barley water and small Wine: Exercise not much.

Chap. 7. *Of the moist distemper of the Stomach.*

IT comes from moist meats, drinking of water, idleness, and too much sleep.

The Signs. There is almost no thirst, and little hunger, much spittle, desire of dry and burnt things, wind above the stomach, belching, and a loose belly.

The Prognostick. It is easily cured, whether it be joyned with heat or cold.

The Cure. Use dryers, but not too hot nor cold. These are hot dryers, Bettony, Mints, Wormwood, Sage, Acorus, Galangal, Coriander seed, Caraway, Mastich, Squills, Gilly-flowers, Hens Gizzard-skins, Guajacum, Sassaphras. These are moderate cold, Roses, Sanders Coral, Bole, sealed Earth in chyle, of which have an eye to the other parts. A Bath of Sulphur and Salt is good.

Mints, Cinnamon water, Syrup of Myrtles, Bettony and its conserve, Roses vitriolated, Walnuts candied with Spices. Also Treacle, Mithridate, Diacorum. Or, Take *Conserve of Roses, Bettony, each two ounces; candied Ginger half an ounce, Diarrhodon, Aromaticum rosatum, red Coral prepared, Mastich, each half a scruple; with syrup of Quinces* make an Electuary. *Gal. 1. de med. par. in fari.*

Make Poudets thus: Take *Skins of Hens gizzards four scruples, Cinnamon, Cloves, Wood aloes, each a scruple.*

Or, Take *Oyl omphacine, of Roses, Myrtles, Mastich,*

Mastich, each half an ounce; Aromaticum rosatum two drams, with wax make an Oyntment.

Epithems and fomentations are made of Pomegranate flowers, Bettony and other hot things, with a toast in Sack.

A Bag: Take *Wormwood, Mint, each a handful; Marjoram a handful, red Roses half a handful; Galangal, Cypress, Calamus, each two scruples; Anise, Cummin seed, each two scruples; Cloves, Mace, each an ounce; Mastich three ounces, with a linnen bag sprinkled with Wine,* lay it to the stomach. Or use the plaister of a crust of bread, or the stomach ceror.

The Diet. Let the meat be drying, as mountain Fowl, roast Meat, Biscot, Dates; eat and drink moderately, for hunger doth dry by accident: Use drying exercise.

Gal. 8. de simp. med. facul.

Chap. 8. *Of a dry distemper in the Stomach.*

ONe cause of this is, a hot and burning Liver, that consumes the inbred moisture of the stomach; hunger or famine, dry diet, use of spices and fumes from metals.

The Signs. Are thirst, desire of liquid and boyled meat, little spittle, contraction about the stomach, and consumption of the whole body. Leanness is an inseparable sign of dryness, but it may be from the heart or liver.

The Prognostick. Vomiting shews great want of natural heat in this case, and many crudities. A dry distemper of the stomach without a feaver, brings a Marasmus, with a feaver, a hectick.

All

All meats and medicines must be moistning, though they nourish not much, they open the passages, as Mallows, Borage, Bugloss, Caisons, Almonds, Pine nuts, sweet Prunes, Liquorish, syrup of Borage, Bugloss, Violets. *The Cure.* Take *conserve of Bugloss, Borage, Violets, each an ounce; Satyrion roots candied half an ounce. Pine nuts three scruples, four great cold seeds, each a scruple;* with *syrup of Borage or of Quinces without the Species,* make an *Electuary.*

Topicks External.

Take *oyl of sweet Almonds an ounce, of white Lillies and Hens grease, each two scruples;* with *Wax* make a *Liniment.*

Or, Take *ripe Quinces boyled in sweet Wine two ounces, Wheat flour an ounce, Mastich two scruples,* with *oyl of sweet Almonds* make a *Pultis.*

Let the bread be wel leavened and without salt, use cream of Ptisan, new layd Eggs, Chickens, and all young flesh, except Swines flesh. Milk is good if the Stomach be used to it. Let the drink be small Wine, gently astringent. Let him not eat nor drink overmuch least the stomach be burdened. *The Diet.*

Chap. 9. *Of compound Distempers of the Stomach.*

IF the distemper be hot and dry the causes were the same as in simple distempers, and you may find the signs there.

A hot and moist distemper is easily cured, but a cold and dry is very hard. *The Prognostick.*

Use cold and drying medicines, and if moist- *The Cure.*

ure be very much, use Astringents, as Conserve of red Roses, red Coral, syrup of Myrtles, Quinces, conserve of Quinces, Barberries: use outwardly oyl of Roses and Myrtles, and Epithems of juyce of Plantane, Purslane, with Bole. A Cataplasm of Barley and Lentil flour with juyce of Plantane and Water-lillies. Let the diet be cold and dry.

The cold and moist distemper, which is more ordinary is cured with hot, and dry, and sharp things, and bitter that are not manifestly cold, or Aromaticum Rosatum, Diatrion piperion, Dia calamintha, Diacyminum, conserve of Bettony, Rosema y flowers, Mithridate, Treacle, with conserve of Roses vitriolated, a little old Wine is good.

A cold and dry distemper is cured by hot and moist, if cold be not greatest, use Conserve of Borage and Buglos flowers, with the sixth part of conserve of Bettony. If cold be chief, use conserve of Balm with Honey.

Outwardly apply oyl of Spikenard, Mastich, or fat Puppies to the Stomach, or a Cerot of one part Labdanum and two parts of Wax, nothing is better to warm the Stomach. Let the Wine be old, use a little spice with meats. Honey and Milk are good in a cold Stomach, but bad in a hot.

Gal. 7. meth. c. 7.

Crato Consil. 191.

Chap. 10. *Of Distempers of the Stomach with matter.*

THis matter is either bred in the Stomach, or sent thither, and is either in the cavity or tunicles of it, flegm is bred of cooling and moistning causes, Choller of hot and dry, wind

is

is commonly from a cold matter, sometimes from a hot. Sometimes flegm falls from the head into the stomach, and Choller comes from the Liver, Melancholy from the Spleen and parts adjacent.

The Sig. Things voided at the mouth, and by stool, shew this distemper, if it be in the cavity of the Stomach, there is loathing and rumbling, and a loosness after it. If it be in the tunicles or coats of the stomach, there is loathing without vomiting, and often Hickets. Whether it come from other parts or be bred in the stomach, look to other parts, as the Head, Liver, Spleen, and the temper of the whole body, and whether any usual evacuation be stopt, as Terms or Hæmorrhods.

The Prognostick. Is is harder to be cured when the matter is fixed to the coats of the stomach, then when it is in the cavity. The cure is harder when hot matter is in a cold stomach, or when cold is in a hot. It is worst when he neither vomits nor goes to stool freely.

The Cure. Begin with evacuation of the matter. If humors flow or make a noise in the stomach, give a vomit, or a lenitive thus. Take *Oxymel two ounces and half, decoction of Radish seed four ounces*, take it at once. Or, Take *Radish roots an ounce, Asarabacca roots a scruple, Agarick a dram*, boyl them in *Oxymel* to six ounces.

Minerals are not good here nor strong purges, because they greatly offend the stomach, after evacuation use alterrers, and give so much meat as a weak stomach can concoct.

Of a Distemper of the Stomach with Choler.

It is from hot causes, and the signs are loath-

ing, bitterness of mouth, and gnawing at the stomach, and vomiting of chole . It is cured by cold and moist things that purge choler, as Manna, Cassia, Syrup of Roses, Tamarinds, with cooling waters, Metheglin, with Wormwood in it. If choler be tough and fixed to the coats of the Stomach, give Aloes, Rhubarb, Lenitive Electuary, Catholicon, if it stick fast, Hiæra is the best medicine.

If it flow from other parts, purge it the same way and consider the part whence it comes. Also strengthen the stomach with Astringents that that it may not receive the humors flowing to it, but drive them out of the body, as conserve of Roses and of Wormwood.

Anoynt with oyl of Roses, Mastich, Wormwood: or foment with the decoction o Roses, Pomegranate flowers, wormwood made in sharp Wine.

The Diet. Let it be Ptisan, and let meat be seasoned with juyce of Citrons, or sour Pomegranates, or thicken broath with Lettice and Endive, drink Barley water and a little small wine.

Of a cold and moist distemper with Flegm.

This is from cooling causes and moistning that cause flegm. The signs are in the chapter of a cold distemper, they are sleepy after meat, the belly rumbles, the tongue is white, there is sour belching and much spittle.

The Prognostick. This hurts the concoction and is often difficult to be cured, especially if it be nourished from parts adjacent.

The Cure. First vomit for flegm, then give a Lenitive thus *Take decoction of Bettony, and with Honey of Roses two ounces, Manna an ounce, make a Potion.*

When

When the flegm is very thick vomit with Asarum decocted and Oxymel. If he vomit not easily, purge with Honey of Roses, or pills of Hiera. If flegm be fixed, prepare with syrup of Bettony, Vinegar, Oxymel of Squils, with Bettony mixt, and Hysop water. Or, Take *Honey of Roses two ounces, syrup of Bettony an ounce, spirit of Vitriol nine drops*, give a spoonful, *Galen* commends *Hiera picra, and Diatrion piperion.*

This is a good water. Take *Genian, Centaury, each three ounces; Galangal, Cinnamon, Mace, Cloves, each an ounce; Rosemary, Sage and St Johns-wort flowers, each half a handful; white wine four pints*, digest them eight daies, then distil them. After the matter is prepared, purge wit *Pills of Hiera with Agarick, or Mastich, or Alephangina.*

All things are proper here which are mentioned in the cold Distemper, Fomentations, Plaisters, Oyntments, Pouders in bags wet in Wine and applied.

Let it be hot or spiced, drink Wine, of which see *Galen* that writes much of it. *The Dist. 7. Meth.*

Of Tumors in the Stomach.

Chap. 11. *Of Inflation of the Stomach.*

IT is stretched by Wind in it, which is called, the ventosity of the Stomach.

The Causes Are two. 1. The Efficient, which is a weak heat in the Stomach, and hot things taken or applied that turn the crude humor into wind, and discuss it not, for coldness alone breeds no wind, nor great heat, except there be windy nourishment or humor in the Stomach.

2 The material causes is meat and drink that are windy, as Pulse, Milk, Scabious, Honey, Chesnuts, also crude humors bred in the Stomach or melancholy sent from the Spleen.

The Signs. They are tumor in the stomach, and it founds like a drum, it is somtimes visible when the party stands up, there is belching, there is no breaking wind downwards: but it is better when the food is gone to the bottome of the stomach, and wind is let out upwards or downwards, the patient wil tel you what he eat, and if it be for want of concoction, we shal speak of that in weakness of the stomach: when these are not the cause it is credible that there is flegm in the stomach that breeds the wind.

The Prognostick. Wind in a sound party, threatens a Relapse, it is worst in acute malignant Feavers, if it continue long, it turns to a dry Dropsie.

A small

A small inflation is cured by things that expel wind inwardly and outwardly. If there be matter, let it be vomited and purged: if it be thick, prepare it first. *The Cure.*

A great Cupping glass applied with much flame to the stomach, expels wind. *Galen* gave Castor and Posca, or three or four drops of Oyl of Caraway, with Broath or Wine, or Stomach-waters or Hippocras; or this Pouder. Take *Anise, Fennel, Caraway seed, each two scruples; Ginger, Cinnamon, Galangal, each a scruple; Cloves Mace, Zedoary, Cardamoms, each a dram; with Sugar half an ounce,* make a Pouder. Anoint with *Oyl of Cummin, Carots, Castor.* Or thus; Take *Bay-berries, dried Rue, Cummin, Ameos, Gith, Pellitory Costus, each two scruples; Labdanum half an ounce, Oyl of Bayes, Rue, each four ounces; Wine three ounces,* boyl them til the Wine be consumed, and anoint the belly. Or use the Plaister of Bay-berries. *De simpl. med. fac. c. 11.*

Take heed of windy meats, and all sorts of milk; let sleep be much, and let him lie sometimes upon his belly: not drink much Claret and Hippocras are best: let the belly be kept loose. *The Diet.*

Chap. 12. *Of Inflammation of the Stomach.*

THe stomach swells from cold or hot matter within or without, above or below, on the right or left side, but the whole stomach seldom swollen.

In general it is known by want of concoction and stretching; somtimes it is to be seen and felt.

If there be a tumor all over, there is pain which way soever the patient turns. If the tumor be without the pain, is most after concoction, by reason of the transverse fibre, that being stretched, expel the matter to the guts, there is better appetite then when the internal coat is affected, and in this no matter is vomited.

If the tumor be within, there is most pain when they eat and concoct, and the meat is burdensom, there are great Symptoms, and when the impostumes break, they vomit matter. You may know from the patient if the right or left side be affected. If the upper part be swollen, there are great Symptoms, and there is great straitness at the conclusion of swallowing. When it is below, the pain is most in time of concoction. The tumor before is to be felt, and the patient cannot endure to be pressed there. If it be behind, he lies upon his back; if within, he lies upon his face.

The Causes Is blood, as in other tumors, so here it fals upon the tunicles of the stomach, by the veins that come from the gate-vein, and there putrefies. This is either pure or mixed with choler, flegm or melancholy, and the tumor is called accordingly. It either comes to the stomach by attraction, when the stomach is too hot, or pain from internal or external causes, as meat, hot medicines, or a stroke upon the stomach; or it is sent from the whole body being plethorick, or from some stronger part.

The Signs. It is known in particular, by the great pain, heat, thirst, tossing to and fro, watchings, feaver, what is eaten is cast out by vomit or stoole. Sometimes there is dotage from consent with the brain and fainting from the heart. If choler be mixed the

the Symptomes are greater, if flegm be mixed with blood, they are leſs.

A tumor in the ſtomach with inflammation is moſt dangerous, becauſe the part is ſo neceſſary, that if it be weakened, the whole body fares the worſe. If there be much loathing, and trouble, or rumbling, and no vomiting; it is ſame, and ſo is the cauſe and ſign. *The Prognoſtick.*

If there be ſtrength, preſently open a vein, except there be plethory, bleed little, or at divers times. And revel by cupping the thighs, clyſters, frictions, purges, but no vomits, till the matter breaks; after bleeding, while the matter flows, and is not fixed, uſe repellers inward and outward. *The Cure.*

As, Take *boyled Quinces half an ounce, powder of red Roſes, red Sanders, Pomegranate flowers, each a ſcruple; Barley flour three drams, with Oyl of Quinces and Myrtles* make a Cataplaſm. To make it cool and pierce better, ad Vinegar or juyce of Quinces, Plantane, Purſlane. As, Take *Oyl of Quinces and Roſes, each two drams; Bole, Pomegranate flowers, each half a ſcruple; Camphire ſix grains,* make a Liniment.

Inward repellers are good only at firſt. As, Take *Pomegranate wine, juyce of Currans, each an ounce and half; Syrup of Vinegar an ounces; Plantane and Sorrel water, each three ounces; Roſewater an ounce.* Let internal things be actually cold taken in moderation, and the external moderately hot, to ſtay the flux.

In the increaſe of the diſeaſe, add ſome reſolvers to the repellers, as Chamomil flowers, Melilot, Lineſeed, Gooſe greaſe. In the ſtate of the diſeaſe let them be of equal portions. When there is pain uſe Anodynes. Take *red Roſes a hand-*

hundred, Coriander seed a scruple, Line and Anise, each half an ounce; *Chamomil flowers two pugils, Sea-wormwood a pugil,* boyl them in *red Wine* for a *Fomentation.* Take *Barley flour and Linseed, each an ounce; red Roses two scruples, with Mastich, Wormwood* make a *Cataplasm.*

If the pain be great, give an ounce of syrup of Poppies Or, Take *Barley flour, Fænugreek and Linseed, each two ounces; powder of Wormwood an ounce, Chamomil flowers and red Roses, each half an ounce;* with *juyce of Smallage and oyl of Chamomil* make a *Poltis.*

After the state of the Disease use only Resolvers with a few astringents by reason of the excellency of the part.

When the Imposthume is ripe labor to break it. It is known by the abating of pain and hardness, then give things that loosen and attenuate. As, Take *fat figs three, Raisons half an ounce, Liquorish a dram, Maidenhair, Mallows, each a handful;* boyl them in *Mead.* to six ounces add *Orris roots half a scruple, Pepper half a dram,* give it hot. New milk is good, except any thing forbid it, or juyce of Scabious with Honey, it dissolves, ripens and breaks all internal Impostthumes: apply outwardly a Cataplasm of Figs. Or, Take *Fænugreek three ounces, Leaven an ounce, Pigeons dung half an ounce, oyl of Chamomil two ounces, Honey an ounce,* make a *Poltis*: after every medicine stir the body, or provoke vomiting to break the Impostthume: after it is broke, use Barley water and Honey of Roses a little in a spoon to cleanse [illegible]

To heal the Ulcer. Take *Agrimony boyled in Wine.* Or, take *Frankincense two scruples, Mastich half an ounce, Mummy, Pole, Tormentil roots,*

roots, Harts-horn, Gum traganth, Amber, each an ounce; Nuemeg, Mace, each half a scruple; old Conserve of Roses an ounce, with *syrup of Myrtles or dried Roses* make an *Electuary.*

Let all his meats and drinks be binding and cold, Barley water is good with a little Cinnamon and Pomegranate wine. Let him abstain from wine, except in the declination of the disease, and then let it be cleer and weak, and dashed with water. *The Diet.*

Chap. 13. *Of cold Tumors in the Stomach.*

THey are from cold and thick matter, flegmatick or melancholick, which is heaped there by degrees, therefore they are long ere they suppurate.

It is commonly seen about the stomach, the concoction and nourishment are hurt, there is heavinefs there, and thirst, and Feaver, especially after meat. *The Signs.*

There are not such great symptoms, and medicines will be fitter for the Stomach, but they are dangerous by reason of the necessity of the part. *The Prognostick.*

At first use oyle of Wormwod, or this Cataplasm. Take *Barley flour, Linefeed and Bean flour, Melilot, each a scruple; Wormwood, Schænanth, each half a scruple; red Roses, Berries of Myrtles, Aloes, each half a scruple;* with *oyl of Roses and Hens greafe,* make a *Pultis.* *The Cure.*

Give inwardly syrup of Mints, Wormwood, Mastick, Honey of Roses, or their decoctions: use all inwardly and outwardly actually hot.

Then

Then use stronger Resolvers as *Avicen.* Take in drink *Castor* a dram, with four ounces of Honey of Squills [illegible]. Or, Take Ammoniacum [illegible] of Linseed and some grains of Pills [illegible] Pills following that, and [illegible] of the decoction of Agarick and Aloes.

When it is ripe, procure it, clense it, and heal it. [illegible]

Chap. 14. *Of the Extenuation, Straitness, Adstriction, and displacing of the Stomach.*

IF its ordinary thickness be altered, the concoction is hurt, rarely in surfeits, when it is stretched by too much meat or drink, and so the coats are made thinner if it be done often, it is incurable, for the stomach cannot contract it self again but the coats lie stretched out: hence is weakness of concoction and perpetual fluctuation or rumbling.

The straitness of the stomach is when it is not in its natural proportion, it is a disease in conformation, and *Galen* saith that such are to be fed often and little, it comes sometimes from long fasting, and it is so contracted that if the Patient take a little too much it is offended. These must eat little at a time, that the stomach may be stretched again by degrees.

Binding of the stomach is a pain from crudity,

Like the Iliac passion of which in pain of the stomach.

Convulsion Sometimes though seldom the stomach is displaced, when it hurts some part adjacent, as

Displacing of the stomach.

when

when it lies too heavy upon the Diaphragma, which hurts Respiration, as in a Dropsie, by reason of the compression of the part.

Chap. 15. *Of strange preternatural things found in the Stomach.*

IN a natural stomach, nothing ought to be but meat, and drink, and choler: but many preternatural things have been found there and vomited up, some fall in by the Gullet, some breed there, some ascend from parts below. As Needles, Money, Bullets, points of Swords, Nuts, Jewels and other things swallowed by chance, which Histories mention. Also Serpents, Lizards that have crept into the stomach by the mouth: some are voided without hurt by strength of nature, others are kept; if they are mettals that rust, they die of a Consumption. *Schenkius lib. 3. obs. 2. 3. 4.*

It is good in all these to make the passages slippery, that they may get into the Belly, as decoctions of Mallows, Althea, Linseed, Sallet oyl, of sweet Almonds, fat broaths, with Butter, and then purge. If you suppose they are gone into the Guts, let a man walk upright. If they come not forth by stool, nature will find out a way by urine, or by an Imposthume, of all which there are examples in Histories.

If a live creature creep into the Stomach at the mouth, it will gnaw before meat at the stomach, and the party slept where such creatures are, by milk and sweet things it is quiet, but it is disturbed with bitter. It is good to gape over hot milk

and

and take in the steam by the mouth, and let the Chirurgeon stand by to catch the creature with an instrument as it comes up, or labor to send it down, *Gustanaria* writes that a Serpent was voided by taking in the smoak of leather burnt by a funnel into the fundament.

Ad nonum Rasis in de præ uteri.

Somtimes Toads and Frogs breed in the Stomach by the Spawn of them drunk in with water; Treacle, and spirit of wine are good, and Clysters of milk every day taken.

Stones bred in the stomach cause great and long pain, somtimes they are vomited up, or they kil the party.

When Rags, Knives, Nails, old Iron, or the like, is vomited up it is witchcraft. If Clysters and Suppositories are vomited up, the guts are turned in motion, of which in its place.

Chap. 16. *Of Wound in the Stomach.*

IF the Abdomen or Paunch be wounded deep, there is a suspicion of a wound in the stomach, especially if choler be vomited and hickers follow, and things taken are vomited up: somtimes chyle comes forth of the wound. If the upper part of the stomach be wounded, there is a fever, doting and Syncope.

The Prognostick.

If the body of the stomach be wounded, it is commonly deadly, if only the outward coat, there is hope, a wound in the bottom of the stomach is to be cured because it is fleshy, and medicines wil stay there: above there is more danger, by reason of the exquisite sense, but many have been cured.

Some

Some refer all to nature, but though she be chief in these, yet the Physitian must help.

Therefore if you fear a flux of blood, least an inflammation follow, open a vein if there be strength. In great Cacochymy give no purgers at the mouth, but use Clysters. If the wound pierce not the body of the stomach, commit it to nature; if it be large, stitch it, and leave an open hole below to let out the matter, and put in a tent with a proper Ointment. As, Take *Turpentine an ounce, Mastich two ounces, Mirrha, Frankincense two scruples, Tormentil, Comfrey roots each a scruple; Earth-worms five, Saffron a dram, white Wine two ounces,* boyl them to the consumption of the Wine, make a Liniment.

Or make it of Turpentine, Oyl of St. Johnswort, and the yolk of an Eg. Take *at the mouth Syrup of Myrtles, dried Roses, with the decoction of Horstail, Mousear, Comfrey, troches of sealed Earth, Amber, Mastich; or the Conserve of red Roses and Dragacanth frigid.*

Let him eat very sparingly, that his stomach may lie wrinkled that it may glutinate the better. Let him eat things that nourish much in a small quantity, and are easie of digestion. Abstain from sharp things.

Chap. 17. *Of Ulcers in the Stomach.*

SOmtimes it is ulcerated from sharp humors, either bred there, or sent thither; as choler, salt flegm, or after wounds not cured, or after an imposthume. Or it is from outward causes, sharp medicines, as Coloquintida, Euphorbium, corroding poysons. There

The Signs. There is pricking pain and burning, when any sharp or hot things come unto it, and when the meat is concocted, and sent to the guts, the pain above the navel is fixed, and there is a lingring feaver with a frequent pulse. The pain shews the place, if it be in the orifice, the pain is very sharp, and there is loathing and thirst, especially before the meat gets to the bottom, there are often cold sweats and fainting. If the ulcer be at the bottom, the Symptoms are greater.

The Prognostick. It is a dangerous disease and deadly for the most part, except it be a fistulous wound, because the part is spermatick, and if it be in any part lost, it cannot be restored again. Ulcers in the stomach without inflammation, are cured by astringents only, but if they be with a feaver and inflammation, they are incurable.

Of this disease being old, comes a Lientery, and from black corrupt humors a Dysentery.

Gal. 7. aphor. com. 37. The lost substance must be restored, and the ulcer clensed, if foul; if there be a distemper, amend with contraries.

Indications

The Cure. When blood abounds, and the strength will permit, open a vein. Evacuate the foul humor that sticks in the stomach, by Syrup of Roses and Honey, or Hiera picra. Take heed of strong purges, and vomit not at all, but use clensers and moderate dryers, before you use consolidators, or healers, that they may glew the better.

To clense in a hot stomach, use Barley water, or honied Water for drink. In a cold stomach, give honied Wine, and Peasebroath, or the decoction of Hyssop and Schœnanth. with Honey. These clense more, Orobus and Orris roots with Honey. In a very foul ulcer, take Hiera from a dram to two drams, and drink Barley water or White

Whey after it. Or Rue and Agrimony boyled in red Wine, give six ounces morning and evening before meat.

Then use things to breed flesh, and heal the ulcer, and then dryers and glutinaters. As, Take *Frankincense, Mastich, Traganth, each three scruples; Amber a scruple, sanguis Draconis half a scruple, with Syrup of Quinces* make Troches of a scruple weight. Or use Acacia, Pomegranate-flowers, Hypocistis, Bole, Sumach, sealed Earth, Conserve of old Roses. Give these in a hot stomach with Plantane, and in a cold with Mint-water or sharp Wine. Or make an Electuary, thus. Take *Gum Traganth two drams. juyce of Plantane a scruple and half, red Coral and Sanders, each a dram; Conserve of Roses two ounces, with Syrup of Quinces.* Or, Take *Frankincense, Sanguis Draconis, each two scruples and half: Roses, Pomegranate flowers, Amber, Bole, each a scruple;* make a Pouder, give *a scruple with Conserve of Quinces.*

Use astringents outwardly to the stomach to make a scar within, as Oyl of Quinces, Mastich, Myrtles, with pouder of Coral and Emplaster of the crust of Bread: these strengthen the stomach and may be used constantly.

When you must cleanse, use cleansers in meats and drinks, especially before dinner and supper, abstain from astringents. But when the ulcer is healed, or there is a flux of the belly, mix Mastich with bread; let other meat be seasoned with juyce of Pŏgranates or Quinces. Let meat be of easie digestion and good juyce, drying, actually and potentially; avoid bitter, sharp and salt meats. Also such as are too sweet or too fat. *The Diet.*

THE SECOND SECTION Of the Symptoms of the Stomach.

Chap. 1. *Of want of Appetite and Loathing.*

IT is fit that after the diseases of the stomach we speak of the Symptoms, Appetite dejected is the first.

There are five things in appetite. 1. Dispersing of the substance of the body, whence comes natural hunger, which *Gal. 1. de simp. cap. 6. 7.* is the 2. And 3. The sucking of the empty veins all the body over, till it come to the stomach. 4. Sense of the sucking in the mouth of the stomach. 5 Animal appetite by which the creature perceiving a twitching in the stomach, gets meat and drink to satisfie hunger and thirst.

The

The Appetite is either diminiſhed, depraved, or aboliſhed, It is called *Inappetentia* or want of Appetite, when food is not deſired, without loathing, but when meat is loathed, it is called *Nauſea*, theſe differ in their cauſes, and ſhall be ſpoken of diſtinctly.

Cauſe of Inappetentia *or want of appetite:*

When there is no ſucking in the mouth of the ſtomach, there is no appetite or very little, and it is, when nouriſhment aboundeth and conſumes not: this want of appetite is rare, becauſe the natural heat all the life time conſumes ſomething; but by this means appetite is often diminiſhed, and if the body be cacochymick, and any uſual evacuation ſtopt, as Terms or Hæmorrhoids, or for want of exerciſe. Alſo this ſucking is not from thick humors in the ſtomach bred, or from the head. 3. Sucking is not, when there is an obſtruction or tumor about the Liver or Meſaraicks ſo that the chyle is not diſtributed by them, but remains in the ſtomach. Sometimes it is not, or is not perceived, from a fault in the ſenſitive faculty from the reſolution of the Nerves of the ſixth conjugation, or becauſe the animal ſpirit cannot paſs as in an Apoplexy, or when the ſpirits faint or are wanting, as in great diſeaſes, feavers, or when the faculty is turned another way, as in mad and melancholick perſons.

Sucking of the ſtomach is not perceived from diſeaſes in the mouth of the ſtomach, whether it be diſtemper, evil conformation, or united, diſſolved: or when there is numneſs from the uſe of Narcoticks; ſo they ſay that Nightſhade given in Wine takes away appetite.

Causes of Loathing, called Nausea.

But when meat is not only declined, but abhorred, the cause is the faculty of the appetite made weak or out of order, which hates nourishment, and it's scent and taste, as unpleasant and hurtful to it. This is caused by cholerick juyce putrid and corrupt in the mouth of the stomach that corrupts it and alters the constitution of it, and yet those juyces are unfit to nourish, nature alters them and the veins will not suck them in: hence it is that the faculty of appetite is against meat, as if that were like it.

The Signs. The signs are from the knowledg of the cause, if it be from abundance of nourishment, they are not weaker for fasting. Also there appears signs of Repletion, or thickness of skin, or weakness of natural heat, the patient finds benefit by hot, dry, and thickning or attenuating things, and is hurt by the contrary. If there be no attraction or from a fault in the mesaraick, the belly is very moist and loose.

The Prognostick. It is great or less as the cause is, therefore it is good when they are content when any thing is offered, but when they are mad at it, it is a bad sign, in a long disease loathing of meat and cleer stools are evil, for it signifies the quenching of the faculty of appetite in the orifice of the stomach by reason of putrid matter. If after fasting he loath, it is a bad sign of the faculty failing: when they desire nothing it is worse. Appetite lost from hurt of the nerves of the sixth conjugation is hard to be recovered.

The Cure. The causes must be removed, in great plenty of natural juyce, fulness is to be abated by fasting, exercise, friction, baths and bleeding. If there

are

are foul humors in the Stomach, let them be vomited or purged, use bitter things that cleanse, as Aloes, strong purges hurt the appetite, if it come from idleness, use motion In weakness of the stomach and stoppage of the veins of the Liver, use this drink. Take *Parsley, Fennel, Smallage, and Succory roots, each half an ounce; Wormwood Dandelion, each a handful; red Roses half a handful, Succory a pugil, Coriander seed a scruple, Anise seed a dram, Raisons half an ounce,* infuse them in three parts Water and one Wine to a pint and half, twenty four hours, strain and add *syrup of Succory with Rhubarb, Mints and Wormwood, each an ounce;* clarifie it with *Eggs* hang in a clout *Rhubarb, Agarick, Aromaticum rosatum, Diarhodon abbatis, each half a scruple; Saffron with six grains,* give a Glass of it three hours before meat.

If it be from flegm, vomit it up, or purge it, then strengthen the stomach with Aromaticum rosatum and Wormwood-wine, or Oxymel of squils simple, or spirit of Vitriol and of Salt.

After the cause is taken away, give salt, sour, and sharp things to raise the sense of sucking, and things that are pleasant to the smell and taste.

Avoid all things that loosen the mouth of the stomach, as fats, oyl, butter, brains of creatures and things that are unpleasant or loathsome, use Vinegar for sauce, Citrons, Oranges, Capars, Olives, and small wine in a cold cause, in a hot give cold water to them that used it, because it binds the mouth of the stomach, and causeth appetite, Hence it is that *Hippocrates* said Water was a Glutton, let not sleep be too much, for watching people are sooner hungry. *The Diet.* *6. Epide.*

Chap. 2. *Of long Abstinence from meat and drink.*

THere are many Histories of men that have lived without meat or drink, some seven daies, some many weeks, months and years, and some of them have after long fasting, eaten and drunk again, others have died fasting, the cause is divers, and the opinions of it so many that it is hard to reconcile them.

Some say that those Histories are meer fables, or that they dissembled that fasted, and because *Hippocrates* said a man cannot live seven daies without food, others say they were miracles, and *Pliny* saith, that they who fast longer, do it by divine assistance, and proves it by the example of *Moses* and *Heliah* and the seven Sleepers, and of *Lodowick* the godly King of *France*, that after he took the Sacrament fasted the forty last daies of his life. Though one can do this when he pleaseth, yet it is not safe presently to fly to the supream cause, for men of no holy lives have fasted wonderfully, and not by Gods power. Others say they had meat brought by Angels which none perceived. 4. Some think that they were not alive that so fasted, but dead Carkasses taken up by the Devil, this may be we confess, but their actions shewed the contrary: for it hath been observed, that Women which have long fasted, have eaten again, married, and had Children.

Hip. lib. de principiis.

Prosper Aquitanicus.

Others say that they were true live bodies, but possessed by the Devil, by whose assistance they fast so long: and it cannot be denied but men possessed with the Devil can long endure to fast, he

he either feeding them or preserving the body without food, but that all were such, there is no proof or sign.

Others refer it to the peculiar influence of the Stars, but that doth not declare why there are so few that can endure this fasting.

7. Others fly to occult qualities and properties, but to no purpose, for none of those fasted all their lives; therefore it is better to fly to a preternatural cause, then to an individual propriety.

8. Others fly to custom which hath made a habit to fast, though it is of great force, i: is not in all, for it hath no power upon the actions of sense, nor can any by custom take off smelling or tasting, breathing or nourishing, or increase, or to live without food. But they that eat little, can fast longer then Gluttons, but in the Histories you may find that many were taken suddenly from all meat and drink, and many recovered but habits are not quickly altered.

9. Some say they live upon the air, as the Chamælion or bird of Paradise: but blood alone is the nourishment of the whole body and air cannot be made blood.

10. Some thought they lived upon scents in the air, which are mixed bodies divided into Atomes, but the last reason answers these.

11. Some refer it to drinking of water by the example of Plants that are nourished with water alone and grow, but simple water doth not nourish but only cool the heat, and carry the meat through the body.

12. Others say, they lived upon Earth, as children and women with child eat chalk, and wolves Earth. But these were kept and watched *Arist. 8. de arist. anim.*

ed, and those that eat earth, eat plants and roots.

13. Others say it is from crude flegm in a weak body especially, which will nourish long, but all were not so.

14. Some say the cause of fasting was the melting of the fat, and a second moisture in the parts and that fat can turn into blood of which it came. But this cannot be, for though there are such meltings, yet they come not to the stomach, to be made chyle, and so blood, but it is discussed insensible, or goes to the belly, and so away by stool.

15. Others say, they were all melancholy that so fasted. Though I suppose some truth to be in this, yet the cause cannot be simply melancholy, because many very melancholy cannot fast, but are ravenous; therefore let us search into the true cause of this.

Abstinentia vera tabes.

Nourishment is taken to repair the substance of the body which daily decayeth for it turns by the nourishing faculty into its substance, and causeth growth, as men that have been sick grow fatter then before. Hence it is, that they who have lived long without meat, loose little substance; but how is it, that from some bodies, there is so little consumed that need no restauration, this is hard to be answered: leaving the judgment of others, and with leave from better judgments. The cause of long fasting, is a disposition in the humor that preserves our bodies, such as wil not let it be consumed by heat. For if the fat moisture in a man that nourisheth the natural heat, can be so disposed, that it cannot be consumed by heat, or but slowly; if little be lost, there needs no nourishment, because then parts will not draw from the veins, for they want not,

nor

nor the veins from the liver, nor that, from the stomach; and therefore when there is no attraction, there is no appetite. This I suppose comes chiefly from a melancholy humor, as we have observed Sulphur and other flaming things, they either will not be kindled, or wil burn quite out being mixed with sharp and salt things, and melancholy is like such, and resists the action of heat. The nature of melancholy is to be admired. If it be corrupted especially, and have a peculiar occult disposition, as in madness scurvey, and other diseases. This humor over the whole body, is a more fixed nourishment, that will not easily be taken off. There is a threefold event or effect of this fasting. They either eat and recover, or die, or fall into another disease. Some that fall into other diseases, begin to eat again, others fast ever after. They who recover and eat again, in them the vicious humor is quite consumed. They who die, the vicious humor in them consumes the natural heat, and kils them. They who fall into other diseases, the evil humor falls into some private part.

Chap. 3. *Of loathing of some kinds of Meats.*

SOme hate what others love, as cheese, butter, wine, flesh, some kinds of herbs, they cannot endure the sight of them. Some eat neither boyled nor roasted meat, but live upon bread, and milk, and fruits.

This is referred to the peculiar constitution of the stomach from the birth. And this is from the mothers longing or hating some things, they leave *The Cause.*

leave this as they do other spots to their children. Another cause is custome a second nature. The last is imagination, by which they that once have displeased are frightful. As one that eat of a roasted Hare freely, and was perswaded by another in jest, that it was a Fox, and by imagination vomited all up.

The Cure. If it be from the womb, it is scarce curable, but custome may do much, by which they may make things familiar, that have been abhorred. They who hate meat from imagination, must be constrained to eat.

Chap. 4. *Of great Hunger, Dogs-appetite, and Boulimos.*

I Mean not here that which is natural in Gluttons, but of a disease in those that formerly were not so, Dogs-appetite is joyned with a vomiting, of what they eat like Dogs. Sometimes they have a *Diarrhæa*: *Boulimos* is with fainting and weakness.

The Causes The part affected is the mouth of the stomach, but dogs-appetite is from two causes, either from a foul humor twitching the stomach, or from want of nourishment, which causeth much constant sucking. The humor is melancholy, that wrinkles the mouth of the stomach; such as is in natural hunger from sucking of the veins. If this humor be fastned, there is constant hunger.

Gal. 1. de Symp. cau. c. 7.

2. Great hunger comes from want of nourishment, for the veins constantly suck, and so doth the stomach, for when parts emptied attract exceedingly, the attraction comes at length to the stomach, and makes a preternatural hunger: then if

if no food be wanting, there is great sucking, by reason of the thinness of the body and the heat that consumes the nourishment. But natural hunger comes also from these causes, as other exercise, evacuations and fastings.

To these causes they add, the weakness of the retentive faculty, for the body cannot be refreshed, except the nourishment be laid up, and that cannot be except it be retained, and this is by accident when the body is too much dissolved.

Worms cause want of nourishment which consume it before it comes to the Liver. The third cause is use of cleansing diet, as Figs. *Rondolet in 9a meth.*

The cause of *Bulimos* which is a great hunger is a cold distemper of the stomach, which if a great cold, there wil be great hunger, as when men travel over the *Alpes* in the snow, if they have not meat at hand, they faint away, of the manner of this, the Authors agree not, of which Question 2.

They desire meat alwaies, and are not satisfied, and so fil themselves that they vomit it up or purge it out. In *Bulimos*, at first many things are desired, and then at last follows loathing: hence from weakness in fainting, external cold, and obscure pulse *The Signs.*

As for the signs of the causes, if it be from a sharp humor, there is crude belching, and other signs of a bad humor. If from defect of food, there is leanness. If from cold the patient will relate it.

They who have the Dogs appetite fall into the Cœliack passion. *Bulimos* is dangerous, because they suddenly pant, and some for want of help die. If after Wine taken they suddenly recover, *The Prognostick. Ætius tetrab. 3. s. 6. 21.*

cover, it is good for it is a sign that the strength is not gone. *Bulimos* in a quotan or quotidian Ague is deadly.

e Cure. In it take the opportune when the mouth of the stomach is tainted give a Vomit at the first, and then a gentle purge, then give things to take away the fume of sucking, and then prepare for evacuation.

Narcoticks that can diminish hunger are to be used warily, strong are to be avoided, and the intuition of med. Nightshade in wine takes away the great hunger; also Treacle and Mithridate: abstain from sharp and astringent things.

To Cure all diseases Read my *Sennertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus,* and *Riolanus,* of the last Edition.

Evacuate the matter, prepared Hiera is the best, or Honey-wine with two scruples of Agarick steept in it, then strengthen the stomach with hot things, as we shew in the cold distemper of it, apply things to thicken the skin outwardly, as Oyl omphacine, Myrtles, Roses.

The cure of *Bulimos* is twofold, one in the fit, another after, in the fit use frictions; smell to a sop in Wine-vinegar and Rose-water, and if he perceive a fit coming, give him a sop in Wine.

When he comes to himself, give not meat suddenly, but a sop in wine only, but let him rest til he recover strength: then give meat that nourisheth much and quickly, as Capon jelly, rear Egs, of which in Syncope, and there are also external remedies.

Question 1. *How doth Cold cause a* Bulimos *or great Hunger?*

Some say that Cold by compression squeezeth out the juyce from the part, for want of which hunger

hunger ariseth: but the stomach of a living body cannot endure so much cold as may actually thicken and compress, others say cold doth it nipping. Some think cold rather stops then causeth sucking, and so doth it is not of it self, but by correcting the heat that took off the appetite, according to *Hippocrat.* that saith the stomach is hotter in Winter, and therefore more meat must be given.

I suppose that external cold increaseth the internal natural heat of the stomach, and may cause a kind of hunger, but not that we now speak of, but that which is only natural: and the word *Bulimos* is not taken in the same sence by all Authors, but sometimes for a great hunger, which is natural; sometimes for that which is contrary to nature, therefore if we take not *Bulimos* with *Galen* for the loss of the faculty by great hunger which come from appetite, which is now gone from the stomach being faint, we must make the cause to be a cold different from cold air taken in at the skin, mouth and nose, which causeth hunger, which produceth fainting and other symptoms. 2. *Aphor. com.* 21.

Question. 2. *Whether with the sharp or melancholick Humor causing Appetite breed in the stomach?*

I cannot agree with them that say there is a natural sour juyce in the stomach, thin, and full of spirits that gets into all things eaten and turns it to Chyle, and if this humor abound, it is the cause of too great hunger; for in all parts living there is a force to make fit concoction, so that they need no humor to do it, why should it not be so in the stomach? some that have eaten too

too much vomit sour, but this is from crudity and over eating, but is not so in some people, therefore the humor causing hunger comes to the stomach from some other parts.

Chap. 5. *Of Pica, or vitious Appetite.*

Pica is a desire of evil meat against nature, some called it *Malacia* or softness, which is a different disease with loosness and dulness, by which means the stomach neither desires food, nor concocts it. *Pica* is a depraved appetite of Chalk, Lime and Ashes, *Malacia* is a desire of wholsome things in women with child, called, Longing, with greedinesss, if they have it not, they miscarry, or leave a Mole upon the Child: to prevent this *Pliny* adviseth a Pomegranate to be given, which prevents Abortion.

Women have both these diseases usually in the first two months, for the small child draws less, and leaves impurities which cause this sickness; it ceaseth with nourishing: the part affected is the mouth of the stomach, and vitious humors sticking to the coat of it, and some part thereof or a vapor arising to the orifice causeth this appetite.

The Cause, Platerus. The nature of this humor is so hidden that it scarce can be found out, some think it to be venemous, and malignant I grant it to be hidden not venemous. It comes often from terms stopt, or from the Spleen or other parts, or from an evil concoction in the stomach.

The Signs. It is known by the relation of the Patient what she desireth, there it resteth with loathing of

of wholsom meat; sometimes knawing of the stomach, often spitting and vomiting.

The Prognostick.

It is better when sour and sharp things are desired, and worse when strange things are desired. It often turns to Cacochymy or Dropsie. Although many have eaten strange things without hurt.

The Cure.

Take away the evil humor, alter the distemper of the stomach, a vomit is best, of the decoction of Radishes, warm Water and Butter. If the patient eat Clay or Loam, *Avicen* gives that in water, with a vomit and Salt, and dries it in the Sun, and gives a dram with a vomit. If there be not an inclination to vomit give a purge after preparatives, thus:

Take *Balm, Rue, Bettony, Organ, each half a handful;* boyl them *in Water,* take *five ounces strained, Syrup of Mints, Bettony, Oxymel, each an ounce:* give it at twice. Take *Catholicon a dram, Confectio Hamech two scruples, Agarick, Rhubarb, each a dram; Cinnamon, Mace, Schænanth, each six grains; with Sugar* make *a Bolus,* or give *pill. Polycrestæ.*

In a women not with child, the terms being stopt, open a vein in the ankle, then provoke the terms, and then consume the humors fixed to the coats, and strengthen the stomach, with Treacle, Mithridate, Diamoschu, Diambra. This is a rare Secret experimented. Take *Mustard seed half a dram, Pigeons bones burnt half a scruple, Purslane seed two drams, juyce of Quinces two ounces, Sugar three ounces,* give *half an ounce.*

Ætius commends these for to strengthen the stomach. Juyce of Pomegranates with pouder of Mints dried, Purslane hath an hidden vertue, boyled Beans, or candied with Sugar: these take away

away all evil appetites in women.

Outwardly apply Pomegranate flowers, Roses, Myrtles, juyce of Smyrnium, Fennel seeds boyled in Wine, Dates boyled in Wine, and stamped to a plaister. Quinces with Oyl of Spike, and others mentioned in the Distemper of the Stomach.

The Diet. Give divers and pleasant meats to take them off from nad, let sweet things be mixed with astringents, for to discuss evil humors; take pickled Olive or Capars afore meat, or bitter Almonds with Bread, to cleanse the mouth of the stomach, or decoction of Succory, with Water, Salt, Oyl and Vinegar.

If the things be absurd, deny them, but be wary with women with child least they abort, or leave a mark upon the child; therefore perswade them gently, and let them but sparingly tast.

Quest. *Whether in Pica things contrary to the evil humor or like it, are desired?*

Authors differ about this, I suppose that we must not rest in the manifest qualities, for from thence the cause of this strange Symptom cannot be gathered. Therefore it is probable, that this appetite is rather from a like then a contrary quality. What that quality is, cannot be well explained, because the things desired have no likeness to the tumors in manifest qualities.

Chap.

Chap. 6. *Of the Appetite of drink hurt: And first of thirst wanting.*

THirst, that it may be contrary, nature is either diminished, taken away, or enlarged, and as hunger, so the seat of thirst is in the mouth of the stomach, it is from want of moisture. If that be not, or be not perceived, there is no thirst. A cold and moist distemper of the stomach, or a cold humor that is sweet and much in the orifice of the stomach, or cold and moist air or meat diminish, or take away thirst. It is increased from the consumption of moisture.

The patient will tell, if he dote not, or be insensible, there is a great moisture in the whole body. *The Signs.*

It is inconsiderable, while they can eat, which is the chief nourishment, for many have long abstain'd from drink. That disease is comonly deadly, wherein there is cause of thirst, and no thirst, or when great thirst vanisheth suddenly. For it signifies the quenching of the faculty of appetite in the stomach. *The Prognostick.*

Thirst deficient from a cold and moist distemper, or from humors abounding, is cured the same way with appetite of meat dejected, which being restored, thirst returneth. *The Cure.*

Of hating of liquid things, and fear of Water.

They say this, and the madness from the biting of a Dog, are the same, only here is no mad

nesse, but histories say, It may come from other causes. They report of a woman that could neither drink, touch, nor endure to see any liquid thing, nor endure the air to be moved. but she took this from a sugar, and not from biting of a mad Dog. It is evident, that this comes from an occult or hidden quality: it is dangerous. few escape it: some die the third, others the fift, others the eighth day. If any thing do good, it must be such as is given against biting of mad Dogs because this poyson is very like that, many cast them suddenly into the water. The vulgar saying is, Dip them seven times in Sea-water, and thus are cured.

Marcellus donatus Petrus Salius diversus.

Chap. 7. *Of too great Thirst.*

IT is a desire of drink without meat, very often between meals, without a feaver.

The Causes For the knowledge of them, consider the causes of natural thirst. It is from a desire of moisture which is confirmed with a sucking in the mouth of the stomach, therefore all causes of thirst are reduced to drines. But *Galen* saith, It comes from two causes, either from plenty of heat, or want of moisture. The causes of heat, are hot air salt and spiced meats, much wine. Also strong purges, or drying poysons, as stinging of Vipers, or Viper wine vehement motion, and all things that heat choler or blood.

1. *De simp. med. facult.*

The Signs. Thirst from heat and drines, that consumes the moisture in the stomach, is known by loathing of meat, heat and drines of the belly, and other parts near, a preternatural bitternesse, or saltnesse, with rough nesse of the jaws. You may know

by

by the heat of the breath, if it come from the heat of the Heart and Lungs, or from the first passages sending hot vapors to the mouth and throat, they cannot speak clear by reason of driness.

This hinders nourishment and dejecteth or casts down the strength, for they take too much drink, which makes them cachectick, and they fall into a Dropsie. Immoderate thirst argues great driness and burning. *The Prognostick.*

Thirst from want of a dewy substance is allayed with meat rather then drink, for drink doth not allay that, but the nourishing parts in drink, hence *Hippocrates* saith, *It is easier to be refreshed with drink then meat*, therefore this thirst is not quenched with Water but abated, and in this Thirst, Water-drinking causeth Vomitings Fluxes and the like, therefore Wine is good in this, begin the Cure with Moistners, and then cool gently. *The Cure.* 2. *Aphor.* 11.

In every thirst, look to the cause, and whether it be alone, or with other Diseases: observe that if it come from an external [illegible] remove the cause, and cold [illegible] it. If it come of an internal cause, moderate the drink accordingly.

If it come from heat in the mouth of the stomach raised by heat in the natural moisture, it is taken off with cold water and meat, drink but twice or thrice: if the mouth of the stomach grow dry, use the same with syrup of Violets, Buglos or mucilages, with broaths and nourishing drinks.

Moreover cool the mouth to allay thirst, with Barley and Lettice water and Vinegar, Emulsions and Mucilages of Fleabane and Quinces. As,

Take *Fleabane and Quince seed, each an ounce; Water half a pint,* steep them a night, beat them, and cast off the husks, add *Syrup of Violets an ounce.*

Gallen commends Vinegar in thirst from heat, for it cools, and Water is a common quencher, it is to be used warily in fevers, take heed of Snow-water.

There is the same reason for spirit of Vitriol in Water, it quenceth thirst, and stops the Inflammation of hot humors, but if it come from want of moisture, it rather hurteth, wash the feet and hands with Lotions, use Epithems to the Stomach, Liver and Heart, to quench thirst, apply to the Liver juyce of Succory, Endive, Purslane, with Vinegar and pouder of Diatrionsantalon, but cold things hurt the Stomach.

Herc. Saxonia.

Thirst from a nitrous salt and corrupt humor, as in a Dropsie, is not to be quenched with drink, but with Mucilages and fat things.

Let meat be cool and moistning, when the cause is Choler, as Lettice, Ptisan, Barley.

Chap. 8. *Of symptoms in retention of Meat and Drink.*

THe Stomach doth not always close the meat and gather it together rightly, hence there is a Convulsion, Palpitation or trembling the Stomach hath pulsation when it is lifted up and depressed, from wind, which further is coming from crudity, windy meats, and much drink.

There is a kind of Convulsion in the stomach, when the stomach is very empty, binds it self suddenly

suddenly about the food with violence and hickets, see the Chapter of Hickets.

3. There is a kind of Trembling in the stomach, which *Glen* thus describes. *When after meat there is neither fluctuation with noise, or inflation, nor palpitation, nor hicket, but an unusual difficulty of with heavineſs and desire to cast it up or down you may suppose that the stomach is bound about the food, and there is a kind of trembling.* This comes from too much food, or from a cold distemper, of which afore.

These are all cured by taking away the cause. You may supply the imperfect imbracing of the meat, with medicines and a girdle, for the Peritoneum being bound, the stomach must needs be closed to imbrace the food the better.

Rumination or chewing of the cud.

Men have it seldom, but it hath been seen, but it is in them preternatural, not in Cattle; which are sick if they chew not the cud, *Fabricius* mentions two examples of men that chewed the cud. *In tract. de varietate ventriculi.*

Chap. 9. *Of Chyle or Concoction hurt in the Stomach, and Weakneſs of it.*

THe first action of the stomach is making of chyle, or concoction of meat and drink, for this is hurt divers waies, and from divers causes. Sometimes there is no attraction of the meat, this is called Crudity. 2. There is too long time spent in concoction. 3. The food

corrupts, and is of another nature. Some call all these by the name, of weakness of the Stomach.

Crudity is twofold, nidorous and acid, the first is when the food is turned into a burnt substance, like stinking fish or fryed oyl, and is in cholerick natures. The other is when meat is turned into sour matter, which causeth sour belchings, this is from coldness of the stomach. 3. Crudities may be when it turns to flegm without sourness.

The Causes The Causes are either in the faculty hurt, or some outward error. The faculty is hurt by diseases of the stomach, especially distemper or loosness, when the fibres do not stick together; also the faculty is hindered by Tumors, Wounds, Ulcers, and the like, but the concoction is usually hurt by weak heat, both natural and adventitious, therefore in diseases of the mind, the concoction is hurt, when the spirits and heat are called another way. Also when the parts adjacent do not sufficiently cherish the Stomach, the Liver on the right side, and Spleen on the left, the Diaphragma above, the Cawl and Guts below.

3. *de symp. ca.* 1. There is by *Galen* a threefold external error that hurts concoction. *First excrements bred there or sent thither, hot or cold. Another error is in the substance of the meat when it is too hard to be concocted by our heat, or when the meat eaten is of divers sorts at one meal.* Thirdly there is an error in the order of eating, when you eat first the hard meats and difficult to be concocted, and then the tender and light, easie to be concocted.

The Signs. The fault in concoction is known by the change of excrements, belching, wind, or when meat

meet is vomited up unconcocted, or voided by ſtool. A weak concoction is known by the ſame ſigns, as concoction taken away, but they are weaker ſigns, in which alſo there are four belchings, heavineſs, ſtretching and ſwelling or inflation in the ſtomach, flegm is vomited up, the ſtools are crude, and food of eaſie digeſtion in it ſelf is hard to be concocted.

The Prognoſtick.

Crudity is the mother of great Diſeaſes and Symptomes (for the faults of the firſt concoction not mended in other concoctions) as Tumors, Erʏſipelas, want of nouriſhment, a fault in concoction, is more eaſily mended; if it be from an outward error then if it be from weakneſs of the faculty.

The Cure.

Firſt ſek out the cauſe of the fault in concoction, for when it is diminiſhed or taken away, it is from a cold ſtomach, which is to be cured by heat, of which in the Chapter of a cold Stomach. The Chymiſts to ſtrengthen the Stomach commend the ſpirit of Vitriol, of Copper, or of Hungarian Vitriol, wch conſumes all impurities in the ſtomach, whether it be like Tartar or Sulphur and makes it concoct all: but take heed that it work not upon the radical moiſture, for where that is wanting, it doth more hurt then good.

This Water ſtrengthens the ſtomach. Take *Maſtich three ounces, Galangal an ounce, ſpirit of Wine half a pint*, digeſt and ſtil them. When the crudity is nidorous or burnt and comes from ejuyces that corrupt the meat, they muſt be purged by Vomit or ſtool.

Diet.

Good Diet is neceſſary to mend all concoction: let bread be of the beſt, and meat eaſie of digeſtion; but ſuch as have Choler or other e-

vil excrement in the stomach, meats of easie concoction corrupt by reason of their heat, therefore things of harder digestion must be given. In all crudities and concoction hurt, avoid unpleasant meats and drinks, and consider the Patients palate. Abstain from all food of evil juyce, though they are easie to be digested, least in time they breed evil humors in the veins which corrupt and breed feavers: avoid varieties of meat and drink, use rest and sleep, first lying upon the right side, then the left, that the meat may go down and be better concocted.

Question 1. *Whether chilification be from heat?*

Every heat is not fit to make chyle of it self, for heat is not the chief agent in the work, but the spirit and form of the Stomach, which hath power to make chyle. Heat is only the instrument of the Soul, and the Soul being unchangeable, and heat may be changed, the Physitian looks more at heat then the Soul: we mean not every heat, but that which is proper for that part where the power of making Chyle is seated, which is in no other part of the body, nor do we here exclude occult qualities, for they are necessary to this work.

Question 2. *Whether the heat of parts near the Stomach do help concoction?*

God hath made all the parts to help each other rather then hinder, therefore the heat of the stomach being natural, is the immediate sufficient cause of chylification, yet the natural heat of the Liver, Spleen, and Cawl, and Diaphragma, are added to nourish the heat of the stomach, therefore when the Liver is too hot, it hinders concoction

concoction, or too cold. Also a fat cawl nourisheth the heat of the stomach and a lean is an hinderance to concoction, and so of the rest.

Chap. 10. *Of Hickets.*

Hickets are a Symptome of the expulsive faculty provoked. *Galen* saith, *It is a convulsive motion, but a true Convulsion is only in the Muscles.* And because it is like a Convulsion, *Galen* calls it by that name, and defines it *a symptom of the expulsive faculty, desiring to void what molesteth it, by dilating the Tunicles of the Stomach first, and then contracting them.* Hence a double motion in the Hicket dilatation and constriction. Moreover, the retentive faculty is hurt thereby, so that the stomach doth not rightly embrace the food. The seat of the Hickets is the upper orifice of the stomach, which is of exquisite sense, the cause is sometimes in the mouth of the stomach; sometimes in the body of it, but it is never in the gullet, which is moved only by attraction. 4. *De rat. vic. in actionis.* 5. *Aph. com. &* 7. *com.* 3.

It is vulgarly from *emptiness* or *repletion*, others say it is also from twitching by a sharp matter, which is the true and proper cause. For it is from the provoking of the expulsive faculty. Why need we emptiness and fulness, for causes when twitching is sufficient? And though humors get into the stomach, they cause not the Hickets, except they twitch. The material cause is meat and drink, that twitch the stomach by heat or cold, or sharpness, or a sharp medicine, as Pepper and Wine drunk upon it, which drives it down, or a humor, or sharp vapor, or worms, or some sorts of poyson. *The Causes* *Hipp. 2. aphor.*

There

There is a Hicket leave always with hickets, but when the humour is vomited up, it ceaseth: this is from an inflammation of the Liver or the gut Ileum. Also hard things that press the stomach, and twitch it, may cause Hickets as we have said. Hickets from a stroke on the head, are by the communication of the nerves.

Holl. lib. 1. c. 33.

The Signs of the Causes.

That which is allay'd by vomit, is from much matter, or such as hath a quality offensive to the stomach. that which follows great evacuation, is from drineſs, as the vulgar conceive, but it is from the evil of the matter.

The Prognostick

It is less dangerous, when it is from a primitive cause; it is worse when the fibres of the stomach are much stretched and dilated. *Hickets after purging, is bad in old people.* If after vomiting Hickets cease not, it is a sign of inflammation in the brain or stomach. *Hickets from the Ileum are bad;* and they are dangerous in every feaver, except there be a Crisis, and signs of concoction in the excrements. Hickets in a deep sleep, fainting, or cramp, Tetanus signifie death. It sometimes lasts long, and is troublesom.

7. Aphor. 41.

7. Aphor. 11.

The Cure.

All Hickets need not physick, but that which is vehement, give things to dull the sense of the stomach and the pain (except you will vomit which you must do with gentle means at first) as *juice of Endive, Purslane, Cowcumber seeds, or Lettice seed, new Milk, Honey, Wine, or Purslane the weed, or Syrup of Violets, Poppies, or a scruple of Philonium Romanum, with two grains of Saffron, Treacle a scruple, or Laudanum.*

To take away the cause, see whether it follow any hot disease, which removed, the Hickets cease. If it be from cold, use hot things inwardly and outwardly, as we shewed in the cold distemper

ſtemper of the ſtomach, or lay a plaſter of Wine, Aqua vitæ and hot Pouders.

If it be from wind, uſe the ſame heaters, *Wine with Aniſeeds, Bay-berries, Roſemary, Coriander, Juniper-berries, and Cloves are ſteeped.*

If it be after great evacuation, or dinefs, or wrinkling of the ſtomach, or from a medicine, or humor that twitcheth the ſtomach, uſe cold and moiſt things to moderate the humors, as *Barley-water, emulſions of Almonds, cold Seeds, white Poppy ſeeds, Mucilage of Fleabane, Quinces, Syrup of Violets, Pomegranates, Piſan, or Chicken-broath, Conſerve of Borage, Bugloſs, and Water-lillies.* If it be from corrupt meat or repletion, vomit or purge.

Purge *with Hiera, pills of waſht Aloes, Rhubarb,* then cleanſe and diſſolve the matter. Take *Spike, Ginger, Galangal, Aniſeeds, Rue, Carrot and Cummin ſeed, each a ſcruple*; make a Pouder, give *half a ſcruple, with Honey and Vine, or Wine.*

If from a cold humor fixed in the ſtomach, extenuate and cut it with things mentioned in the diſtemper of the ſtomach from flegm, *Oxymel, and a ſcruple of Caſtor.* If it ceaſe not, prepare and evacuate with *Hiera, Mechoacan, pills of Maſtich, Agarick, with a little Turbith, or Diaphænicon.* It is good to cup the ſtomach or the back, where the ſtomach is joyned to the Vertebræ.

If it come from wormes, cure them, and uſe things againſt Hickets, at the ſame time.

Some uſe Amulets. *Trallion* ſaies, That *Caſtor bound about the neck quickly cures Hickets. Or Cummin ſeed tied in a clout, and bound to the left wriſt.*

Let the diet be according to the variety of the cauſe.

Chap.

Chap. 11. *Of Belching.*

IT is a depraved motion of the stomach from the expulsive faculty, by which vapors and smoak are expelled by the mouth, from meat not well concocted. This is only in man, for the stomach is drier in beasts, and moisture is sooner consumed, so that it cannot turn to wind. Belching is sometimes acide or sour, sometimes nidorous or burnt, sometimes stinking.

The Causes The immediate Cause is wind included in the stomach, breaking out of the mouth with noise. It is commonly from a cold distemper and windy meats, and that eathly corrupt. They ascend often from the liver, guts, womb, spleen, mesericks to the stomach, and are usual in Hypochondriack persons, as we shall shew. Also external causes that move matter within, cause belchings, as baths, exercise after meat, and immoderate Venery.

The Signs. They are evident. If it come presently after meat, the stomach is safe. They who have nidorous burnt belchings, and have eat nothing to cause them, have too hot stomachs, that corrupt the meat. If belching be sour, enquire if any thing of hard concoction hath been eaten, for otherwise it is from a cold distemper. If it be without taste or scent, it is from windy or much meat. If there be belching long after meat, the stomach is weak.

The Prognostick. When there is much and often belching, it signifies the vehemency of the cause, and that motion hinders concoction. When it is sour, and continues long, it threatens a Dropsie or Lien-

tery.

tery. They which belch much afore meat are subject to the Colick, and they that belch much after meat to the Dropsie tympanites.

Stop not moderate belching, because they expel wind; if it continue long, use remedies mentioned in the cold distempers of the stomach. If wind come from the Spleen or other bowels, fortifie them. *The Cure.*

Chap. 12. *Of Vomiting and Loathing.*

THey have both the same causes, Loathing or *Nausea* is a vain desire to vomit, the stomach being shut up to it, but expells nothing. Vomiting is when it casts out that by the mouth that disturbs it. The one is from weakness of nature, the other from strength: they are both diseases of the stomach only. They are symptoms in actions nutritive, if you look upon the expulsive faculty, the efficient cause: but in respect of the matter, Vomiting is a symptom in excretion.

The causes are all things that provoke the expulsive faculty, the cause of vomiting is a fault in the stomach, or a matter that provokes it: for the beginning of the motions of the fibres of the stomach is from below upwards, and then they work not ordinarily and of their own accord, but are forced or provoked by a preternatural object. The fault in the stomach is Distemper, Tumor, Ulcer, Wound, by which the best of meats hurts the faculty, & doth provoke it, much more a humor, either choler from the Gall, so that men not cholerick by nature vomit *The Causes.*

choler,

choler, or flegm, or melancholy that ulcerates the inward tunicle with its sharpness. If the same matter little or less sharp be fixed to the coats, and be tough, it causeth *Nausea* or Loathing

The Differences. Some vomiting is critical, some symptomatical, the first is safe, the last follows surfets and crudities. They differ in respect of the matter, sometimes pure blood is vomited, or melancholy, or choler, or flegm, or worms, or matter; sometimes hairs, nails, iron, wood, bits of flesh, and other strange things, which I suppose to be witchcraft sometimes I have seen Clysters and Suppositories voided by vomit, by the motion of the fibres turned in the guts.

The Signs. The Signs of the Causes are obscure, though the diseases are manifest. Therefore see first, if it be from the fault of the stomach, or by consent. If from the stomach there is vomiting before and after meat, and the stomach is affected as appears by signs, that is, want of appetite, heaviness, stretching, and inflation, they are also signs of a moist distemper, when the whole stomach is relaxed. If it be by consent, there are sometimes the same symptomes, and there are signs of other parts affected. If vomiting be from the Gall-passage that is joyned to the stomach, choler is always vomited. and the party is in good health. If it be from smalness of the belly or straitness, these eat little, and if they eat too much, they presently vomit it up. If meat and drink be vomited up, it is a sign that the orifice is loose, and the stomach weak, and cannot concoct. If there be sour belching, before vomiting, there is a cold matter; if burnt, or nidorous, or bitter belching, it is hot.

The signs of cholerick vomiting at hand are,

Head-ach,

Head-ach, Megrim with darkness, Trembling of the lower lip, much thin spittle; if the humor flows from the brain, there are many sighs of flegm, and the vomiting is frothy.

They whose humors stick to the coats, vomit food without humors.

The Prognostick. Hippocr. 8 aphor. 2.

In vomiting without force, if that be vomited which should be, it doth good, and the Patient bears it with ease, but if not, it is contrary. Vomiting from chyle is evil, if it be from an Ulcer; vomiting of dung is deadly, of matter is worst of all, it shews an Ulcer; vomiting of worms is an evil sign because it shews filth within, but in respect of the cause it is good. If all colours are vomited it is dangerous, blew vomiting that sticks shews death at the door, for it signifies the extinction or quenching of natural heat.

Black vomiting is healthful sometimes, if it be voided critically and with ease. there are more Prognosticks of vomiting, for which see *Hippocrates.* *In coacis prænot.*

The Cure. Aetius 3. can. 13. s. 1. c. 12.

If it be too violent, it is cured by Revulsions and Strengtheners that allay the over great motion of the expulsive faculty. Strong sharp Clysters revell, and Suppositories that draw down humors, and purges also. Hot things or baths of hot water for the feet, allay vomiting powerfully by drawing down

The retentive faculty is strengthened by removing a moist distemper that weakneth it. In a hot cause give syrup of Currans, Barberries, juyce and syrup of Pomegranates, Quinces, Roses, Myrtles, an ounce before meat, or Conserve of Roses vitriolated, Diacydonium. Use Astringents in the last course. Quinces, Pears, Medlars, as in the hot distemper of the Stomach,

foment

foment the stomach with decoction of Roses, Myrtles, Sumach, Pomegranate peels. Then lay on roasted Quinces with pouder of Myrtles, Mastich, Sumach, Bole, sealed Earth, troches of Spodium.

In a cold cause, when the matter is thick and slimy, use Cleansers and Attenuaters with Strengtheners.

Take *dried Citron peels, Wood-aloes, Mastich, Coriander seed prepared, Parsnip seed, red Sanders, each a scruple*; make a *Pouder* to be taken with meat. *Cinnamon water* stayes vomiting, and better when it is made with *juyce of Quince mixed*, see the Chapter of the cold Distemper of the Stomach.

In all causes a Toast of Bread wet in Rosewater is good to be smelt to, with pouder of Mints, Cloves and Roses, it is good to smell to a Quince, rear Cupping glasses with much heat applied to the bottome of the Stomach without Scarification, keep it from rising: when the matter is very bad or malignant, and the Stomach very weak, give *new Treacle, Philonium Romanum, Laudanum.*

If it cease not with these, we may conclude that it is from humors that trouble the Stomach which you must prepare, and evacuate, by vomit, for vomits cure vomiting, therefore in a Phlegmatick thick tough humor. Thus

Take *Chicken broath half a pint, Oxymel simple, juyce of Radish, each an ounce*; make a *Vomit*, Strong Vomits that move humors in the whole body are not here needfull. If it be choler. Take *Barley water six ounces, syrup of Vinegar an ounce.* If the matter be sharp, use fat broath instead of Water. If it be melancholy, and you fear

fear it wil fly upwards, ſtop it not preſently, but help vomiting a little, and then give Purges and Clyſters to draw it down, of which in the diſtemper of the Stomach. If the Stomach be affected of it ſelf, uſe no ſtrong medicines, but Pills of Aloes, Maſtich, Manna, Honey of Roſes, as the humor requires. If any vomit too much after Antimony taken, give a ſpoonful or two of ſpirit of Wine.

Of Vomiting of Blood.

If Blood be vomited becauſe it abounds, or after the taking off of a great Limb, or ſtoppage of Terms or Hæmmorrhoids, or bleeding at the noſe, abate the abundance of it, and take heed that it congeal not in the Stomach: give three or four ounces of Honey-wine or Oxymel two ounces. If it be fixed or congealed, give Oxymel with Thyme or Dwarf-elder roots, boyled in it: then purge it away if it be not vomited up of it ſelf, then give Aſtringents, of which before, the ſtrongeſt are troches of Amber, burnt Ivory, ſealed Earth.

As, Take *Troches of Amber and ſealed Earth, each half an ounce; water of Shepheards purſe, Purſlane, Plantane, each an ounce.* Or, Take *Bloodſtone a ſcruple, Myrtle berries two drams, Acacia, Bole, red Coral, each a dram*; make a *Powder*, give a ſcruple with Plantane water and a little Vinegar. Apply *Aſtringents* outwardly. Take *Pomegranate flowers, red Roſes, Sumach, Myrtles*, boyl them in *Plantane water*, with *Vinegar* foment the Stomach with a Sponge. Take *oyl of Myrtles, Quinces, Maſtich, each half an ounce; Hypocyſtis, Bole, red Coral, Acacia, each two drams*; with *Wax* make a *Liniment* to be uſed after the Fomentation.

The Diet. Sometimes use Astringents to stop it, sometimes help it. If it must be stopt give Astringents. If you fear fainting give a little astringent wine, and provoke sleep as much as may be.

If you will help vomiting, give sweet things, fat broath, Figs, Radishes, and the like.

Chap. 13. *Of the Disease Choler.*

There is a twofold Choler, one dry and the other moist, that is called moist, in which humors are voided upwards and downwards, here we shall speak of the moist.

Moist choler is casting forth continually of evil humors upwards and downwards, from the expulsive faculty extreamly provoked, with which there is joyned a weakness of the Stomach, but that alone cannot cause it, which a symptom in the actions hurt in the expulsive faculty, with hurt of other actions before and after. The part affected is the Stomach, whose expulsive faculty is provoked.

Gal. 3. de simp. cau. c. 1.

The Causes The immediate cause is sharp matter, corrupt, that twitcheth the Stomach, and provokes it to cast off what troubles it: and by reason of the violent motion, there come humors from the parts adjacent and all the body, sometimes it is chyle and corrupt meat or choler, as evil stinking fish, or spawn of Barbles, which being eaten, make choler like poyson, so do Mushrooms, Melons, Cowcumbers, and other fruits taken full or fasting; and drinking plentiful after them. Also anger, fear, frights, sorrow, and the like, make meat corrupt in the Stomach.

All

All that abundance of humors which is voided by stool and vomit is not gathered in the Stomach, but comes from parts adjacent the Liver, Spleen, or from all parts in the body, this may be critical, but it is usually symptomatical, as in over purging by medicines, and in poyson taken.

The Signs. It is when humors are in abundance voided upwards and downwards with difficulty and trouble, there is also great pain of the belly and guts, inflation and stretching, Heart-ach, Thirst, the pulse is little, quick, and often, the extream parts are cold, there is fainting and convulsions, the Standers by wil tell you if it come from quantity or quality of meat, or a violent purge, or drinking of water. If the matter be bred in the Stomach there is Loathing, Straitness, gnawing and pain in the Stomach, the matter is green, there is commonly no Feaver nor Convulsion. If it be bred in the veins, there is a feayer malignant, and commonly a convulsion.

The Prognostick. This Disease suddenly kills, especially if means are neglected: death is at hand when there is often swounding and fainting, especially if the pulse stop and there be a cold sweat, that which is from green choler is worse, and that from blew or black worst. If it be critical from the strength of the faculty in the veins, and end in eighteen or twenty hours, it needs no Physick. Somtimes the matter is sent to the ureters, then the Urin is hot and after that the Disease ceaseth. *Cels. lib. 4. c. 11.*

The Cure. There are six ends in this cure. 1. Provoke vomiting if it be slow, and the belly over loose. 2. Purge gently. 3. Qualifie the humors and correct their acrimony. 4. Strengthen the parts.

5. Refresh the Strength and collect the Spirits.
6. Mitigate the Symptoms.

Therefore it is from corrupt meat, or other matter in the Stomach, stop not vomiting suddenly, but if nature be slow, help it to expel. If the evacuation be great, and the party endures it well, oppose only the symptoms, for vomiting thus. Take *Barley water four ounces, syrup of Roses or Violets an ounce*: take heed of strong Vomits.

If he vomit immoderately sharp humors, and you fear great symptoms, purge the matter with Astringents and Strengtheners, as Myrobolans, Rhubarb. syrup of Roses.

1. *Aphor.* 2 Observe alwaies what *Hippocrates* teacheth, *In trouble of the Belly and Vomiting, that come of themselves, if what is proper to be voided is voided,* it doth good and the Patient is refreshed; for if that should be suddenly stopt, nature would send the humors to some other parts and endanger the Patient. If the evacuation continue, and Strength cannot bear it, stop it, by strengthening the belly that it may not easily receive the humors: correct the distemper of the part from from whence it comes and its evil constitution, and temper the sharp humors, and turn them either to the skin by sweat, or to the Ureters.

To keep nature from expelling, use Ligatures and Frictions of the upper parts, if the matter flows fiercely down, of the lower, if it comes up, and of both if the matter flow both waies equally. *Rhasis* useth a great Cupping-glass with great flame twice or thrice to the Stomach.

When the Patient is hot and thirsty, use Succory medicines, if it be from choler, Lemmons, Oranges,

Oranges, Medlars, Juyce and Syrup of Pomegranates, or Quinces. Or,

Take *old Conserve of Roses, Acacia, Syrup of Currans, each half an ounce; red Coral a dram, Purslane seed half a dram, candied Citrons six scruples, with Syrup of Pomegranates,* make an Electuary. Or, Take *Conserve of Roses vitriolated, Dyacidonium without Species, each half an ounce; with Syrup of Myrobalans* make an Electuary.

Half a dram of Crystal is an excellent remedy alone, or in Electuaries. Outwardly use astringents and strengtheners, they do most good, because they cause no loathing, and cannot be vomited up. As *juyce of Endive, Purslane, Sorrel, Plantane, Pomegranates, with Barley meal, and Bread laid to the stomach.* *Lang. ub. 3. epist. 1. & 4.*

If the matter be not very hot, add Mints that is peculiar in this case *Oyl of Mastich, Wormwood, Mints, Spike, to anoint the belly.* *Alex. Trall.*

If the disease abate not, and strength decays, use Narcoticks. *A scruple or half of Philonium, or three grains of Laudanum.*

Give a little at a time, that nature being made more greedy, may better entertain the humors. Give Wormwood Water with Wine. If he vomit all up, use hot Potions very hot actually, for such stay vomiting, by nourishing the heat of the stomach, and strengthening it. Sleep is very good in this disease. *The Diet.*

Chap. 14. *Of dry Choler.*

DRy Choler is a voiding of wind upward and downward, with inflation and noise in the belly, and pain of the sides and loyns.

The Causes This wind is bred either by the stomach or by windy meats, as some say; but I suppose that the cause is not onely too much heat in the stomach, and bad diet, but also melancholy and bad humors in the Hypochondria under the stomach in the Meseraicks, these bred the wind. For salt Spirits mixed with sharp, can do in the body, as Oyl of Vitriol, and Aqua fortis, and Spirit of Tartar mixed in a glass.

The Signs. It is known by what is said, but we must search into its causes, and what meat the patient used. Hence we shall know whether it comes from the stomach, or humors in the Hypochondria: if bad meat have been taken, it may be imputed to that.

The Prognostick. It is not so dangerous as moist Choler, nor is wind so dangerous as often vomiting and purging,

The Cure. Fetch out the wind and the cause first with Clysters, *of Oyl of Lineseed, Chamomil, Hens and Goose grease, with a Decoction to expel wind, with Oyl of sweet Almonds.* If it come from things eaten, anoint the belly with *Oyl of Mastich, Wormwood, Spike.* If it be from a hot stomach, use *Oyl of Roses*, which *Galen* commends when the Hypochondria are hot, or make a Pultis *of roasted Quinces, red Roses, Hypocistis, Pomegranate flowers, and Barley meal, and Oyl of Roses.*

Hippocr. 4. de rat. vic. in ac. at. 14. ad 109.

If the pain continue, give *sweet Oyl, or Oyl of sweet Almonds, or of Lineseed, or Wine that is old.*

If these prevail not, evacuate with Clysters and other Lenitives, as *Manna, Syrup of Roses, or Manna in broath with Wine*; let him eat Ptisan, Chickens and their broath.

Chap.

Chap. 15. *Of pain and trouble in the Stomach.*

IT is a ſenſe of trouble in the Stomach, from ſome cauſe that parted continuity. If it be in the mouth of the ſtomach, it is called *Cardialgia*. It is therefore a Symptome of the ſenſe of feeling in the ſtomach, the ſubject of it is the coats of the ſtomach that are membranous, or the mouth of it, which hath great nerves from the ſixth conjugation, which make it very ſenſible.

There is an attrition of the ſtomach like this, which *Galen* cured in a Roman Emperour, who having had a looſneſs all night with pain in the belly, was ſaid by other Phyſitians to have a fever, but *Galen* felt his pulſe, and denied it, and ſaid, That his ſtomach was worn or chafed with hot meats, and he cured him with Oyl of Spike, and a Frogge laid upon his ſtomach, and Savin-wine with Pepper. *Lib. de præcognit. ad poſthum. c. 11.*

There is another like this, called aſtriction of the ſtomach; it is when both orifices are ſo ſtopt and bound, that wind cannot get out, and nothing can get out of the body, by reaſon of the aſtriction and drineſs of the skin. And when theſe vapors are hindered, they cauſe a kind of feaver, but after a perfect concoction, when the meat deſcends, it ceaſeth. Theſe three being pains of the ſtomach, ſhall be ſpoken of together. *Petr. Salius Diverſus affect. part. c. 12.*

The immediate Cauſe of pain, is ſolution of unity, from ſomthing that plucketh or diſtendeth the ſtomach. Unity is parted by divers cauſes, either by a cold diſtemper which hurts the nerves *The Cauſes*

and the ſtomach alſo, and makes a knawing pain, with fainting. It comes in lean people from external cold, when they ſweat, and leave their ſtomach bare. Or from drinking cold or Snow-water while they are hot. Or from a tumor, ulcer, wound, of which afore. It alſo ſuffers from the parts near, when it is preſſed by the bowels that are ſwollen. Laſtly, from the ſword griſtle bent inward, till the meat is concocted, and fals lower.

There are alſo internal cauſes of pain in the ſtomach, as wind or humors bred in it. It ſometimes ceaſeth after meats, ſometimes it is worſe. It is worſe after meat, when there are crude, ſharp humors that cleave to the coats, which are moved by the meat, and grow hot in time of concoction, and ſo get to the mouth of the ſtomach, of which is pain. But pain is allay'd after meat, when it is a melancholick humor, or is mixed with meat, and becomes leſs ſharp.

The humors that flow from other parts to the ſtomach, either come from the whole body, or ſome part only, eſpecially the liver; if it be choler by faſting, from the ſpleen comes melancholy; from the head, flegm that is thin and ſalt. Alſo worms and ſtones bred in the ſtomach, cauſe great pain.

Schenllius lib. 3. obſervat.

Among external cauſes are ſharp meats, which, in a hot ſtomach, cauſe hickets and corroſion. The ſame is from corrupt meat. I ſaw a great pain from curdled milk, which ceaſed when that was vomited up. The ſame is cauſed by much meat or bones ſwallowed.

The Differences.

The chief Differences are from the part affected, the efficient cauſe, and the kind of pain, which may be known by what is ſaid.

There

There is pain and fainting, and he lies as dead. *The Signs.*
The Signs of the Causes are known by their signs, as Distemper, Tumor, from the signs of a tumor, &c. If a humor be the cause of pain, the signs are in the Chapter of Distemper with matter. If the vapor from the Womb to the Stomach is known by the affects of the Womb. Worms or poyson taken, Needles, Bones, are known by their signs and the relation of the party.

Pain from an external cause in the body of the Stomach, is less than from an internal, and that in the Stomach by reason of its exquisite sense, and consent with the Heart. If an external cause be vehement, it is also dangerous. That pain is worse which is from a sharp and venemous humor, if there be greater symptoms, and they follow a Cudalgia or heart-ach, death follows. A constant acute Feaver increaseth the danger when there is great heat about the Stomach from choler fixed in the coats, this causeth a deadly Syncope: many die presently when they are gnawn with Worms. *The Prognostick.*

When the pain is so great that cannot oppose the cause, use Anodines or Narcoticks, or other things that dull the Stomach, as *Mucilages, Fats, Oyl, Oyl of sweet Almonds, Emulsions of Poppy and Quince, and Fleabane seeds.* If pain be greater, use *Syrup of Poppies, Philonium, Laudanum*, in a small quantity. After this restore the heat, but in the use of Narcoticks, begin always with externals, and provoke sleep by washing the Temples and Nose. *The Cure.*

If pain come from meat or medicine, Vomit or Purge, or from malignant humors, it is better to purge them then to vomit, least they hurt the mouth of the Stomach by their sharpness,

see

see the Chapter of Distemper of the Stomach with matter for safe purges.

Then strengthen the mouth of the Stomach with Astringents inward and outward, inward, with *Conf. of Quinces, Grapes, dried Roses, Confect. of Roses, Coral, Pearl.* Outward, Take *red Roses, Chamomil, Wormwood, each a handful*; boyl them in *red Wine* for a *Fomentation*, you may add *Mints, and Diarrhodon, and Aromaticum rosatum, each a dram*; *Vinegar of Roses two ounces*, when the natural heat is too much dissipated use Astringents before Purgers.

It is good sometimes to vomit twice or thrice with Oxymel and juyce of Radishes, and then to purge with Hiera and Agarick.

If Wind be the Cause, use the same cure, as is in inflation of the Stomach, and discussing Clysters, then Cup the Stomach, if there be not much crude flegm in it, if there be first purge. Use old Treacle, Oyl of Anise seeds and Carua, and the like in all medicines.

Ubi de... If a humor or malignant vapor, or poyson, ...*ex. ad* cause the heart-ach, give Treacle if there be no ...*si omnia* Leaves, with which *Galen* hath cured it at the ...*de desp.* point of death. If the humor come from Liver, ... Spleen, or other part to the Stomach, regard ... those parts, and turn the humors another way. When there is a faint fear, sprinkle Rose water, and let him have cool Air.

... Some cordial of the quantities as Coral hung about the Stomach Cordies powdered and taken in Wine. Let the Sword-gristle if it pleases the Stomach be cut as I shewed.

Tit. Diet. Let the Air be temperate, and the meat of good juyce, in the plurisies give bread dipt in juyce

juyce of Pomegranates or Grapes. Let him eat betimes least fasting make him worse; rest is good, because motion exasperates the humors. Let the belly be alwaies kept open.

Chap. 16. *Of burning of the Stomach, and resolution of the Stomach, and of Numness.*

IT is a kind of pain in the Stomach, when there is burning in the Stomach and Gullet, it is often in some people full and fasting, there is a fiery vapor shut in when they would belch.

The cause is sharp breath from a cholerick humor like Leeks or Verdigrease, when it gets to the Stomach, and burns the Stomach and Gullet, when it is gone, another comes, and ceaseth not till concoction is past, or the sharp humor gratified, or it is as the matter is thicker or thinner, or more or less, also great motion of the body that disturbs the Stomach is the cause, especially when it is filled with Onions, Leeks, or Garlick, and Cheese that is rotten, or the like, that easily corrupt and turn to Choler, as Summer fruits.

The Signs. He complains of burning in his Throat and bitterness in the mouth, there is thirst, and nidorus belching, and want of Appetite.

The Prognostick. It is not of it self dangerous, but it is troublesome and the cause is to be regarded.

The Cure. First allay the heat with Conserve of Roses.

Or,

Take *conserve of Roses vitriolated half an ounce, of Quinces two scruples, syrup of Currans half an ounce,*

ounce, Diatrionsantalon, Diarrhodon, each half a *f*[illegible] with *Syrup of Quinces* make [illegible] *Electuary.*

Or take away the boyling of the humour, and cool it thus.

Take *Nutmeg* two *Scruples, Chalk* two *scruples, Sugar* a *dram.* Or, Take *Nutmeg, Mace, Roses,* each half an ounce; *Sugar* an ounce, *Chalk* two *scruples,* make a *Powder,* give a *scruple.* Or, Take *Chalk* an ounce, *Indian* two drams, red *Roses, Pearl* prepared, each half a *scruple*; *Mace* a dram, with *Sugar* dissolved in *Rose* water make *Troches.*

There is another disease of the Stomach called *Stupor* or Numness, when the attractive faculty is hurt, and feeling is abolished or diminished. but when there is appetite in the mouth of the Stomach, of which in the Chapter of Swallowing hurt.

Chap. 17. *Of Preternatural things voyded by the Stomach, and its qualities altered.*

Long. lib. 1. epist. 40. *Plin. lib.* 11. *c.* 30.

SOmtimes Blood is vomited up, of which before, but we shall here add a little, though it be wholly besides nature, yet it comes to some at set times, and is healthful, as histories declare.

Many women have vomited up their courses, as for the way, many affirm that the veins of the womb are joyned by an Anastomosis with the veins of the Mesentery by which the menstrual blood gets into the Guts and Stomach, also humours are sent from the womb to the Stomach by the Arteries.

As

As for the qualities changed in the stomach, they cannot be perceived in a living Creature, but in anatomies we have observed other strange colours. *Caspar Log* the Bishop of *Uraslaw*, after unseasonable use of the *Magistery of Pearl* had the coats or tunicles of his stomach black

Jo. Crato in epist. & schol. coll.

I have observed in others, that the stomach was dyed black by the gall lying upon it, which was full of black liquor, which was burnt choler in a melancholy body, which by its neatness had ulcerated the inward tunicles or coats of the stomach. *epist.* 163.

THE

THE SECOND PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of Diſeaſes and Symptomes of the Guts.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of Diſeaſes in the Guts.

Chap. 1. *Of Diſtemper in the Guts. And firſt of a cold Diſtemper.*

The Signs.

THE Guts made cold from the ſame cauſes as the ſtomach, either internal or external.

A cold diſtemper is known by the pain and wind in the Guts, eſpecially if the excrements of the belly be crude and ſegmatick.

The

The danger is more or less, as the causes are. *The Prognostick.*

You must always preserve the strength of the guts by moderate astringents, because they retain and concoct the Chyle; but if there be a rough and biting humor cleaving to them, take heed of astringents, least they fix it more. Apply things outward, so that they touch not the stomach, unless it have the same disease. *The Cure.*

Therefore a cold distemper is to be opposed with heat, by *Mints, Wormwood, Cummin, Pepper, Ginger, Barberries, Treacle.* And by outward Bags, *as Milium, Rue and Salt, hot Oyl of Mastich, Mints, Rue, Wormwood, Dill, the Plaister of Bayberries.*

Give Clysters of *Rue, Calaminis, Chamomil flowers, Bay-berries boyled in Wine, with Oyl of Rue, Chamomil, Orris, Bayes, and the like.*

Of a hot Distemper of the Guts.

This is seldom, it comes from hot humors in the Mesentery and liver, or from the veins; and it is known from the hard excrements and binding of the belly.

This must be cured by cold means, as *Endive, Lettice, Purslane, Barley, cold Seeds, Violets, Roses,* inwardly and outwardly used. *The Cure.*

Of the moist Distemper of the Guts.

Whatsoever moistens the stomach, may cause a moist distemper in the guts: it is known by a loose belly and moist excrements.

This is cured by driers, but in a liquid form given, that they may get to the guts, as *Tormentil, five leaved Grass, Plantane, Sage, Myrtles, Quinces, Sumach, Coral boyled with Wine or fleeted Water.* *The Cure.*

Or

Or with *conserve of Roses, Bettony, Sage, Quinces, Medlars, Syrup of Myrtles, dried Roses,* or by Clysters made of them.

Of a dry Distemper of the Guts.

This is from drying causes, and is known by a dry belly and excrements. It is cured by moist Medicines and Clysters. With *the decoction of Mallows and its flowers and seeds, Althæa, Linseed, Milk, Butter, Oyl of sweet Almonds, Raisons,* and let the diet be accordingly.

Of Distempers of the Guts with matter.

Commonly there is a humor with these distempers, either gathered in the guts by degrees, by evil diet, or by weakness of the expulsive faculty, or the thickness or multitude of the humors, or by the straitness of the passages, by which they should be expelled; or drawn or driven from some other parts. Sometimes from the brain to the stomach, and so to the guts It is either choler or flegm, or melancholy, and is either in the thin guts, or the thick, or in their coats or tunicles.

The Signs. The quality of the humor, is known by the causes that went afore, and bred it.

The Prognostick. A distemper with matter, is easier cured in the cavity of the guts, then when it is fixed to their tunicles.

The Cure. The medicines that evacuate matter lodged in the guts, are lenitives, they differ from purges, because they only touch upon the outside of the Meseraicks, and purge no proper humor, but what comes next Some are of the nature of purges, and if they be given in great quantity, will get into the Meseraicks These must be made choise

choise of. For Cassia being not hot, is good against choler, not flegm, because it breeds wind. Honey of Roses is better against flegm, and Syrup of Roses solutive against choler. Give these by the mouth or in Clysters. But if the matter be contained in the tunicles of the guts, and needs often purging, give purges of Aloes which are best.

And if the humors flow from other parts, consider the part sending, and the part receiving. Therefore if the guts attract humors by preternatural heat, abate them both. But if the flux be by reason of their weakness to receive it, strengthen them by gentle astringents of Mints, Roses, Plantane, Solomons seal, Wormwood.

Let the matter flowing to the guts, be diverted by opening a vein in the arm, or by a gentle vomit. You may derive properly by the Hemorrhoids, and discuss the reliques insensibly, by Oyl of Dill, Chamomil, Rue, Bayes, or sensibly by gentle purges put into Clysters.

Chap. 2. *Of Inflammation of the Guts.*

ALL the guts may be inflamed but especially the thin, by reason of the plenty of veins, and multitude of blood.

The Causes.

Blood by its thinness, either flows of it self to the guts, as often in a Dysentery; or it is attracted by heat and pain in the guts, after strokes, falls, or when they are out of their places, fallen into the cods or navel, where they suffer pain, if they be pressed.

The Signs.

When the guts are inflamed, there is a fixed

ſtretching pain in the part, a feaver and its ſymptoms; the belly is bound, and all things are vomited up: this is called *Ileos*. The urin is ſtopt, the belly ſwells, breath is difficult, and ſtrength faileth. If the thin guts are inflamed, there is conſtant vehement vomiting, and of dung, the pain lies high. If the thick, the vomiting is not ſo conſtant, the pain is more below, there is heavineſs in the loyns, there is vomiting of dung, but after a while, not at the firſt.

The Prognoſtick. The inflammation of the thin guts is a dangerous diſeaſe, called *Ileos*, few eſcape it; it often gangrenates, as I have ſeen in a Woman and a Youth, their guts were inflamed from a rupture, and they gangren'd, and infected the groyn, and the excrements came out there, and both rotted to death.

The Cure. After a gentle Clyſter, open the baſilica, and repeat it if need be, before you uſe Topicks. If urin be ſtopt, *Trallianus* opens the ankle-vein, & ſaith, the belly and ureters will open thereupon. Then anoint the belly with *Oyl of Roſes*, or dip clouts in it, add *Wine and Vinegar*, and apply them. Or a Cataplaſm *of Plantane, Endive, Purſlane, or take the juyce with Oyl of Roſes warm.*

When the lower or thick guts are inflamed, give a Clyſter *of Piſan, Cream, Oyl of Roſes, juyce of Plantane, Endive, Purſlane, with yolks of Eggs*, and uſe revulſions to draw the matter out, as fricſtions, ligatures, cupping, with Scarification to the thighs and legs. Give at the mouth things that cool and bind not, as *Mallows, Lettice, Violets, Purſlan.* In the increaſe, add diſcuſſers and lenitives, as *Oyl of Chamomil, Dill, a Cataplaſm of Linſeed, Fenugreek, Camomil flowers, Bean flower.*

Or

Or the Plaiſter of *Alexander*, thus. Take *yolks of Eggs* ſix, *Bran flour*, *Oyl of Roſes*, *Chamomil*, *each two ounces and half*; *Wax five ounces*, *with Mucilage of Linſeed* make a Plaiſter. In the progreſs, add *oyl of Chamomil*, *Line*, *Fænugreek ſeed to Clyſters*. Abſtain from ſharp things, leaſt they increaſe the inflammation.

Purge not though the belly be bound, for they will increaſe inflammation. but give *an emulſion of Poppy ſeeds*, *or ſyrup of Poppies*, *or Diacodium*, *Philonium Laudanum*: but if ſtrength fail, uſe them not. *Hippocr. 4. de rat. vic. in acut.*

If it come from Enterocele or rupture, put up the guts firſt, and give a Clyſter, and then foment *with oyl of Chamomil*, *Dill*, *Lilies*, where the rupture is.

If it come from a rupture in the navel, uſe the ſame, but a Fomentation is better of emollient boyled in Milk, and ſtampt, and then add *oyl of ſweet Almonds*, *Chamomil*, *Linſeed*, *Lilies*. Put them into a bladder, half full, and bind it to the peeſten and fundament: give fat broaths with Mallows boyled in them.

Let diet be thin and cool, only Ptiſan or broths, give no Wine.

Chap. 3. *Of ſtraitneſs of the Guts.*

THe guts are as the conduit-pipe, by which the ſtomach diſtributes the chyle, and that which is unprofitable, is turned to dung, and ſent out by them. If theſe be ſtopt, or made ſtraiter, there are divers Symptoms.

As for ſtraitneſs, whatſoever others think, I

Aliter sentiunt. Fabr. ab Aquap. de part. anim. c. 9. Fabr. Hild. l. 1. de ileo. c. 42.

think it possible, that by long fasting the guts may fall, and be made straiter; we see the ravenous beasts have larger guts than others. They are made straighter, when they are inflamed. 2. When they grow together, and then all things are stopt. [illegible] grow together at the fundament [illegible] 3. They are prest [illegible] when they are united to [illegible] Peritonæum is broken, and [illegible] to the Scrotum or Cod or Navel. [illegible] by hard excrements, where the [illegible] join to the thick.

Fernel. l. 6. de part.

Worms, stones and worms cause shrunkness, and some hard things swallowed. Or thick tough flegm, which it may long, causeth great Symptoms.

The Signs.

The food is not right distributed by the guts, nor also the excrements come forth orderly. You may distinguish the causes by their proper signs, thus. If it be from dry things, the patient will [illegible] or the contrary long. Or it is to [illegible] known [illegible] If the [illegible] belch, vomit, see it; [illegible] excrements, there is no matter but [illegible] to the stool, and [illegible] thing [illegible] give the guts great drink. If it be from tough [illegible] it is not easily known but it proceeds [illegible] The body [illegible] and pains, there [illegible] and loosing to stool; much wind, [illegible] belly is cold, and there is the sick, or the rest hereafter.

The Prognostick.

[illegible] from a plain [illegible] is worse, and [illegible] from hard excrements, it is [illegible] from tough flegm, hardened [illegible]

The Cure.

[illegible] for Cure, if [illegible]

straitness from Astringents and Driers requires Moistners and Emollients in meat and clysters. Things to be taken are boyled meat, of young beasts, fat broaths, Butter, Oyl, Milk, emolient Clysters, syrup of Violets, Roses. If it come from falling, give the same, give Manna in broath or oyl of sweet Almonds, or make a Pultis of the same emolients, and lay it to the belly, or use a bath of sweet water: when you suspect that tough flegm lucks in the guts, use stronger clysters often, or things mentioned in the Colick. If the passage of the Arse is only covered with a membrane, open the way with an Instrument, if the muscle grows together, it is hard to be cut.

Chap. 4. *Of Smoothness of the Guts, and their growing bigger.*

THe inward tunicle of the Guts ought to be wrinkled yet sometimes it is made smooth from a scar after an Ulcer, of which in the Chapter of Lientery: they are greater from Inflamation or Wind, of which *Fernelius*. *Fer. lib. 6. de morb. par. c. 10.*

Chap. 5. *Of things preternatural found in the Guts, and of Worms.*

FIrst Stones have been found in the Guts, which *Gruden* neither saw nor heard of, but many authors have written so; they are not easily knowen, but from long pain in the guts, with *1. Dele. aff. c. 5. & l. 6. c. 2.*

sense of weight and hardness, sometimes they come forth of themselves, but Nature is to be helped with Lenitives and slippery Remedies.

Slimy flegm is in the Guts, as I said, from *Fernel.* and *John Henricus*, in the disease of famous *Lipsius*. Also other things are found in the guts, of which hereafter.

Of Worms.

There have been above a thousand worms voided by some.

Scenkius l. obser.

The old Physitians and *Aristotle* said, there were three sorts of worms, round worms which are greatest, the broad worms, and the *Ascarides* or Arse-worms. *Hippocrates* they say leaves out the broad or flat worm, because it is rare, and not in every age, but in his fourth Book of Diseases, he mentioneth the flat worm. Some modern Physitians make a fourth kind, called Gourd like worms, let us consider the nature of them, we affirm against the opinion of some, that a broad or flat worm called *Tænia* or *Fascia* is a creature, and not the receiver or container of a creature, *Galen* and *Hippocrates* say so: and first it appears so by his head, like a wart, sometimes long or little, sometimes like an Awle at the point: that part is soft, so that it doth not prick so bad as other worms: then by its motion, though it be slower then in others, yet writers observe it. And one part hath been broken and the other sent into the belly, and sometimes it hath run round, when it hath been sent out by a medicine whole; for which motion, it hath knees and joynts, these are thought to be the Gourd-worms, because they resemble a Gourd seed when broken.

Amat Lusita Rondeles Foresius

But

But obserue that flat worms are of two sorts, the first is that which Authors ordinarily describe, and the Ancients only knew, and this is the longest of all, of which *Pliny* and others took observation, and saw some forty foot long, and *Galen* saith that some mens worms are so long, that they reach through all the Guts, therefore they are called *Fasciæ* or Roulers. The parts or joynts of these worms are not so exactly like a Gourd seed, but when they are broken and dead, or half dead in the body, the sides being thinner easily putrifieth, and the middle like a knot or node, is like a Gourd or Cowcumber seed. *Lib. 11. Inst. nat. cap. 33.* *In lib. med sect. introduc.*

The other kind of *Tænia* or flat worm is rare, these alive and whole, exactly look like Gourd seeds, and they are never so long as the other: some think these are the spawn or young ones bred in the Tænia or flat Worm: but it is but one made of many nodes or joynts, therefore they are not to be accounted the same being different. *William Fabricius* hath four histories of flat worms. Let there be three differences only of worms, the flat, the round, and the Arse-worm. *Cent. 2. obser. 71. 72. 73.*

I shewed in the third Book of my Institutions, and in my Book of the Agreement and Difference between the Chymists and *Galen* and *Aristotle*; concerning the breeding of worms in the Guts. And I still defend the same opinion, and I spake there of the matter of worms, only I shall add a little here. Though many say, that worms are bred of flegmatick matter, yet if we consider the constitutions of bodies, in which these worms are bred, it wil seem rather that they breed of alimentary humors, and part *The Causes*

of the chyle mixed with them: for worms breed chiefly in those that eat much without any order, so that the meat concocted goes into the guts, with that which is half crude, or undigested. And because there is so much nourishment that all parts of it are not sucked into the Mesaraicks. The alimentary or nourishing juyce is mixed with the excrements, and sticks in the guts, and growing hot either by putrefaction, or the heat of the place, it is turned to a living creature, for the form which lay hid in that matter being raised by a temperate heat, goes into action, and informs the matter. Therefore the chief cause of worms is greedinesse in Children, taking in much meat without order, which easily corrupteth: or they have a disposition to breed worms, as when they eat flesh too soon, and Summer fruits, and other moist things, and according to the variety of their diet, they breed variety of worms, round or flat, or *Ascarides* called Arseworms, as the meat is disposed to take this or that form.

For the breeding of the flat worm, which is dissipated, I conclude that it is made by the forming faculty of disposed matter by the heat of the body: and as trees and other living creatures begin of small matter, so doth the flat worm become great from nourishment attracted; for no creature is made of its full stature and proportion at first. And the time between breeding of teeth and ripe age is the time chiefly for breeding of worms, though they breed in all ages, there be the causes mentioned.

There are such abundance of symptoms from worms, that they often puzzle the Physitian to know the cause; for there is vomiting often,

Heart-ach,

Heart-ach, Syncope, Hickets, pain in the guts, Colick like pains, head-ach, much sleep, doting, sadness, startings in the sleep, burning Feavers, Quinzy, Pleurisie, and many others, and sometimes death.

The three sorts of worms that is the round, broad, and the Ascarides, are of a membranous body: *The Differences.*

Because they often lie long in the body, they ought to be known by signs. The round, are most ordinary, and their signs, are knowing and wrinching at the guts, grinding or grating of the teeth, especially in the sleep, a constant cough, dry itch at the nose, a rotten face, the cheeks, one while blew, another red, the eyes hollow, with unaccustomed light about them sometimes, dimness of lips and tongue, or much subtle, stinking breath, loathing of stuffy or nasty, sometimes an unnatural appetite, with hickers, headach, and heaviness, and drowsiness, frights in the sleep, trembling and rising up, and sleeping again, with stretching of the belly like a drum beaten, sometimes bound, sometimes over loose, and the excrements are like Cow dung. The signs are not all in all people, but some in one, some in another. They who have the flat worms, are not so easily taken with Epilepsie, doting, watching, burning feaver, as they who have the round, except they are both together, for the flat are dull, and move slowly. *The Signs.*

All worms are evil, but the round brings the worst Symptoms, and the flat are worst to be cured. It is not dangerous in sound persons to have round worms come forth at their mouths, because they naturally follow the way, by which the food goes to the stomach. In sick people it *The Prognostick.*

is

is a bad sign, and it signifies that there is so much malignity as the worms cannot endure it. Therefore they come forth, not from the strength of nature, but the cruelty of the disease. Ber *Hippocrates* Com. That it is good when worms come forth with other excrements, when the disease declineth.

The Cure. Purge the worms with Soup and sour things, or with *Cordine* and *Sorrel*, or *worm-seed*, *Tansey seed*, and *Primrose roots*, *Lupines* boyled or in powder, or some such things in Pottage, as *water and decoction of Beef*, *Egg-broth*. *Mercury*, *Hartshorn*, *Ivory*, *Salt of Lemons*, *Spirit of Vitriol*, *Oyl of Sulphur*, *Quicksilver* with *Urine*, *Wormwood kills round worms.*

Brassavolus in exam. simplic. et. matric. lib. 5. c. 7. The flat worms must have stronger medicines, as *tincture of Fern roots* and *Scruples*, *with honied wine*. These are very long, and voided with more difficulty. They have a flat broad body with many clefts, and stick very close to the internal tunicle of the guts, and hide themselves among the excrements within, and do not feel the force of Physick passing by; therefore they must have strong Physick to kill them. *As the bark of Mulberry roots*, *and Coralline in a double quantity*, *or Treacle in Vinegar*, *or the juice of a Lemmon*, *decoction of Centaury*, *Lupines*, *Scordium*, *or Aloes with Saffron and Scowch*, *or Hiera with Scammony.*

After they are killed or weakened, purge the matter that feeds them, with *Aloes*, *Agarick*, *Rhubarb*, *Senna*, *Coloquintida*, *or with Diaturbith* and *Rhubarb*, which is the best Compound.

Or make it into Worm-wood-wine. Take *Zedoary Worm-seed* each two scruples; *Coralline half an ounce*, *Angelica root two scruples*, *Wormwood half a handful*: infuse *in the three pints of Wine* give a draught

draught morning and evening Or, Take *earth-worms a scruple, Harts horn, Coralline. Dittany, Wormseed, each half a scruple*; make a Pouder, give *a dram or two.*

These kill and expel. Take *Coralline, Plantane seed, Harts-horn burnt, white Dittany, each a dram*; *Rhubarb, Agarick, each two drams*; *with Sugar* make Lozenges. Or, Take *Coralline two scruples, Tansey seed, Wormseed, white Dittany, each half a scruple*; *Rhubarb, Agarick, each a scruple*; *with Sugar* make Troches. *from a scruple to a dram* to infants give *Harts-horn and Mechoacan.*

Outwardly use Cataplasms of Lupines, Centaury, Peach leaves, Wormwood, and the gal of an Ox, &c.

Take *juyce of Wormwood, Peach leaves, Ox gal, each half an ounce*; *Coriander seed, Aloes, each a scruple*; *with wax* make a Liniment Or use *Treacle dissolved with the juyce of a Lemmon or Vinegar.*

If round worms be not dead, give no Clysters, because they creep upwards, and cause divers Symptoms. Some give sweet Clysters to tempt them down. In flat worms give many strong Clysters. As,

Take *Wormwood, Scordium, Southernwood, Coralline, Tansey tops, Dittany, each a handful*; *Wormseed half an ounce, smal Centaury half a handful, Coloquintida tied in a clout a scruple and half*, boyl, *and in a pint strained*, dissolve *Hiera simple two scruples, Honey of Roses three ounces.* At the time when this Clyster is given, give a medicine at the mouth to kill worms, and apply a Topick to the stomach.

You may cure the Ascarides with a Suppository, because they are in the strait gut, to which use *Platerus lib. 3. practic.*

use Turpentine that they may stick to it, and use Clysters in a small quantity.

Let the Diet be temperate to resist the breeding of worms, of good juyce, and easie to be distributed, give Wine, but not sweet, if there be a Feaver, give Grass, Sorrel and Purslane-water, with syrup of Vinegar or juyce of Citrons. With meat, take Lupines, Watercresses, Beets, Radish, Smallage, avoid Milk, Fish and Pulse: the Decoction of Sebestens is the best drink for Children.

Chap. 6. *Of the altering of place of the Guts, and of a Rupture.*

Crium's. lib. 15. cap. 10.

They are sometimes drawn to the Hypochondria, and there is a cavity below, sometimes they are rouled and knit together, that the excrements cannot get out as in *Ileos*, which is called *Convolutus* from the rouling together of the Guts. The cause is wind or inflammation, of which hereafter.

Of a Rupture.

There are but two sorts of true *Hernia* or Rupture, namely, the falling of the guts, and of the fat or Omentum out of the paunch: it is from the Peritoneum or Caul loose, or broken, hence the parts fall into the Cods, and when the Gut Ileum falls down, it is called a Rupture with the Guts or *Hernia intestinalis*, when the Omentum or fat falls, it is called *Epiplocele* or the rupture of the Omentum. Some

have

have a third sort, when both are fallen together. If these parts stay in the Groyn, and fall not into the Cod, it is an imperfect rupture called *Bubonocele*. This tumor is in the groyns of women, but it stretcheth the skin much, and makes a great tumor.

Some make *Pneumatocele* and *Hydrocele* two other kinds of Ruptures, but they cannot be properly called Ruptures, because the Peritonæum is neither broken nor loose, there is also mention of *Circocele*, and *Sarcocele*, but it is a varicous and fleshy rupture, but these are not properly ruptures, because in these nothing falls down from the Abdomen into the Cods, of which in Diseases of the Cods.

The swelling of the Navil is to be referred to the change of the place in the Guts, when the Navil is as big as a Walnut or an Apple, or like a bag, as in women in hard travail when the Peritonæum is broken.

When the Peritonæum is loose or broken, the Guts or Omentum easily fall by their weight into the Groyn or Guts. *The Causes* The cause of the breaking of the Peritonæum, is violent motion, falls, or strokes, riding hard on a Trotter, Vomiting, Cough, lifting of great weight, Belly-bound, labour in Child-bearing, wind in the Guts, loud hallowing, a wound in the Peritonæum. If they be of little force, they only loosen it, and the weakness and moisture of the Peritonæum and Groyns, to add much to this.

An Intestinal or Gut-rupture is known by a *The Signs.* tumor, sometimes up, sometimes down, and vanished as more or less of the Guts fall down, when the tumor is prested, the Guts go in with a noise. It is with great pain when the excrements are fallen into the gut and cannot be put

Lack, otherwise there is no pain. In a Rupture of the Omentum, the tumor is soft, loose, and slippery, and almost always the same, because it is not easily put up as the Guts. The sign of *Bubonocle* is that it is round, and in the groyn, and goes on with a little pressing, but in the Rupture in the Cod, it appears in the Cod.

The Prognostick. Every Rupture is hard to be cured, except it be in a child and new, nor is there great danger, except the excrements descend with the Guts, & are hard; for then if they be not presently looked after, there will be an Inflammation, which will endanger the life.

The Cure. First put up the gut, which is easie, if it be soft and without excrements, as wind, dung: if there be wind, use Discussers at the mouth, if the excrements are hard and fallen down, soften presently, for there is danger. Take *Althæa, Lilly, Briony roots*, each an ounce; *Mallows, Pellitory of Mercury, Violet leaves, Brankursine*, each a handful; *Fænugreek and Linseed*, each half an ounce; *Figs in two parts*, boyl them in a pint strained, add *fresh Butter, Hens grease*, each two ounces; make a Cataplasm, and lay up the residents for a Cataplasm. If this will not do make a Bath of Sweet Water of Emolients and Oyls; the Omentum falling into the groyn is put up with the hand, but if it fall into the Cod, lay him upon his back, and put it up with the use of Emollients

Lib. 7. c. 15. When these do no good, use Chirurgery, as *Parens* shews, but consider the Disease and the strength of the Patient; for if there be Inflammation or the like, it will do no good, moreover the guts fretted & putrifying upon the skin may easily be cut.

When

When the gut is put up, take heed it fall not out again, with tents and rouleirs, as *Paræus* 15. & *Plashews*. Then let the body be kept loose, and let the hand be laid to the groyn and cod, when he is at stool, lest in straining, the guts come forth. *Lib. 7. c. ult. 3.*

Let the party keep his bed some daies, lying on his back, and take medicines inward and outward. The chief Topick is the Plaister of a Rams skin of *Arnoldus de Villa nova*.

Thus made. Take *Litharge, Bloodstone, Dragons blood, Bole, Mastich, Aromaticum, Galbanum, Frankincense, Cassus, Earth worms*, each half a scruple; *Comfrey roots, green Galls, Hypocistis, Pomegranate flowers, round Birthwort*, each six scruples; *Pitch, red and white Wax*, each a scruple; *Misleto of the Oak, Turpentine*, each two scruples; *Harmodactils* nine ounces, boyl a *Rams skin with the wool a whole day in a Gelley*: strain it, take a pint, let *Birdlime* boyl in it, and stir it, then put in the other pouder, and then the *Wax, Pitch and Turpentine*, boyl them to a Plaister. You may add pouder of Mans blood dried. See *Arnoldus de Villa nova*.

Or this: Take *Comfrey roots an ounce, red Roses, Barley meal, each half an ounce*; make a pouder, *and with Goats grease a Liniment, or with wax an Oyntment*, apply a clout dipt in it every day but first foment with this Decoction. Take *Comfrey roots three ounces, Sanicle, Solomons-seal, Shepherds-purse, Plantane, Mouse-ear, Horstail, each two handfuls*; *red Roses, Pomegranate flowers, each two pugils*; *with Water and Wine* make a Fomentation. After this anoint with this. Take *Oyl of Mastich two ounces, Myrtles a dram, Oyl of Myrrh, Aloes, Wormwood, each a scruple*; *Dear's sues two scruples, juyce of Comfrey roots an ounce*, boyl them till

till the juyce is consumed, strain and add *Sugar* [illegible] *Oyl of Turpentine*, and so keep it for use.

Some [illegible] are better than others, as great [illegible], new Eggs, Hens [illegible] the juice of [illegible] Cucumbers, Purslain, Sorrel, Sorrel with [illegible] Mercury, Sage, Rue, Betony, Fennel, [illegible] Hyssop, Centaury the Less, Lupins, Dandelion, That the juices [illegible] together, or [illegible] the [illegible] Poultry. Or, this Powder: Take of *Fennel-seeds*, *Anniseeds*, *Coriander*, *Cumin*, each two spoonfuls, *Diasena* scruple, make a Powder. You may add *Sugar of Roses*. Or, Take *Coriander prepared*, *Red Rose-buds*, of *Comfrey*, *Bugle*, *Knot-wort*, *Pimpernel*, *Acorns*, each two ounces; of *Sugar* half an ounce. Confection powder with the Syrup of *Myrtles* [illegible], make a table Diet.

Others [illegible] *A Lord can* is better to [illegible] and the [illegible] *Honey* and [illegible] *Sugar* [illegible] *Capons* [illegible] *ten days, and rouled.*

Fallopius, Platerus, Parens. [illegible] [illegible], Fennel-seed, or let him bite on it.

Chap. 7. *Of coming forth of the Anus or Fundament.*

SOmetimes the [illegible] of the Fundament hangs out, and cannot be reduced to its place.

The Causes First, great straining to stool and in hard travel. 2. Or it is from [illegible], as in Tenasmus or pissing. 3. It is from [illegible] made in the Perinæum to take out the Stone. 4. It is from the relaxing of the muscles of the Fundament,

or

or the weakneſs of them that cannot draw back the Fundament, when it is out. And this weakneſs comes from cold, ſitting upon a cold ſtone, or ſtaying in the cold water. Children have it from their tenderneſs.

If it come from an external cauſe, the patient will tell you. If from weakneſs of the muſcles, it is often, but it never comes forth, except by ſtraining. *The Signs.*

Old men are harder to be cured then young, when it is from Teneſmus or flux of the belly, it is not cured, except you remove the cauſe. That is moſt dangerous, which is from the tearing of the ſtrait gut, from the membranes, of the Meſentery to which it was fixed. *The Prognoſtick.*

When it is down, it muſt ſuddenly be put up with the hand gently. If it be ſwollen, foment it with *decoction of Mallows, Althæa, Chamomil flowers, Line and Fenugreek ſeed, anoint the part with freſh Butter*; then keep it in with aſtringents, and take away the cauſe with this Decoction. *The Cure.*

Take *Pomegranate peele and flowers, each an ounce*; *Mirtle-berries, ſumach, Plantane ſeeds, each two drams*; *Plantane, Shepheards purſe, and red Roſes, each a handful*; boyl them *in red wine for a Fomentation.* Then anoint with *Oyl of Roſes Myrtles*, and ſprinkle on *the powder of Maſtich, and Dragons blood, and the reſt.*

Or this Fume *of Frankincenſe, Maſtich, Ladanum, Colophony, red Roſes, Bdellium, Nutmegs, Cloves, Mace.* Or a Bath *of Comfrey, oaken leaves, Yarrow, Bettony, Sage, Groundſine.* If it be from weakneſs of the muſcles in the Fundament, uſe *Oyl of Spike and of Eyes*: of this *Amatus Luſitanus.* *Cent. 1. Cur. 39.*

To Conquer all Infirmities Study my *Seanertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus* and *Riolanus*, of the laſt Editions.

Chap. 8. *Of Wounds in the Guts.*

Benive. de abd. sanat. caus. c. 67.

THe guts are broken by wounds external, and from internal wormes, which is seldom.

The Signs.

The thin guts are wounded when meat and drink comes forth at the wound; choler is vomited, the Præcordia are stretched, and hard, with great pain, and a feaver. If the thick guts are wounded, the dung comes out there, and the belly is bound.

The Prognostick.

Wounds in the small guts are thought to be deadly, but they may be cured. Wounds in the [illegible] made, are [illegible]; but they are dangerous, when [illegible] them to be blew, they are incurable.

The Cure. Gal. de meth. c. 4.

1. Stitch the gut, if possible. 2. Then foment with warm white Wine, in which Roses, Chamomil, Wormwood are boyled. 3. If it be out, put it in. 4. Take heed the dung hurts not in the passage, and at last heal the wound. There are in Authors many waies of stitching up the guts, as the Skinners stitch; then foment the part, and apply this pouder of Aloes, Mastich, Frankincense, Dragons blood. if the guts swel, apply a Pigeon, or Hen split, to the tumor, and when it is down anoint with Oyl of Mastich and Chamomil. If it cannot be put up, cut off some of the [illegible] and Peritonæum, and after cutting, put a wax candle in, and let it stay til the guts be put up, then bind and tosle them in that they fall out no more.

If

If the thick guts are wounded, make Clysters of vulnery Herbs, as *Comfrey, Horstail, Mouseear*, and then cure the wound.

Chap. 9. *Of Ulcers and Gangræne of the Guts.*

THe guts are chiefly ulcerated in a Dysentery, therefore they shall be spoken of there.

They mortifie, when after a wound they fall out, and turn black or blew. This happens also in ruptures, in the Ileos, and in the inflammation of the guts, that turns to a Sphacel, and is incurable: also the near parts corrupt, as I have observed.

Chap. 10. *Of the Diseases of the streight Gut.*

THey are inflammations, Condylomata, or tumors, figs, or piles, Crista, or Cockescombs, Rhagades, or clefts, ulcers, fistula's; sometimes it is shut besides nature, of which before, Chap 3.

Inflammation of the Fundament and Hæmorrhoids.

Blood sent out of the veins that are in the streight gut, causeth inflammation. This is from hard riding, or strokes, or other violence; or from the Hæmorrhoids open, and from poysonous corroding medicines.

It is hard to be cured, and is dangerous, be- *The Signs.*
cause the things voided, will not suffer a medi-

cine to be applied. Inflammation often turns to an ulcer.

The Cure. First, open a vein in the arm and in the ankle, if need be. Then at first to repel, use Nightshade or Purslain, crums of Bread, Rose water, oyl of Roses, with yelks of eggs. In the increase, use crums of wheaten bread, with Oyl of sweet Almonds. In the state of the disease, make a Fomentation of Mallows, Althæa, Chamomil and Melilot flowers, or a Cataplasm of the same with Linseed meal.

If it tend to Suppuration, help that, least it gangrene.

To these tumors belong the Hæmorrhoids, of which hereafter.

Condyloma, Fig, Piles, Crista, or Cocks-comb, or Thymus.

Some take Condyloma not for a kind of wart, but for a tumor of the skin in the Fundament, that is hard, from a melancholick humor that grows thither, not very painful, but with inflammation sometimes.

Thymus is a rough wart, with a narrow root, and broad top, reddish. If these grow great, they are called figs. Some are malignant, and cancerate.

Crista are excrescences of Flesh, like Cocks-combs in the Fundament, from the French pox.

The Signs. They use to be seen and distinguished from the Hæmorrhoids.

The Prognostick. Thymus or a rotself wart is worst, especially if it bleed. If they be malignant and cancerous, they come to ill ulcers and eating ulcers. If they be the pox they are harder cured.

At

At first they are curable by medicines, but when old, they must be cured by Chirurgery. Take *Scales of Brass a scruple, Orpiment half a scruple, Allum two scruples, with Oyl of Roses,* make an Oyntment. To keep them from growing again, use *the ashes of a Vine and Vinegar.* *The Cure.*

The Rhagades or Clefts.

They are like those in the hands and feet that come from cold. Some are deeper then others, and harder, and moister; they come from a flux of sharp humors that stick to the part, and corrode, and they are sometimes with the French pox.

If they are from a sharp humor, there is itching and pain; if from the pox, they stink, and are mattery. You may see if they be callous or cancerous. *The Signs.*

Rhagades or clefts are hard to be cured, by reason of the exquisite sense of the part, which is troubled with a sharp medicine, and because they are hurt by the excrements passing by. They often fistulate, and need Chirurgery. *The Prognostick.*

If it come from dryness. Take *Marrow of a Deer's shank, Hors grease and Ducks, fresh Butter, Oyl of sweet Almonds, Poppy and Sesamin seed, each a dram; Litharge half a scruple, Tragacanth a scruple, with wax* make an Oyntment. If they are in a cacochymick body, temperate and evacuate the humors. Use gentle things, as Cassia, Manna, Syrup of Roses, Rhubarb, Diacatholicon. If they are from a moist distemper, Take *Plantane, Bramble tops, red Roses, each a handful; Barley half a handful, Allum a scruple,* boyl them *in water,* add *the third part Wine,* then use this Oyntment. Take *Cerus washt, Litharge, Aloes,* *The Cure.*

Mastich, Frankincense, Sarcocol, Sole, each two drams; powder them, and with *Wax and Oyl of Roses* make an *Oyntment* in a Leaden Mortar.

Ulcers of the Fundament.

These come of Inflammations, and are simple or putrid, or callous, or fistulated.

The Causes. The Causes are flows of humors of divers sorts, wounds of the Privie-parts, long rideing.

The Signs. They within are known by the matter that comes forth.

The Prognostick. Malignant hidden Ulcers are difficult to be cured, and when they are great, they are deadly.

The Cure. The Cure is with strong Driers and Astringents that bite not, first cleanse with Barley water and Honey'd wine, then dry thus. Take *Diapompholigos album, camphorated, each an ounce and half; Oyl of Myrtles, Roses, each half an ounce; Manna, Frankincense, Aloes, each half an ounce; Litharge of Silver half a scruple, juyce of Nightshade, Moulin, Plantane as much as will make an oyntment in a Leaden Mortar.*

Fistula in the Fundament.

This is from Inflammation not well cured, from a corrupt matter left within, which makes boroughs, and infects the parts adjacent.

Diff. Some have one hollow or cavity, others more, some pierce the strait gut, others not.

The Signs. In these ulcers, they are distinguished [illegible] because they have a narrow orifice, [illegible] within, and matter comes out, [illegible] and then the parts do swell, sometimes water and venom comes forth, you

you may try with the Probe what passages there are.

All piercing and callous Fistula's are hard to be cured, if they pierce the bladder or streights, they are incurable. Therefore only palliate it if they be four fingers deep: the Fistula not incurable, is in the flesh and new. *The Prognostick.*

Fistulaes that do not hurt are to be let alone, because Nature discharges superfluous humors by them, but every day wash them with the decoction of Agrimony, Olive leaves, Allum, with a Syringe enlarge the orifice with Gentian root, or Elder pith. *The Cure.*

If the Fistula is to be cured, first wash with wine and Iris, or Barley water, with Myrrh, Allum, and Verdigreese, then put in a Tent with Ægyptiacum to consume the callus, to which purpose make incision, if it be superficial, then consume the callus, the ancients had other waies. *Hippocr. lib. de fistulis celsus lib. 7. c. 4.*

Of Intertrigo or Galling.

It is an Excoriation between the Thighs neer the Fundament, or taking off of the Skin by riding. *Ætius & Paulus. Valesc. de Tar.*

It is cured with Coat or Deers suet or Goose grease, Hen grease, oyl of Roses, Myrtles, or with wild Tansie applied. Or, Take *burnt Lead an ounce, Galls half an ounce, Allum a scruple, Myrrh two scruples,* make a *Powder,* use it daily *The Cure.*

THE THIRD BOOK, And the SECOND SECTION.

Of Symptoms in the Guts.

Chap. 1. *Of the action of the Guts hurt, and chiefly of the motion of the Guts turned, or* Ileos.

BY *Ileos*, I mean that great pain of the guts called *Miserere mei*, when the excrements come out of the mouth, and they are to be pitied: but it is a motion of the fibres of the Guts which should be drawn downward, and is now drawn upwards,

upwards, so that whatsoever is in the Guts are sent to the Stomach and not to the Fundament, it is called *Convolvulus*, because they roul upwards, and the passage of the excrements is stopt, so that neither wind cannot get downward, but all are vomited up dung and all.

The Causes

The immediate cause is not that which the vulgar suppose, a great obstruction of the thin guts, for if they be stopt, how can excrements be vomited up from the guts? therefore I conclude that the cause is immediately, the inverted preternatural motion of the distributing and expulsive faculty of the chyle, for when the fibres of the guts contract themselves from above downwards, there is a destribution of the meat and dung, but this is when they contract themselves upwards, and Clysters are sometimes vomited up, and a Suppository twice or thrice, and the string hath been broke that tied them, and they have come up, hence it is manifest that in the *Convolvulus* the passage is not so stopt as they say, and this *Galen* observed, and there are three causes of this inverted motion. 1. Inflammation of the Guts, 2. Retention of the dung, which stretcheth, and twitcheth, and provoketh nature to this preposterous excretion. 3. Ulcers in the guts from humors that provoke nature: to these you may add poyson, and according to these causes we shall speak of *Ileos*.

Gutyner. h. 5. t. 2 2. De sympt can. 6. 3.

The Signs.

Galen saith in *Convolvulus* or *Ileos*, nothing goes downwards, *Ætius* saies there is pain in the belly, rouling and rumbling, not eased by belching, in the increase of the disease, all comes up, choler, flegm, &c. the body is cold all over, with pain in the guts, and short wind, when they are dying a cold sweat taketh, the Urin is stopt, and

7. Aphor. com. 10.

and the Fundament is so closed that it will take in nothing, and the excrements are vomited up. If the small guts suffer, there is stretching of the Stomach, short wind and loathing, constant vomiting, nothing stays, the pain is higher. If the thick guts suffer, the pain is in the Hypochondria, with heavinesse of the Loyns and less vomiting.

The Prognostick. Every *Ileos* is very dangerous, when dung is vomited it is deadly, if all the guts are hurt, it is more dangerous, Boys are eaiier cured then Men.

The Cure. If the Arse hole be naturally strait, foment with an Emollient decoction, that a Suppository may be the better put up, foment the belly with Oyl of sweet Almonds, Chamomil, Dill, or make a hot bath of Oyl or a Fomentation of Emollients, or a Cataplasm of them and Barley flour, Line and Fænugreek, with sweet Almonds and Chamomil, or Emollient Clysters, Oyl of sweet Almonds, fat broath, with Emollients is excellent, and if it be vomited up, try it again and again, for so the fibres of the guts will be loosned, and there disorderly motion hindered.

Of the Ileos *from Inflammation.*

Gal. 5. epid. co. 2. t. 6. & 6. de lo. aff. c. 2. The thin Guts have more veins, and when blood comes from them to the membranes of the guts, there is an Inflammation causing *Ileos.*

The Signs. It is a very acute disease, with a great fever and fixed pain, the strength faileth, they keep neither meat nor drink; they hicket, sweat, and are sometimes in a convulsion: the urin is stopt, the belly swollen, and the breath is short, there

were

were hot causes, falling of the guts into the cods, or poyson.

Few escape, when it is from this cause. *The Prognostick.*

It is as other inward inflammations, of which see the inflammation of the guts. *The Cure.*

Of the Ileos from other tumors, and an Ulcer.

There is an inverted motion of the guts, from tumors, as from a cancer in the Colon that a Smith had, and turned to an Ileos. *Gal. 6. aph. 44.*

If from an impostume, there is pain, and a feaver sometimes, the tumor may be felt. If from a Scirrhus, the gut was long hard, and might be felt, or there was a heavinesse that draw'd the guts, the belly is not free. From a cancer, the hardnesse is to be felt. If it be from poyson, the standers by will tell you. *The Signs.*

Ileos from a Scirrhus or cancer is incurable, because it will not give time to take them away, from poyson it is dangerous. *The Prognostick.*

That from poyson is cured as that from inflammation, only a vein is not to be opened, and you must use Antidotes internal and external. *The Cure.*

Of Ileos from hard Excrements.

When dung is hard, and stops the guts, that nothing can pass, there is Ileos; the signs are long costiveness, a gentle pain, heavinesse and stretching of the belly, belching, a feaver, vomiting of choler and flegm, and at last the excrements.

It is less dangerous then in other causes, but it is alwaies dangerous, when excrements are vomited up. *The Prognostick.*

You must do as in the colick from hard dung, use Emollients by Oyntments, Fomentations, *The Cure.*

Cata-

Cyclists. Clysters. Baths of Emollients, or of Cyclists [illegible] an emollient Clyster. After bathing, give [illegible] and foment the Perinæum with a sponge [illegible] an emollient Decoction.

Take of Raisins, Oyl of sweet Almonds, Jesamine [illegible] Butter, decoction of Mallows, [illegible] an hour afore meat, or Clysters [illegible].

I have known these forts of the flowing up the humours, in an hypochondriack person.

Quest. *Whether in the Iliack passion, nothing be voided by stool?*

It is confirmed by *Galen* and other Authors, that nothing is voided downwards in this disease. But *Hippocrates* in the History of a Woman that had this disease at *Thasimen*, saith, that she voided thin, little, and crude matter. This place *Galen* in his Comment took no notice of. But it may be thus reconciled. *Galen* and others spake of the disease compleat. For this excretion spoken of by *Hippocrates*, was at the beginning of the disease, when there was not cause enough to produce the inverted motion of the guts.

2 *Epid. sect.* 3. *t.* 7.

Chap. 2. *Of the Colick.*

THe guts have other diseases besides the Ileos, as the Colick so called, from the part affected. It is sometimes so fierce, that it makes the patient labour to kill himself. The gut Colon is chiefly afflicted, but others may also suffer.

The

The immediate cause of this pain is solution of continuity from distending or stretching or corroding; for grume he gut, choler and blood inflamed, wind, do not cause pain, but solution of continuity. Now this matter is either contained in the cavity of the guts, by reason of their straitness. Or in the tunicles or coats of the guts, whether it corrode or stretch, or both. Sometimes the matter causing the Colick is venemous and malignant, or the like, which hath force to separate unity. *The Cause.*

The chief are from the part affected, for the pain is either in all the gut (which is seldom) or in one, either thin or thick gut. If it be in a thin gut, it is the Iliack; if in a thick, it is the Colick. In others, it is called generally a pain in the guts. *The Differences.*

The pain of the Colick is not always one, and the same, but varieth by the variety of the cause. It is in the guts fixed in one place under the navel, like a Dagger or Wimble. Or it is moved to and fro, and it is known to the colick, because it begins with the Colon about the right kidney, where the pain is commonly fixed, and ascends to the gibbous part of the liver, and so to the spleen, and the left kidney like a girdle; and there goes down to the strait gut, so that the pain is sometimes about the spleen and left kidney, sometimes and more usual in the right. The stomach consenteth in suffering with it, so that there is dejected appetite, loathing and vomiting. *The Signs.*

How this is distinguished from other diseases, you may know by their signs mentioned in their proper Chapters.

Pain being a violent Symptome, by reason of the constant dissipation or scattering of Spirits, and *The Prognostick.*

and strength brings the principal parts to consent, and suffer. And though this pain be commonly short, yet it is vehement. If it be like to prove deadly, the pain still increaseth, and fixeth to one part constant, the excrements are stopt, there is watching, and hickets follow, vomiting, coldness of the outward parts, cold sweats, swounding. This pain of the Colick is often changed into another disease, as pain of the back, running gout, and palsie.

The Cure. If the pain be very violent, you must a while neglect the cause, and mind that. And use Anodynes and Narcoticks. Anodynes are *Oyl of sweet Almonds taken from three to four or five ounces, with half an ounce of fine Sugar.* If there be heat, mix a little Syrup of Violets, The Decoction of Camomil is an excellent Anodyne. If he abhorre these, give Clysters. As, Take *Mallows, Pellitory, Chamomil flowers, each a handful; Dill tops half a handful, Fænugreek and Linseed, each half an ounce;* boyl them *to a pint,* and add *Oyl of sweet Almonds two ounces, Hens or Goose-greasc an ounce,* make a Clyster. Or make a Fomentation of the same with a Hogs bladder.

In a cold cause, use hot things; in a hot, cold. When Anodynes do no good, use Narcoticks simple or compound, to be taken by the mouth or Clyster. These are not so good in cold tough humors, for they make them more unfit for motion: and they must not be given, when the strength is dejected. Make a Clyster of Narcoticks, thus.

Take *the decoction of Chamomil flowers, or the like, a pint, Philonium Romanum, or Requies Nicolai an ounce, Oyl of sweet Almonds two ounces.* Apply the same things outwardly. As, Take

Pelli-

Pellitory leaves, Henbane, each a handful; boyl and beat them, add *Chamomil flowers, Lineseed and Fænugreek in pouder, each half an ounce; Saffron half a scruple, Opium half a dram, yolks of three Egs, Oyl of Poppies two ounces, Oyl of Chamomil and Dill, each an ounce*; make a *Pultis.*

These help by propriety, half a scruple, or a scruple of Wolves dung found among grass, not upon the Earth, with a little Salt and Pepper, and thin wine, inwardly and outwardly: or the guts of a Wolf, or the bird Galerita boyled in broath: or pouder of burnt Garlick taken in Water. *Cal. lib. 10. de simp. 1. med. fac.*

Of the Colick from Wind and abundance of Excrements in the Guts, that cause pain by stretching them.

This pain ceaseth when the passage is open. It comes after eating of fruits, or drinking new Wine, it is called crudity: for an obstruction only and stoppage of the excrements do not suffice to cause a Colick, but there must be much wind. The passage of both are demed when the excrements stop the winding passages of the Colon, by plenty or drinesse. The same is from hard and thick bodies, as hard Cheese, tough Flegm, stones bred in the guts, of which *Sckenkius.* If the matter be in the small guts, it is the Iliack, which is often taken for the Chlolick. The same comes from thinness and rotting together of the guts, which makes the Colon very thick. *Lib. 3. obser.*

Windy and crude diet causeth a gathering of excrements which is the sign, and if they pass and get out, there is a Diarrhœa or Cholera; there is also stretching of the belly with numbing

bling. If it come from hard excrements, there is a pressing pain, and the belly was bound, whether it be from dryness or use of Astringent meats. If there be a stone in the guts, the pain is fixed and of long continuance.

The Prognostick. If it abate by gentle means, it is well, and better, and the matter come forth by Clysters. A stone is harder to be voided then hard excrements.

The Cure. In this sort of pain, wind is the immediate cause, therefore begin with Clysters with Anodynes. They are to be altered according to the intention, and repeated till the obstruction be removed. Thus,

Take *Althæa, Mallows, Pellitory, Mercury, each a handful; Althæa and white Lilly roots, each half an ounce; Fine figs,* boyl them in water, to a pint add *Cassia an ounce, Oyl of Violets, and Dill, each an ounce and half;* with the *yolk of an Egg* make a *Clyster* to allay the pain.

Another, to mollifie, abate pain, discuss wind, and evacuate the matter.

Take *Mercury, Pellitory, Althæa, Mallows, each a handful; Rue, Chamomil flowers, Melilot, each half a handful; Dill, Carum seeds, and Bayberries, each two spoonfuls;* boyl, and to a pint strained, add *Diapœnicon and Benedicta laxativa, each six drams; Electuary of Bayberries two drams, Oyl of Rue an ounce and half,* make a *Clyster.* If Clysters prevail not, forbear them, least they distemper the guts; and give a Lenitive but if you will discuss wind, you may use this Clyster.

Take *Organ, Rue, Parsly Seeds, each a handful; Chamomil, Melilot flowers, each half a handful;* boyl, and to a pint strained, add *Fleer pi-*

fyl

cra, Diaphœnicon, each half an ounce; Electuary of Bayberries a dram, Oyl of Dill, Rue, each an ounce and half.

To warm the Guts, give a pint of good Sack in a Clyster, with oyl of Dill, Chamomil, sweet Almonds, or oyl of Baves.

Or use purging Wines thus made. Take *Fennel, Acorus, Elicampane, Masterwort roots, each half an ounce; Wormwood five scruples, Calamints, Organ, Rosemary, Chamomil, Elder flowers, each a pugil; Orange and Citron peels, each three ounces; Fennel and Cicuta seed, each a dram; Juniper and Bay berries, each four scruples; Senna an ounce and half, Agarick half an ounce, Turbith two scruples,* bruise and infuse them in *Wine*, drink a draught when the belly is bound, *Chamomil flowers* boyled in Wine are very excellent, or *Cummin seed* boyled with them.

To be a skilful Physitian study my Bonnerus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus, and Riolanus, of the last Edition.

A Water against the Colick. Take *Cinnamon half an ounce, Aniseed half a pound, wild Carrot seeds two scruples, Spignel roots four scruples, Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, each a scruple*; steep them in two pints of *Wine*, distill and sweeten it with *Sugar*.

Or give Castor, Pepper, and Aniseeds, each equal parts; or Treacle and Mithridate.

Outwardly apply bags of Chamomil, Dill tops, Calamints, Rue, Milium, and Salt parched with a little Wine, hot to the Belly. Or a Tile wet in Sack.

Take heed when the excrements are very hard, that you give not a strong purge before you have mollified them with Clysters, for it will hurt.

Some give Quick-silver in a desperate case, it carries down dung with its weight, or Bul-

Ambr. par. lib. 16. c. 28. In a Colick from a stone in the guts, give slippery things that provoke the expulsive faculty. That from worms must be cured, as you cure worms. If pain come from displacing of the guts, or breaking of the Peritonæum, see *Hernia* or rupture.

The Diet. Let it be little and thin. In a cold humor *Galen* commends Garlick to expel wind, because it causeth not thirst, except the stomach be cholerick.

Of a Cholick from Worms.

See an example of this *Guil. Fabricius*, of a Maid of twelve years, which he cured. He gave after *Cent. 1. obs. 57.* universals, a clyster of milk and a knot of worms came forth, as big as a fist.

Of the Colick from tough humors in the tunicles or coats of the guts.

Many times cold and thick humors and wind are in the coats of the thick guts, which cannot get forth, but cause great pain by stretching of the parts. This slimy flegm is from surfeits and idleness, because choler which is the spur to expulsion, comes not to those places. It may stick long there before it causeth pain; but when it is very much, and with wind (as it is always) there are sudden great pains, from distention and twitching of the coat of the guts: and when this humor is evacuated, the pain ceaseth. But alterers will not do it.

Gal. 6. de Loc. aff. c. 2.

The Signs. This cause is known, the pain is like a stick fixed in the part by reason of the great stretching where this flegm sticketh: it is not so in other causes.

The Prognostick. The pain is bad and lasteth, because the flegm is slimy and tough, and the part where it is, is thick. First,

First, give a Clyster, thus. Take *the Emolliens* *The Cure.*
roth a handful; Chamomil and Melilot flowers, each half a handful; Fœnugreek seed half an ounce, boyl and add *Oyl of Chamomil and Rue, each an ounce.*

Strong Clysters at first do hurt. Give at the mouth Honey of Rotes, Hiera: forbear Agarick saith *Avicen*, least it cause vomiting, which is not good when the belly is thus bound. Give syrup of the dyers Thorn, and of the two roots of Hyssop, Oxymel, and the like.

When the matter is attenuated, give stronger Clysters, adding Calamints, Centaury, Carthamus seed bruised, Benedicta laxativa, and oyl of Rue.

Give another after six or eight hours in which *Agarick a dram* is boyled, and with *Diaphœnicon and Benedicta laxativa, each half an ounce; troches of Alhandal two drams, or Turpentine with other purgers.*

Some make *hollow a Coloquintida Apple, and* *Aëtius tet.* *take out the seeds, and fill it with sweet Wine, and let* *trab. 3.* *it infuse a night, then they strain it clear, and drink* *serm. 1.* *the wine hot, and let the patient walk.* It is a Se- *c. 31.* cret in the Colick from tough flegm.

While you use attenuaters and cutters, use Clysters, Fomentations, Baths, and other externals that loosen the part. That it be not pained with the etching, and expel wind, anoint the belly all over with Oyl of sweet Almonds, Chamomil, Bayes, Lillies; and foment with the Decoction of Chamomil, Melilot flowers, Fœnugreek boyled in Wine.

Then use dry Fomentations, to discuss what is attenuated. Of Milium, Salt, Bran, Camomil, Rue, Dill, Bayes.

The Diet. Let the Diet be slender, of good juyce, easie concoction, with things that cut and attenuate.

Of the Colick from a sharp scorbutick humor.

This pain comes also from hot choler, not in the cavity of the guts, but in the coats of them. Hence comes the epidemical Colick in *Moravia, Austria, Franconia*, where there are strong wines sulphurious and tartarous, and this often ends in a Palsie, Joynt-gout or Epilepsie.

The Signs. Causes of sharp Choler went before, the pain is sharp, with thirst, bitterness of mouth, watching, vomiting, the belly is bound, the urine burns, and is red, cool things do good.

The Prognostick. The Colick often turns to the Palsie, sometimes into the Joynt-gout, the Epilepsie, as the humor falls upon this or that part. It is a disease of continuance, and vexeth by relapses.

The Cure. It is good while strength lasteth to drink Water. Many learned Authors write that in a cholerick Colick, when hot means hurt, they give cold water to drink, and apply it with a clout to the navel, or cold Epithems. If the belly be bound, add Purgers to Coolers, as Tamarinds, Manna, Rhubarb, syrup of Roses. As, Take *syrup of Roses two ounces Whey three ounces, oyl of sweet Almonds, Chicken broath made with Chamomil flowers, Manna an ounce and half:* also *Hiera* is good to cleanse the guts, of corroding humors; give it with Coolers. *Galen* adviseth Clysters. As, Take *Barley water a pint, Honey of Roses, Violets, red Sugar, each an ounce; the yolk of an Egg*, make a *Clysser*. Or of *Whey*. Or use things mentioned against pain and sharp humors.

6. Epid. com. 6. t. 5.

The Diet. Let the Diet be slender, thin and cooling, take heed of fasting, it breeds Choler, which increaseth

increaseth all by symptoms, drink little wine, and that small.

Of a Colick from Inflammation of the Guts.

Blood sent or drawn by its plenty or thinness may cause a Colick or an Inflammation in the Colon from pain, and the excrements may be stopped thereby.

It is known by a fixed beating pain about the part, there is also a Feaver and its symptoms, the belly is bound though there is a needing: if the thin Guts are inflamed, all things are vomited up, as in the Iliack. *The Signs.*

This pain from Inflammation of the Colon, will turn Iliack, and dangerous when the Inflammation is so great that the urin is stopt. *The Prognostick.*

See Section 1. Chap. 2. Some Authors mention a heat of the guts that causeth a Colick, but I suppose it the same with that of a sharp scorbutick tumor, which is called Choler. *The Cure. Platerus.*

Question 1. *Whether did ancient Physitians know the Colick?*

Though the Ancients called it not by that name, yet it is probable they knew it, because the causes of it are alwaies in the body. And they have mentioned a pain in the guts, and the iliack pain. Late ages have distinguished the Colick from the Iliack; and in Practice they must be distinguished, because the Colick is most on the left side, therefore take heed that you mistake not them for the pains of the Spleen or Kidneys.

Question 2. *Whether Distemper alone can cause the Colick?*

Neither a cold nor a hot distemper can cause

the Colick alone. It is not probable that flegm can grow so cold as to produce such a sharp pain; for it cannot be so cold while the body is alive, and neither can it come or go away so soon; but it is more probable that glassie flegm while it is carried through the veins gets deep into the tunicles of the Guts and stretcheth them, and causeth wind which also stretcheth and brings pain. And thus we must think of sharp Choler, that it doth not cause pain so much by heat as by corrotion or gnawing which causeth Inflammation.

Chap. 3. *Of the Iliack pain.*

ILiack passion and *Ileos* differ: The Iliack passion is pain in the thin guts, often called a Colick, the *Ileos* is a disease in which the excrements are vomited up, of which before.

Chap. 4. *Of the Retention of Excrements, or the Belly bound.*

THe belly sometimes doth discharge it self more seldom or less, according to the diet. Some are so bound naturally, that they go to stool but once in three or four, seven or ten daies, yet they eat well and have no sensible disease There are many examples of this, but chiefly that of the maid that went not to stool in three months, and of a noble Virgin, that for eight yeers had all excrements of stools, Urine, Sweat,

Scenkius lib. 3. obser.

Sweat, and Terms ſtopt, only ſhe had every third day a Clyſter; and ſhe lived full of dangerous Symptoms.

The Cauſe. 1. The want of excrements in the ſtraight gut, when they are vomited up, or ſent another way, or when the paſſage is ſtopt above it. 2. Few excrements, or not ſharp, for want of choler which is carried another way, or not mixed with them. 3. Numneſs of the arſe gut. 4. Cold and dry guts. 5. A fault in the muſcles of the belly. 6. Straitneſs of the guts. 7. The ſtrength of the retentive faculty. 8. Thickneſs, ſlimineſs, or hardneſs of the excrements.

That theſe cauſes may be known. Firſt, ſee if there was an external cauſe, as meat, drink, riding, coaching, or the like, which ſtop the belly. Then ſee for the internal cauſes, if there be jaundies, or any diſeaſe in the guts, or ſigns of a hot liver.

The Prognoſtick. The danger is more or leſs, as the cauſe is. It is good to go once or twice in a day to ſtool. If it come from inflamation of the guts, it is deadly. From other cauſes, there are great diſeaſes, pains, obſtructions, heavineſs and trouble.

The Cure. Give looſning and ſlippery meats, as *Mallows, Spinach, Beets, Oyl or Butter, and ſharp things, as juyce of Coleworts, Beets, Mercury, Whey, and much Honey, or Aloes, or Hiera given an hour afore meat.* Theſe ſtrengthen the guts and ſtomach, and help the expulſive faculty. It is ordinary to give Clyſters that moiſten and looſen gently, but it is bad to accuſtom nature, ſo to them that ſhe will not do her duty, without them or Suppoſitories.

Nor is it ſafe to give theſe Lenitives plentifully, for if the belly be much looſned, the next day

it wil be bound. Therefore give not sharp things but fat, as Oyl and Butter.

Nor may we omit the waies shewed by authors to keep the belly loose, as to walk bare-foot *Savinorola* the famous Physitian to the Duke of *Ferrara*, advised to walk upon stones washed, after fifty steps he had a large stool, and then the Physitian ordered the Dukes feet and leggs to be washed in warm water of the Decoction of hot herbs. But *Brassavolus* takes this for a dangerous remedy, because it causeth pain of the belly and loosness.

Chap. 5. *Of fluxes of the Belly in general: and of the Cœliack and Lientery.*

THere are divers fluxes of the belly. First, in respect of the matter; sometimes meat is voided, crude or imperfectly concocted: this is called Lientery or Cœliack flux. Sometimes the chyle is voided by stool; sometimes excrementitious humors, as choler, flegm, melancholy, and this is called a Diarrhœa. If the guts be not ulcerated, if they be, it is a Dysentery. Sometimes blood is voided without exulceration.

They differ in respect of the part, from whence the flux is, for it is either from the whole body, called Colliquative, usual in the plague and pestilent feaver. Or from the stomach, liver, spleen, mesentery, brain, guts, or the veins, seldom from the lungs and cavity of the breast, except in consumptions a little afore death. Of which particularly:

Lien-

Lientery and Cœliack differ only, as there is more or less crudity: for in a Lientery the food comes forth as it was eaten. But in the Cœliack, the nourishment stayes longer in the stomach, and is changed, but not by a perfect concoction.

The Causes The immediate Cause is the hurt of the retentive faculty in the guts and stomach. It is chiefly hurt by a cold and moist distemper with much flegm, and a disposition of the guts to be ulcerated. The retentive faculty is hurt by accident, when the expulsive is so provoked, that it sends out meat unconcocted. For the expulsive being too quick, shews that the retentive is hurt. For a good concoction, meat must be kept a while in the stomach. If not, they go crude into the guts, and so are voided. Sometimes the retentive faculty of the stomach and guts, are both hurt. Sometimes of one part only, hence comes the Cœliack and Lientery. The guts have force to make chyle, and though the stomach be well, yet if it keep not meat long enough, it doth not receive the proper labour of the guts, and then there is a Cœliack passion. And if the guts be well, and the stomach doth not retain the food long enough, it gets too soon to the guts, and cannot receive the concoction in the guts alone, which should have had in the stomach, and therefore it go to the guts, and causeth a Lientery.

The Signs. The excrements shew this disease, they are white, or ash-coloured, liquid, frothy, nothing nourisheth that is eaten; the body falls away, there is rumbling in the guts, in the Cœliack the meat is voided six or seven hours, after changed somwhat, but perfectly concocted. A Cœliack commonly goes before a Lientery. Sometimes not when the meat is voided as it was eaten, so that they

they cannot be distinguished.

The Prognostick. If these be not speedily lookt after, there is danger of Cachexy or Dropsie. Lientery is worse then Cœliack, because in that the tone of the stomach is more weakned.

The Cure. If there be a Flux, first resist that, that you may hit both the cause and the symptom with one and the same medicine. Therefore give things to strengthen guts and stomach, and bind so that the meat get not too soon through. Internal remedies are all astringent fruits in the first course, as Quinces, Pears, Medlars, also sealed Earth, Coral, troches of Amber, and the hotter sort is Aromaticum rosarum, and Treacle.

Outwardly make Oyntments of oyl of Mastich, and the plaister of the crust of bread. Or, Take *Wormwood, Mints, each a handful; red Roses two pugils, toasted bread steept in Wine two ounces, Cinnamon, Galangal, Wood aloes, each a scruple; Nutmeg, Aloes, Bole, each half a scruple; syrup of Quinces boyled in Wine two ounces,* with the *Wine* make a *Cataplasm*, apply it hot to the stomach. Foment with a Sponge dipt in Wine, in which red Roses, Mints, Wormwood, Cypress, &c. have been boyled, and anoynt it after with oyl of Spike.

Now we shal shew how to oppose the cause. If they come from a cold and moist cause with matter or without, the fibres of the stomach and guts are loose, from use of much fat and water, or flegm from the head, prepare it with syrup of Betony, Wormwood, Mints, or with their decoction in less quantity least the flux should increase.

If he vomit easily, and be squeamish, a vomit is good to cleanse away the flegm that sticks to the

the coats of the ſtomach, and makes it ſlippery, and a gentle purge thus made.

Take *Chebs Myrobalans a dram and half, Fennel ſeed a dram, Ginger half a dram, Agarick a ſcruple, red Roſes, Roman Wormwood, each a pugil;* boyl them: in three ounces ſtrained, diſſolve *ſyrup of Roſes an ounce.* After the matter is evacuated, give things to correct the diſtemper and ſtrengthen it, as *Mints, Wormwood, Maſtich, Cloves, Calamus,* ſo that the hot be more then the cold ingredients.

Inwardly this. Take *Conſerve of Roſes three ounces, Treacle a dram, ſpirit of Vitriol eight drops,* with *ſyrup of Quinces* make an *Electuary* give two drams in the morning.

To theſe you may add pouder of Coral, Diarrhodon, skins of Hens gizzards, candied Ginger. When the diſtemper is habitual, ſome uſe Synapiſms and Dropax to the ſtomach after purging, and at diſtance from the Liver. As, Take *Myrrh, Frankincenſe, Aloes, Schænanth, each a ſcruple; Maſtich half an ounce, Ammoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar a ſcruple, Cinnamon, Ekphorbium, Pepper, Pellitory roots, each half a ſcruple;* with *Wax and Pitch,* apply it to the ſtomach. *Ætius.*

Let the Diet be ſmall with faſting if the Patient can endure it, eat roaſted meat, avoid all cold and ſlimy meats and fatbroaths ſeaſon meat with Nutmegs, Ginger, Cloves, Sage. *The Diet.*

Of a Lientery from the expulſive faculty.

The expulſive faculty of the ſtomach and guts is provoked by ſharp humors and venemous medicines, that either make an Ulcer or an ulcerous diſpoſition.

The

The Signs. The sign of this cause, is sense of biting in the stomach with pain, a Lientery did not go before the Cœliack.

The Prognostick. A Lientery that lasts long, is bad, because the efficient is stubborn, that is worst, which is from a malignant humor, and makes a flegmon or ulcer in the stomach; and so in the gut: if there be pain and wind, there is a dry Dropsie at hand.

The Cure. First, observe whether the stomach or the guts be afflicted: if there be an ulcerous disposition in the stomach, take heed of Vomits, but give Lenitives, as Syrup of Roses, with the decoction of Tamarinds and Barley in Whey. Or, Take *yellow Myrobalans a dram, Rhubarb a dram and half, Tamarinds an ounce,* infuse them *in Barley-water and juyce of Roses,* strain and add *Syrup of Roses an ounce, Manna half an ounce, or an ounce.* Fat things are not good here, for they will foul the ulcer: if there be an ulcerous disposition in the guts, make revulsion by vomit, if it may be. Or purge with Rhubarb in Rose-water. Or, Take *to prepare, water of Sorrel, Endive, Succory, each an ounce; Syrup of Pomegranates, Purslane, each half an ounce* Or, Take *Conserve of red Roses two ounces, of Citrons half an ounce, red Coral prepared, Diarrhodon, Bole, each a scruple; with Syrup of Quinces,* make an Electuary. Diureticks or provokers of urin, are excellent.

Outwardly use astringent Cataplasms, Ointments, Liniments. As, Take *Oyl of Myrtles, Roses, each two ounces; Mastich, Coriander, Dragons blood, Bole, Wormwood, each a scruple; with wax* make an Ointment. If the stomach be ulcerated the cure is mentioned before: if from poyson, use Antidotes, especially the juyce of Dittany,

Dittany, with Syrup of juyce of Citrons.

Let him drink little, and that thin Wine and Water, and eat clenſing Fruits. Let ſleep be more then ordinary : of which more in Dyſentery. *The Diet.*

Chap. 6. *Of Diarrhæa.*

Diarrhæa is properly that flux of the belly, which comes from an immoderate flux of humors, beſides the crude meat and blood, without an ulcer of the guts.

The cauſe in general, is plenty or pravity of humors, which provoke nature to expel them, but the humors being divers, the cure muſt be accordingly.

Obſerve therefore the original of it, whether it come from the ſtomach, or ſpleen, or liver, meſentery, or brain ; or from the veins, and the whole body, by which means the matter voided, is either flegm, choler, or melancholy, or fat.

Chyle is often voided from the ſtomach, which ſticks in the guts, of which in order.

Of a Flux of Chyle.

Sometimes the chyle is not diſtributed, becauſe it is not attracted by the milkie veins, or Liver, and it is gathered in the guts, where through plenty or acrimony, it corrupteth, and is mixed with evil humors, which prick the guts, and cauſe a Diarrhæa : the reaſon why it is not attracted, is the obſtruction of the veſſels, or the weakneſs of the bowels.

If the matter come forth thick as Ptiſan, or ſtink, it ſhews a Diarrhæa : if it come from the obſtruction of the veins, that cannot attract it, it *The Signs.*

is

is voided white. But when the veins receive it, and the liver doth not attract it, it is reddish, and there are signs of a weak liver.

The Prognostick. Resist this disease speedily, least it turn to an Atrophy or Cachexy, and so into a Dropsie.

The Cure. If the Meseraicks are stopt by a slimy flegm, avoid all astringents till they are opened; therefore use things against obstructions, and good for the liver.

As, Take *the opening Roots prepared in Vinegar two ounces, Agrimony, Endive, Maidenhair, each a handful; Wormwood half a handful, Anise and Fennel seed, each a scruple; Raisons an ounce,* boyl, *and to a pint strained,* add *Syrup of the two Roots, Bizantine, each two ounces:* make a Potion for four doses. Spirit of Salt is good in this case.

Purge thus. Take *Rhubarb half a scruple, Agarick a scruple, Cinnamon half a scruple, Spike, Schenarth, each a dram; with juyce of Endive or Wormwood* make Pills: give *a scruple.* Give *graft, Agrimony and Wormwood water,* or infuse *Fennel, Eryngus, Knapontick, Madder roots in Wine, each an ounce; Wormwood, Agrimony, Maidenhair, each half an ounce.* Let him drink this often, then make this Electuary.

Take *Conserve of Succory, Maidenhair, each half an ounce; Succory roots and Eryngus candied, each two drams; Diarrhodon a scruple, with Syrup bizantine* make an Electuary. Or give Troches of Diarrhodon.

Apply outward openers, as *Oyl of bitter Almonds, Chamomil, Dill, each an ounce; boyle with juyce of Smallage or Fennel,* or add *powder of Asaram roots, Schenanth, and with wax* make an Oyntment.

When the hollow part of the liver is corrupted,

ed, give the same if the gibbous part be corrupt, alter them, cooler or hotter as the constitution requires.

If it come from weakness of the Liver, strengthen it with things that heat and open, for the weakness of attraction is commonly from obstructions, as Spike, Schœnanth, Wormwood, Cinnamon, Cypress, Madder, Agrimony, Diarrhodon, Diatrionsantalon, Aromaticum rotatum, and Roses, and the like.

You must take heed of great heaters, because the strength of the Liver consists in moderate rather then a great heat.

Of a Diarrhœa from the whole body, and first of that without a Feaver.

In Feaver there is often a Diarrhœa which is critical or symptomatical, if it be critical, it is known by its signs and the Patient endures it wel, otherwise you may fear it is symptomatical, especially if crude moist and watery humors are often voided, and little at a time, and when there are other evil signs.

A moist flux at the first, when the disease comes to a Crisis must be thicker and harder. *The Prognostick.* In fluxes of the Belly change of excrements are good signs, if they do not grow worse, for it signifies the body is exactly purged, except there be signs of colloquation or putrefaction. The change of excrements is bad when they grow thinner, or white, pale, froathy, black, few, clammy, blew and stinking excrements, of which see *Hippocrates in coacis*, and *Galen's* Comment. *Hippocr. 2 progn. text. 10.*

Let the discreet Physitian first observe whether Diarrhœa in a Feaver be critical, which he shal *The Cure.*

shal know by the signs of a Crisis, if it be critical, order nothing but good Diet. If nature hath not done her work, help her with this purge. Take *Tamarinds half an ounce, decoction of Succory roots, of flowers and fruits, yellow Myrobolans* (if it be flegm) *two drams*, boyl and strain them, add *Manna half an ounce or six drams*, strain them again, add *syrup of Roses half an ounce*, make a *Potion*, give it in the morning.

If the flux be great and deject the strength, clense the humor, allay it, and stop the flux with medicines that shall be mentioned in the symptom.

If the flux in a Feaver be symptomatical, you must distinguish, for one is but for a time which nature makes before concoction is perfect, but it is with strength consistent, and imitates a crisis; this is not to be stopt, and yet not to be furthered, nor must you leave it only to nature but help her, by evacuating, revelling, and altering: therefore to revell and diminish, if the feaver and strength permit, open a vein when the flux is at the beginning of the disease, and then use clensing Clysters. Thus,

Take *Barley water a pint, Syrup of Roses solutive an ounce* make a *Clyster*. If the flux continue, use stronger Astringents, as *Conserve of Roses, Currans, Barberries syrup of Myrtles, Quinces, Pomegranites*, and anoynt the Belly with *oyl of Quinces, Myrtles, Mastich, Wormwood*.

If the flux be wholly symptomatical, and comes only from the faculty provoked by the cause of the disease, with no strength of nature, nor benefit to the Patient, it is a sign of an ill disposition, and must be stopt, revel the humors with a little bleeding, use frictions and ligatures,

tures and then medicines to stop the flux before mentioned.

Of a melting Flux.

In burning malignant Feavers, in Hecticks, and Consumptions, and inflammation of the bowels, when the heat is vehement, not only the humors in the veins, but the immediate nourishment of the parts is melted, and that which is thin is sent forth by Urine and Sweat, and the thick staies in the Belly and causeth a melting flux with such a stink, and other evil qualities that it cannot be endured.

This is known by the variety of excrements, yellow, blew, stinking, sometimes fat and slimy. There is a burning or hectick Feaver, and the body is very lean, the nose sharp, with hollow eyes, and a face like that of *Hippocrates*. *The Signs.* *Initio prædict.*

This flux is commonly deadly, both in regard of the cause, which is a malignant Feaver or consumption, and becaufe it takes away all the nourishment. *The Prognostick.*

In these Feavers, to stop the flux, cool and moisten, with gentle Astringents, rather internal then external. And you may strengthen the heart and liver, outwardly. *Hippocrates* commends cream of Ptisan and cold water, and *Galen* also, when you fear water give Barley water, Whey, or of Lettice, Sorrel, Endive, with syrup of Grapes, Pomegranates; when he wants nourishment, give Chicken broath, when these have made alteration, give cooling Clysters that moisten, of which see Dysentery: and use cooling Epithems to the heart and liver. *The Cure.* *5. Method. 6. 65*

Let the Diet be cool and moistening, a little binding, use Barley and Almond milk, with Coral and Pearl. *The Diet.*

Of a Diarrhæa from the whole Body, without a Feaver.

A Diarrhæa without a Feaver, is sometimes from the whole body, if cacochymick, without fault in the belly, though the body purge through it. Somtimes serous humors that make a Leucophlegmacy, are voided. This is in sound persons that have much Serum in the veins, especially in Autumn; for the evening or morning cold, finding the pores open by the heat at noon, or in the bed, gets into the body, and strikes the serous humors, which are eatily separated from the blood, and apt to flow from the outward vessels, to the inward great passages of the hollow vein, and then they are brought to the bowels, by the branches of the Mesentery, and get into the cavity of the guts, and carry the choler with them, and other humors in the Mesentery. But because an evil constitution of the bowels breeds a Cacochymy, this Diarrhæa seldom happens without a fault in them.

The Signs. If there be Cachochymy all over, and there was an idle life or surfeiting, it is a sign that the humors flow from the whole body, especially if the parts be sound.

The Prognostick. It is good for the health, if the belly flow often in one day, or more, if there be rest and no feaver, but take heed that the strength abate not in that time.

The Cure. In bodies used to this flux, if it be immoderate, stopt it not, nor increase it; if it abate, help it with gentle Purges: if it be too much, allay it, if it be not usual, stop it not presently neither, because it prevents diseases, and expels Cacochymy.

Exact-

Evacuations at the mouth taken, must be gentle and strengthning, as in a cholerick flux. As, Take *pulp of Tamarinds an ounce, Conserve of Roses a dram,* make a Bolus. Or dissolve it in *Plantane water with a scruple of red Coral.* Or make it a solid Body, with *Rhubarb a dram, Conserve of Roses half a dram.*

In a phlegmatick cause, use Honey of Roses, with the decoction of Mints, Myrobalans, Chebs, Agarick.

In a melancholick Matter, Goats whey, Cassia and Conserve of Roses. In a cholerick flux, Succory will temper the matter, and Roses, Coral, Smaragds. In Flegm, use Bettony, Mints, Syrup of Bizantine. When there is a great flux, take a Vomit for revulsion, but no Oyl. They are best that thicken and cleanse, but use the most gentle. As Roses, Spodium, Conserve of Roses, Bole, sealed Earth, red Coral; or stronger Astringents, Conserve of Roses vitriolated, with Syrup of dried Roses, Myrtles, and Quinces. Stronger yet, are Pomegranate flowers, Myrtles, Acacia, Hypocistis. Anoint the belly with Oyl of Chamomil, Mastich, Roses, Wormwood; or apply the Plaister made of Bread.

Of a Diarrhœa from the Stomach and corrupt meat.

There is a Diarrhœa from the stomach, when Summer fruits are eaten in great quantity, which easily corrupt, or infect the stomach with an evil quality, so that the expulsive faculty is provoked. The same may be from an error in the manner and order of eating, as if you take milk which is apt to corrupt, or eat Mushrooms.

Search whether it comes from a hurt in the sto- *The Signs*

mach, or flow thither from some other part, if not so, then the foul humors breed in the stomach. Also enquire what diet he kept, by which you may know if it comes from the stomach. If concoction be in fault, there will be signs of the distemper of the stomach, of which afore.

The Prognostick. Diarrhœa from over eating, is easily cured, that is dangerous which comes from evil meat, because it provokes nature, and stirs up other humors which cause a Dysentery.

The Cure. Stop it not rashly. If it be flegm, use Mastich-pills, or Assairet of Hiera simple: if choler, Pills of Rhubarb, yellow Myrobalans: if it come from evil food or error in diet, presently evacuate, vomiting is the best way; or purge if the patient be not apt to vomit, with Rhubarb a dram and half in pouder, with some proper Decoction. Then use astringents internal and external: if it be from a weak stomach, strengthen it, as in the Chapter of cold distemper with the diet there.

Of a Diarrhœa from Worms.

When a Diarrhœa comes from worms, as when evil humors are gathered with worms in the guts; it is cured with things that kil worms, and expels them, then strengthen the guts.

Of a Diarrhœa from the Liver and Choler.

When the liver breeds too much choler, or the passages for the choler are stopt, it is kept in the liver, and at length sent to the guts. The cause is chiefly a hot and dry distemper of the liver, which breeds choler.

The Signs. First, observe if the humor breeds first in the liver, or be sent thither from another part: if it come from another part, they wil complain, and

there

there will be the signs of an obstructed distempered liver, which causeth the humors to corrupt; nor can the blood be separated from the Choler.

A Diarrhæa from the liver, is not be neglected, for there is more or less danger, according to the condition of the matter. *The Prognostick.*

Begin with evacuation, least the sharpness of the choler cause a Dysentery. As with Rhubarb, yellow Myrobalans, Syrup of Roses and Violets, and clensing Clysters. As, Take *the decoction of Barley not husked a pint, red Sugar two ounces, Honey of Roses strained half an ounce, Oyl of Roses an ounce, two yolks of Eggs.* Or give *Chicken broth, and Syrup of Roses, or the decoction of cool Herbs and Seeds, with Violets and Borage flowers,* adding astringents. *The Cure.*

Then use stronger astringents, if need be, as old Conserve of Roses, red Coral, Bole, sealed Earth, syrup of Currans and pomegranated made to an Electuary.

Apply Epithems of juyce or water of Plantane, Sorrel, Purslane, Endive, Roses with Sanders, Coral, and Cerot of Sanders, to the liver outwardly. You may provoke urin also with things not very hot, as roots of Quich-grass, Asparagus, Fennel, Maidenhair, Melon seed, &c.

To Cure all diseases Read my *Sennertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus,* and *Riolanus,* of the last Edition.

Of a strange Diarrhæa from a melancholick humor.

Melancholy in the spleen, or the vessels near it, gets often to the guts, and causeth a Diarrhæa, like pitch, which is from blood, and a vessel open in the Hypochondria sent to the guts, and there parched, or mixed with a black humor, it may better be sent out by the Hæmorrhoids,

but nature sends into the stomach and guts, and it causeth either black vomits, or a melancholy flux.

The Signs. It is known by signs of a distempered spleen, that went before, and heaviness and stretching on the left side; if it be from blood, it will be red, and vomiting of blood went before, or accompanies it.

The Prognostick. The danger in this Diarrhœa is, that the good blood will flow forth with the bad; and if it continue long, it will cause Cachexy or Dropsie.

The Cure. After bleeding, if need require, purge melancholy, with Polypody, Epithimum, Myrobalans, Indi, Senna, Syrup of Roses, with the decoction of flowers and fruits. Stop it not suddenly, then tempet the black humor, and hinder its increase. Prepare it with syrup of Apples, Borage, Bugloss, Hops, Bizantine simple, of Fumitory; and use often gentle Clysters that cleanse, least the sharp humor ulcerate the guts, as Broath, Milk, Honey of Roses and Violets, and add astringents if need be, such as are mentioned: avoid all diet that makes thick blood. If it be with vomiting, stop it not presently, least fainting or worse follow. Therefore give this Pouder: Take *Rhubarb a scruple, Cinnamon, yellow Myrobalans, each half an ounce; white Amber six grains,* make a Pouder: give *it with six ounces of white Wine, with an ounce of Plantane water, and half an ounce of syrup of Roses,* then use Astringents.

Of a Diarrhœa from the Womb.

The terms stopt, cause a Diarrhœa in women, and vomiting, the humors that nourish the womb being sent to the veins. There are the signs then of a distempered womb, especially in the time of the

the terms did flow. It is cured with things that open the veins of the womb, if they be ſtopt, and void foul humors contained in the womb and parts adjacent, if theſe be not firſt taken away, Aſtringents will be in vain, after evacuation ſtrengthen the womb and guts.

Of a Diarrhœa from the Brain.

When men lie upon their backs at night, there falls much ſalt or unſavory flegm from the head to the jaws, ſtomach and guts, this makes the tunicle of the ſtomach and guts ſlippery, which weakens the retentive faculty, it is known by weakneſs of the brain, much ſpittle froathy and flegmatick, and the brain is very moiſt.

Cure it as in Catarrh by preparing and evacuating the matter, and by revulſions, derivations, by frictions, cupping the ſhoulders, ligatures; beware of ſleep on the back, and preſently after meat: ſtrengthen the ſtomach outwardly. If this Diarrhœa come often, make a Seton in the neck, or an iſſue in the arm: or uſe Treacle, Mithridate, the decoction of Guajacum and Saſſaphras.

Of a Diarrhœa in Children that breed Teeth.

When Teeth begin to cut, children have a looſneſs, either from ſalt flegm in the ſtomach, or from milk corrupted there by the feaver they then have. It muſt not be ſuddenly ſtopt, leaſt the brain conſent in pain, & cauſe a Convulſion. If it be from ſalt flegm give a ſpoonful of ſyrup of Roſes ſolutive & ſtrengthen the ſtomach, with oyl of Maſtich, Roſes, Quinces, Wormwood. If it come from corrupt milk, purge as before, and let the nurſe be well dieted, and rub the

gums of the child, with Butter and Honey, and the brains of an Hare.

Of a Diarrhæa from over-purging, and from poyson taken.

A strong purge or poyson may cause it also, because they stick to the guts and provoke nature still to go to stool, and bring humors from the whole body to the belly, and corrupt the good. The cause is known by relation of the standers by. It is cured first with a clensing Clyster of Barley water and Sugar. Take *Barley water eight ounces, Sugar six drams, syrup of Roses an ounce with the yolk of an Eg.* or by Ligatures and Frictions and Fomentations of the extream parts, or dry cupping between the shoulders and in the Hypochondria, and between the navil, and the stomach, then give Astringents in Electuaries, or Treacle, or Opiates.

If the poyson be known, give the proper Antidote, or universals, this is excellent. seven grains of Smaragds in water of Scorzonera, or an ounce and half of juyce of Dittany, with as much Wine, use outward Cordials.

Chap. 7. *Of a Dysentery.*

DYsentery signifies difficulty of the guts with pain, and often going to stool with blood, and after slime more or less. It is defined to be an ulcer in the guts, with often stools bloody, and with matter, and with pain and griping of the guts from a sharp matter that hurts the guts, and corrodes them. All other bloody stools are improperly called a Dysentery;

sentery; for there is an ulcer and solution of unity, the part affected is the guts, the thick and thin guts or both, and somtimes the parts adjacent consent, as the Caul or Omentum, the Stomach, Breast and Lungs.

The immediate cause is the provoking of the guts, and the pricking of the expulsive faculty, striving alwaies to avoid what offendeth, this is stir'd up by sharp humors, either bred in the guts or coming from other parts, namely, yellow and black choler, salt flegm, which sticking there ulcerateth: also by matter or quittor evil and pestilent humors. But I suppose that the humors causing a Dysentery have a peculiar occult venom that ulcerates the guts, as the Sea-hare, and Spanish flies hurt the bladder, and such is in many purges. *The Cause, &* *Gal. 3. epid. in sent. 70.*

As for the antecedent and remote causes internal and external, they may be all sorts of humors, among the external are Summer fruits that easily corrupt, eating of Grapes, and drinking new Wine, which ferment the humors of wch *Foreſtus*. Or water fetcht in leaden pipes. Also hot and moist air. Some dysenteries are epidemical, from influence of Stars, and such a constitution of Air as begets in our bodies somthing like Hellebore or Coloquintida. The last cause is contagion or infection, for whole families are infected with Dysenteries one from another. *Foref. lib. 22. observ. 3.*

There are many degrees of it. The first is when fat substance is voided with a little blood. 2. When the inside of the Guts is voided with excrements thin and like shavings. 3. When the substance of the guts made of two tunicles and flesh is voided, of which *Hippocrates*, and in my Question. *The Differences.* 4. *Apho.* 26.

Moreover

Moreover, either the thick or thin guts are ulcerated, or both; or it is with or without a fever, with or without infection

The Signs. It is generally known by the manner of purging with pain and griping a little before, and at the time of going to the stool. The excrements are not natural, but cholerick, slimy and bloody. Sometimes there is a feaver with the pain at the first, or after or before; sometimes fainting, hickets, trouble, lots of appetite and Tenesmus, or needing. It is distinguished from other fluxes of the belly, for in a Dysentery there is more of other humors voided then of blood, commonly there is matter or quitor voided with blood from the ulcer, with needing, and straining, and griping, and there is more these then blood.

Gal. 6. de loc. aff. c.

Aëtius tetrab. 2 ser. 1. cap. 42. Impostumes are in the guts, and they break, and void matter, this is not a Dysentery, but a Diarrhœa, except the matter ulcerate the guts. If the thin guts are affected, the pain is very sharp like needles, and there is not presently a stool after, and there is blood mixed in every stool. But if the thick guts are ulcerated, the pain is most below the navel, but not so vehement and so long, by reason they are not so sensible; and presently after griping, they void a stool with blood and matter at the top.

The Prognostick. That in the thin guts is worst, and hath worse Symptoms, as loathing, vomiting, watching with pain and dejection of strength, and the ulcers in them are harder to be cured then in the thick.

7. Aphor. 23. When the dejection or stools is of one humor, as choler or melancholy alone without water, it is worst. If black stools be from a Crisis, despair not, otherwise it is deadly, and differs not from a cancer ulcerated. That from salt slimy flegm is

worst

worst and ulcerates more by its staying long.

Voiding of pure blood in Dysentery is evil, because it shews that the great veins are corroded. If Caruncles are voided, it is deadly, because the second tunicle is corroded Vomiting of choler at first is bad, because it is symptomatical. Hickets after a Dysentery is commonly deadly, but at first it is not so dangerous. Dysentery in infants with a feaver, worms and vomiting is deadly. Women with child having a Dysentery, are cured commonly after child-bearing. A deadly Dysentery ends the first, second or third week: if it turn to a foul ulcer, there is long voiding of matter, and they die of a Consumption. 4. *Aph.* 46.

The Cure. First, take away the cause that divideth the unity, and evacuate and cleanse the corroding humor, and abate its sharpness. 2. Revel and derive the humors that flow to the guts; if they be malignant, use Antidotes, and stop them, allay the pain, cleanse and heal the ulcer.

Bleeding.

Some deny it, but if blood offend by its motion, plenty or quality, and the strength permits, or you fear an inflammation, open a vein boldly. Especially if there be a constant feaver, or the liver be distempered, and hot, and feeds the flux. And though *Galen* saith, *That a vein must not be opened in a flux of the belly, you must understand it of such a flux as cannot be helped by bleeding* It must be done betimes, while the strength lasteth, and by degrees, not all at once. Open the Median or Liver-vein in the arm: if the Hæmorrhoids or terms be stopt, open the Ankle-vein; if you cannot well let blood, use cupping and scarifying.

Take

Purging.

Take heed of strong Purges, as Scammony, Coloquintida. Stop it not suddenly, for it wil cause great diseases. If there be but a smal quantity of evil humors, abate their sharpness, and purge not, but leave the work to nature. But if there be much in the whole body, and it flows to the guts, and makes the Dysentery worse, it is good to purge at first in general; but malignant melancholick humors are to be allayed and prepared, and then purged.

Concerning Roses in a Dysentery, at first use the Damask Roses, whose juyce is laxative, and after to bind, use the red, Tamarinds, Diaprunis simple, Myrobalans Or Rhubarb which is best, first infused, and then (to bind more) in substance. Or Mechoacan especially to children, (for it hath no taste) give a scruple, or a dram to men in broath.

Potions.

Take *Barley water four ounces, Syrup of Roses solutive two ounces, Tamarinds a dram.* Or,

Take *Tamarinds half an ounce, yellow Myrobalans two scruples,* boyl them *in Barley or Plantane water,* strain and infuse *Rhubarb half a dram, spike seven grains,* ad *Syrup of Roses solutive an ounce.*

Or, Take *Chebs Myrobalans ten scruples, yellow Myrobalans five scruples, Currans two ounces,* boyl them *in twenty six ounces of water, til the third part be consumed,* then strain them, add *Sugar ten scruples, Cinnamon six scruples:* if there be flegm mixed. Take *Chebs and emblick Myrobalans each half a dram; Mechoacan, Rhubarb, each a scruple; Senna two scruples, Spike six grains:* infuse them *in Plantane water,* strain and add *Syrup of Roses an ounce and half.* If there be Melancholy,

Take

Take *Polypody*, *Indian Myrobalans*, *Senna*, *each three scruples*; *Epithymum a scruple*, *Aniseeds half a scruple*, *Cordial flowers a pugil*, boyl them in *Whey to three ounces and half strained*, add *Diacatholicon half an ounce*, make a Potion.

Or you may give *from half a scruple of Rhubarb to a dram and half.* Or make *Mars* Pain. Take *sweet Almonds blanched an ounce and half*, *Melon seeds a dram*, *Mechoacan four scruples*, *Sugar two ounces*, *Harts horn prepared*, *Mucilage of Tragacanth in Rose-water each a scruple*; *with Rose-water* make *Mars* Pain: give *four scruples to infants, and three drams to men.*

Syrups.

If the humors are mixed, make this Syrup. Take *Succory*, *Dock roots*, *Strawberry leaves*, *Polypody of the Oak*, *each half an ounce*; *Plantane*, *Pauls Betony*, *Agrimony*, *each half a handful*; *Myrobalans yellow and Indian*, *each an ounce*; boyl, strain and infuse *Rhubarb*, *Mechoacan*, *each a scruple*; *Senna six scruples*, *Cordial flowers and Sloes*, *each half a handful*; *Cinnamon two scruples*, *Spike a dram*, boyl, strain and add *Sugar to make a Syrup*, ad at the end *Syrup or Juyce of Roses an ounce and half*: give *from two scruples to half an ounce, to Children, and to men from an ounce and half, to two ounces.*

If the thick guts are only hurt, give Clysters before Purges; when you wil cleanse and purge, give them in greater quantity, when you wil heal in less quantity.

Clysters.

Take *Barley water a pint*, *red Sugar two ounces*, *Syrup of Roses solutive an ounce.* Or, Take *Barley water a pint*, *Honey of Roses two ounces*, *with two yolks of Eggs* make a Clyster: repeat these often,

twice

twice in a day, adding *Moulin, red Roses, Honey of Roses*, fear not their cleansing too much.

After cleansing, use Healers: As, Take *Barley water a pint, two whites of Eggs, Gum Arabick two scruples, Traganth four scruples, Goats feet half an ounce, Oyl of Roses two ounces, Bole a scruple*, make a Clyster.

Purge every other day at least, for what is eaten or drunk corrupts, and therefore there are no natural excrements.

Vomits.

These are not of use, but in poyson, or taking of a bad medicine, and then you may remove it out of the stomach: it is good in a Diarrhœa, but not in a Dysentery, lest the matter should be carried up to the stomach, and upper guts.

Diureticks.

After the greatest part of the matter is voided from the guts, use Diureticks to provoke urine, of Decoctions or Emulsions of cold Seeds, in Whey, with Fennel roots, and Purslane roots, and strengtheners of the stomach.

Sudorificks.

They who easily sweat, find good by Sudorificks, especially if there be malignity; therefore keep them in their beds, that the sharp vapors contained in the outward veins, may be breathed forth, and not striken in.

Antidotes and things that mitigate sharpness.

If there be malignity, as when it is epidemical, give at first things against the plague and pe-
Fernelius. stilence, as sealed Earth, Bole, Unicorns horn, Coral,

Coral, Smaragds, Saphires, that heal Ulcers in the guts, Scordium, Plantane, Tormentil, Burnet, or our Bezoartick pouder made for this. Take *Hart-horn burnt a scruple and half, sealed Earth, Crabs eyes, Bole, Tormentil, Amber, Pearl, Coral prepared, each a dram; bone of a Stags heart half a dram, Pearl, Saphires, Bezoard stone, each a dram; leaves of Gold three,* make a *Pouder,* give dram.

Lenients that mitigate pain.

After evacuation and qualifying of the humors, the pain commonly ceaseth, yet because the pain wil not cease while it is doing, you must give Anodynes, of which there are many sorts, as Milk boyled, fat broaths, and this Electuary. Take *oyl Olive and of sweet Almonds,* and with *Sugar* make an *Electuary,* lick it often, it abates pain, and heals the ulcer, or take fresh Butter and Sugar if you hate Oyl.

Or Clysters of Milk with flints quenched in it, and yolks of Egs, or mucilages of Quince seed, Fænugreek or Fleabane. You may make a Clyster to lenifie and to cleanse, and astringe thus. Take *Tripe broath seven ounces, Goats suet, red Sugar, each an ounce.* Or, Take *milk with flints quenched in it eight ounces, juyce of Plantane three ounces, oyl of Roses two ounces, two yolks of Egg.*

This Clyster doth wonders. Take *a Sheeps head, slit it, take out the tongue and the brain, and boyl it till the flesh comes from the bones; strain and add to the Broath St. Johns wort two or three handfuls, Tormentil pudered an ounce or two, infuse them four hours upon the Embers,* make *Clysters* for twice or thrice.

A Fomentation. Take *Wormwood, Mints, Plantane,*

Plantane, Bramble tops, Harstail, Knotgrass, each a handful; Moulin flowers, Chamomil, Melilot, red Roses, each half a handful; dried Myrtles an ounce, Sumach, Plantane, Coriander, each six scruples; Cloves, Nutmeg, each half an ounce; Bran half a handful, Quince seeds half an ounce: boyl them in *red Wine and Water*, foment the belly before meat with it hot, it wil stop the flux and asswage pain.

Or use Narcoticks of Lettice, Water lillies, seeds and heads of Poppies. Or, Take *Melon seeds husked, white Poppy seeds, each half an ounce; sweet Almonds six scruples, Barley water a pint,* make an *Emulsion* Or, Take *Lettice, Poppy, Plantane, Water-lilly water, each two ounces; syrup of white Poppies an ounce and half, Quinces half an ounce, Diamargariton frigid a dram and half,* then use Opiates. Take *Philonium persicum half a scruple, Treacle a dram, Diamargariton frigid half a dram, syrup of Roses, Quinces, each half an ounce; Bezoar six grains, or Harts-horn a dram, or Laudanum three grains.*

Use not Opiates but in great pain, and when the body is of a thin and delicate constitution, and of exquisite sense. After Opiates wash the Guts with Wine or a convenient decoction: when Nature is weak, abstain from Narcoticks.

Things that stop the Flux.

Roots of Tormentil, Plantane, Comfrey, Water-lillies dried, Sorrel, Dropwort, Piony, Quitz-grass, they dry and divert by urine.

And Wound herbs, as Yarrow, Sanicle, Golden rod, Comfrey, Pyrola, Mousear.

And flowers of Pomegranates, Roses, Palma Christi.

Seeds

Seeds of Plantane, Sorrel, Purſlane, Docks, Roſes, Poppies.

And all aſtringent fruits, as Quinces, Medlars, Barberries, Services, Cornel berries, Cheſnuts, Hazel nuts.

Or the three ounces of the juyce of Plantane, or ground Ivy given in Clyſters.

Of theſe you may make divers medicines, as Pouders, Conſerves, Syrups, Potions, Electuaries, Waters, Emulſions, Tinctures, Extracts, Thus,

Pouders.

Take *ſealed Earth a dram, Bole a ſcruple; Harts-horn half a ſcruple, Plantane, Sorrel ſeeds, Mace, each a ſcruple; Saffron ſix grains,* make a *Pouder* for children. Another. Take *ſealed Earth a ſcruple, red Coral prepared half a ſcruple, Pearl, Bole, each a dram; Harts-horn, Bezoar, Smaragds prepared, each half a dram;* make a *Pouder.* Or, Take *Maſtich, Frankincenſe, red Coral prepared, burnt Harts horn, each half a ſcruple; Bloodſtone prepared two drams,* make a *Pouder,* give from a dram to half a ſcruple. Or the Pouder of a Pigeon or Turtle burnt, feathers and all. Take *of that an ounce, Tormentil roots half an ounce,* give a dram morning and evening with Tormentil water. See *Arnoldus de villa nova.*

Conſerves.

Old Conſerve of red Roſes, conſerve of Tormentil, Barberries, Currans.

Syrups.

If the Liver be hot take heed of Syrups, for they are made of Sugar, and turn into Choler, therefore give them with Waters, Decoctions are better, or ſyrup of red Roſes, Quinces, juyce

of Purslane, Myrtles, Barberries, Currans, Coral, Sorrel Grapes. In the end of a Dysentery, give juice of Wormwood, Mints, with Sugar, or the like.

Potions and Clarets.

Take *Tormentil roots Plantane, each two drams; red Roses half a handful, Sumach, Pomegranate flowers each half a dram; Dock seeds, Sorrel and Plantane seeds, each a scruple; Myrtles half an ounce, Rose seeds half a scruple,* boyl them in *Plantane water and Tormentil, each six ounces,* then infuse them eight or ten hours, strain and add *juice of Plantane two ounces, Sugar an ounce and half, Nutmeg a dram,* make a *Julep.* Or, Take *Comfrey, Plantane, Knotgrass, each two handfuls;* chop them small, add *Goats milk two pints,* strain out the *Juice,* boyl in it *Plantane seeds, Sorrel and Myrtles, each two scruples; Tormentil roots a scruple and half, Paul's Betony a handful,* boyl them for a *Claret.* Or,

Take *juyce of Quinces three pints, conserve of red Roses an ounce and half, Cinnamon two scruples, Mace a scruple, Conserve of Tormentil an ounce,* strain them.

Distilled Waters.

In pharmac. l. 1. c. 7.

Quercetan hath a Water which is Narcotick, or you may Take *Tormentil roots, Sorrel, Burnet, Sanicle, Sea leav'd Grass, each an ounce; Swallow-wort, Zedoary, each two scruples; Sorrel, Plantane, Yarrow, Shepherds purse, Paul's Betony, Scabious, Mints, each a handful; Sorrel seeds, Dock, Plantane, Purslane, Endive, Coriander seed prepared, white Poppy seeds, each two drams; Citron seeds half an ounce, red Roses, Mallows, Mullein, each a handful; Citron peels, Mace, each two scruples, Nutmegs four, juyce of Sloes three ounces,*

ces, pouder what is to be poudered, cut what must be be cut, and infuse them in *Oak leaves*, *Plantane*, *Tormentil water*, and make some boluses, distil them, give four ounces alone or with proper Syrup.

Emulsions.

Take *white Poppy seeds* an ounce and half *Sorrel seeds* three drams, *sweet Almonds blanched* an ounce. *Dysenterick water* fourteen ounces, make an *Emulsion*, add *Manus Christi* with *Pearl*.

Electuaries.

A scruple or half a dram of Micleta. Or, Take *old Conserve of Roses*. Or, Take *Treacle* or half a dram of *Confectio Alkermes*, *troches of Amber*, or *sealed Earth* a scruple, with *Syrup of dried Roses* or *Currans*.

Balls or Rouls.

Take *Comfrey roots roasted and sifted*, the *flesh of a Turtle* or *Partridg roasted*, each an ounce; *Sweet Almonds*, *white Poppy seeds*, each half an ounce; *Plantane*, *Sorrel seeds*, each a scruple; *Diamargariton frigid.* half a scruple, *Sugar dissolved in Rose water* six ounces.

Pills.

Take *troches of sealed Earth*, *Amber*, *burnt Ivory*, each two drams; *Myrtle* and *Sorrel seed*, each half a scruple; with *Syrup of Quinces*, make *Pills*; take half a scruple a day, give them twice before meat.

Troches.

Take *troches of Barberries*, *Amber*, *burnt Ivory*, *sealed Earth*. Or, Take *Tormentil roots* two drams,

Harts horn 1 dram, Plantane seed 4 dram and half, one Nutmeg, Starch half an ounce, Crocus Martis two drams, Bole, sealed Earth, each a dram; make Troches *of two scruples in weight*: give three a day for six daies.

Or give the fat of Sheeps kidnies, or suet, red Wine and new laid Eggs, Barley flour and Nutmeg. This takes away pain, and stops the flux.

Extracts.

Extracts of the roots of Tormentil, five leaved Grass, Snakeweed. Or, Take *an Apple, pick out the core, and fill up the hollow with Virgins wax roast it, give it before meat.*

Valeriola useth a Quince, but an Apple will carry the Wax better to the guts. Others give Gum Arabick, and white Wax, each a scruple; in a hollow Apple or Quince roasted in the morning.

Baths.

Andr. Baccius vid. vid. fallo. her. saxo. & alij.

Baths do all, in a Dysentery, or Spaw-waters, for they are sharp, and cleanse, and heal, and dry.

Clysters.

When the ulcer is in the thick guts, Clysters are good; if astringent and cleansing, they cure alone, if often used.

Topicks.

Anoint the belly with Oyl of Mastich, Myrtles, Quinces, Wormwood, and the like, Ointment of the Countess, and Chesnut shells. Or this Cataplasm: Take *white Bread a pound, Quinces half a pound, Wormwood, Mints, each a handful; Pomegranate flowers half an ounce*, stamp them *in red Wine*, strain them, ad *Nutmeg a scruple and half*,

half, Galangal, Cloves, each a half scruple; with Oyl of Wormwood and Mastich.

Diaphænicon Plaister of *Mesue* is good, lay it all over the belly hot. Or, Take *Quinces roasted four ounces, Comfrey roots roasted, Hypocistis, Acacia, Role traganth, Mastich, each half a dram; oyl of Quinces, Myrtles, each an ounce and half; juyce of Quinces, Plantane, Sorrel, Roses and Raisons, each six scruples; with Milium and Wax,* make a Plaister.

Or this Bag. Take *red Roses two handfuls, Wormwood, Mints, each a handful; Nutmeg, Cypress, Mastich, Galangal, each a scruple*: sprinkle it with Wine.

Or boyl the same in steeled Water and red Wine, or lay the panch of sheep heated in Oyl of St. Johns-wort to the belly; it takes away pain, and stops the flux. *Leonard. Iacch. in rhas.*

A Steam or Fume to sit over. Take *oaken buds, Cypress berries, Pine nuts,* boyl them. This is a great Secret to cure Children, though *Hippocrates* denies Baths to loose bellies; but if the body be full of excrements, and the belly purgeth it self, they may be used. But if the belly be cachomick, and the Dysentery malignant, with a feaver, a Bath will do more hurt then good.

Mundifyers or Clensers of the Ulcer.

These are mildest, Barley water, of Bran, Lupines, bitter Almonds with red Sugar, Whey and Hydromel at the mouth. These are stronger, Decoction of Horehound, Gentian, Birthwort, Olives, or urin given in clysters. These are strongest, unslaked Lime, burnt Paper, Cadmia, Sandarach, but the mildest are best.

After clensing, fil it up with Sarcocol, Mastich,

Traganth, Labdanum, Hypocistis, Sanguis Draconis, Harts horn burnt, Bole, sealed Earth a dram with Conserve of Roses, or red Wine, and in Clysters with steeled Milk.

To glutinate, use Spike, Myrrh, Frankincense, Orris, Birthwort, Cypress roots, Comfrey.

The Cure of a Dysentery that comes from a Purge.

Coloquintida and Scammony often do cause a Dysentery. Then take Barley water, and syrup of Roses, or warm Milk, or Treacle: and anoint the belly with adstringent Oyls

If it come from poison. First, give a Vomit, then fat Broaths, Milk and Rice, Starch and Ptisan: then Treacle, or six grains of Smaragds. Let him fast ten hours, and if he sweat, he is cured Also Crystal is good, and Smaragds laid to the belly, saith *Avenzoar*, who in travel had a Dysentery, by eating of an unknown Herb.

The Diet. Let the air be temperate hot, meat and drink, cooling and binding, in the progress of the disease, that strengthens the stomach and guts, without saltness, or sharp or sourness. Let it be of easie concoction, Barley broath, Ptisans, Rice, Milk, or Plantane in Milk, with Rice. Also astringent Fruits roasted, Almond milk, with Plantane water, wild Fowl is the best flesh Turtles, Partridges, Threshes, Hares, Kids, Hens' Livers, and Sheeps Livers, Spleens of Goats roasted Drink little, and let it be the decoction of Quinces: if he be weak give a little red Wine and Water, with Plantane boyled in it, or Wine with Sloes steept in it. Let him sleep as much as may be; let him not be passionate, and let his bedcloaths be often shifted.

Quest.

Question 1. *Whether is that white, snot-like slime which is voided in a Dysentery?*

Many have wondered what that abundance of slime mixed with blood is, that is voided in a Dysentery: it is neither fat, nor flegm, nor matter, as *Plater* thought, except he take a humor for matter, every part though sick, hath its proper nourishment; and if the part be distempered, it cannot cook its own diet as it ought, and the nourishment comes to it, mixed with evil humors. Therefore the variety of matter and excrements is from the humors and blood and the constitution of the part. Hence it is that excrements are sometimes white, yellow, green, stinking, or without scent. This cannot be termed true matter, for that is of an other nature, because it comes from ulcers. This slimy white excrement hath yet no proper name, as in the Pleurisie, it is called Spittle.

Question 2. *Whether the Loadstone be poyson, and causeth a Dysentery?*

Anselme Boetius saies that divers slaves swallowed Loadstones which they had stolen, and voided them without hurt. And a woman gave the pouder of a Loadstone to her Husband for many daies in a Dysentery, without hurt. *Cardanus* is of the same mind, and proves it by many Histories; and we also beleive it not to be poyson. *Lib. 2. de gem. c. 4.* *Contrad. med. l. 2. tr. 5. con tr. 9.*

Question 3. *Whether fat and shavings of guts are voided in that quantity, as the vulgar believe?*

Many think that the inside of the guts loyned

with fat are voided at first in a Dysentery, but it is false, nor are the shavings of the guts voided in the heighth of the disease, though many write that they have seen them. Many things may be that I have not seen, but if you consider the constitution of the guts, you wil scarce believe them, that such plenty should be voided while the patient is alive, as *Schenkius* speaks of in the History of *Benivini*.

Her. Saxo. lib. 3. pauli.

Lib. obser. 142. beni. ve. de abd. morb. cau. c. 95.

Question 4. *Whether is a Purge to be given in a Dysentery?*

I think purging fit, because the humors that are bad, being partly taken away, the rest wil be sooner concocted, and hurt less, as they are voided, and alterers and abaters of pain will do little, if there be not purging. *Galen* had given Rhubarb and Myrobalans, if they had been in his time. And the argument they bring, that say you must not evacuate by the part affected, is of little force, for the inconvenience is final in comparison of the great benefit, that comes by the evacuation of a foul humor.

For while the cause of a Dysentery remains, it cannot be cured And if a Physitian could find out other waies to evacuate by, it were better; but except you purge before, you cannot do it by vomit nor urin. And attraction to the part, can do little hurt, because the humors stay not there. For an ulcer is from corrosion, when the humors are sharp, and stop long there.

Question 5. *Whether is Milk good in a Dysentery?*

5. *Apor.* 64. *Hippocrates* writes, *That milk is not to be given*

19

to men in an headach, feaver, or such as have the Hypochondria stretched, or thirst, or have cholerick stools, or sharp feavers. In a Dysentery, there is commonly a feaver, and a cholerick humor, causeth a Dysentery. Therefore be wary in giving of Milk, either at the mouth, or by Clysters. *Amatus Lusitanus* condemns Milk as poyson in a feaver, and in a Dysentery, when choler is voided. *Cent. 2. Curat. 44.*

Let therefore Milk be steeled, or have Flints quencht in it, or Plantane water put to it. *Saxonia* saith, that he cured a new Dysentery with that alone. Flints and steel quenched in it, makes it binding, because the whey and the fat part are consumed thereby, and the Cheese and Butter remain, which are good against a Dysentery. Cow milk is thickest and best.

Question 6. *Whether Steel be good in a Dysentery?*

Learning and experience teach, that iron and steel stop blood and other fluxes, and open the obstructions of the liver and spleen. This is from steel dissolved, not whole and quenched only, except by an occult quality. For water, milk or wine, with steel quenched in them, are good in a Dysentery, because there is a coagulating astringent Spirit or rust that gets into the liquor. But with *Platerus*, let us give but little steel in a Dysentery; for we want none of its qualities, but its binding. They must be fresh made, especially if you quench steel often, for steel hath that nature of scales only at the first. But if they lie long in the liquor, they rust, which will trouble the belly, cause vomiting, and melt the humors, rather then bind them. If the question be of giving

ving Crocus martis or prepared Steel in a Dysentery: I suppose that is only to be given which is made by a fire of reverberation, because it is not yet so vitriolated, and is more astringent. All other preparatives of Steel are to be suspected in Dysenteries. And you must observe that after the use of Steel, as after Spaw waters, the excrements of the belly are voided black, which some Physitians take for melancholy purged forth by Stool.

Chap. 8. *Of Bloody Liver-flux.*

THere are other bloody fluxes, as when a vein is broken in the Liver, or when the Hæmorrhoids are open.

The Causes Blood flows from the guts, either when it comes from the whole body, or from the Liver or Meseraicks through plenty or sharpness, the veins being opened. But a flux of blood from a weakness in the liver is called an Hepatick flux, others are called bloody fluxes in general, of which by themselves.

Of the Blood Flux from plenty of Blood.

When a vein is broken or opened in the Liver, there is a great flux of the belly, and by vomiting, of which two causes, partly by reason of the great loss of blood, and partly from the congealed blood in the stomach that causeth fainting or Dropsie.

There is another cause of a bloody flux which is a natural bottomless pit of the Liver which draws too much blood & is constrained to send it forth either at the nostrils or belly. And when there is a member lost, nature sends its nourishment another way; so when there is a stoppage of

of any usual evacuation as the, Terms, Hæmorrhoids, bleeding at the Nose.

If it be from the whole body, and offend only in quantity, it comes forth plentifully, and quickly congeals without any great trouble to the belly or guts. And without loss of strength. Therefore you must ask the Patient if any evacuation be stopt, or any member lost, and if not, then the cause is in the Liver. *The Signs.*

If blood offend only in plenty there is less danger. If it be too thin or too sharp, there is more danger, because it is farther from its natural temper. *The Prognostick.*

If it come from plenty only, or an evacuation, stopt it, must not be stanched nor thickned, least it be carried to another part, and cause a worse disease: but a small diet must be given, with frictions and cupping, and so you must do if it be from a limb cut off. *The Cure.*

If it come from a Liver that hath too much blood, and the Patient endures it well, let it alone, for it is good, and it will cease of it self; but if it be immoderate, open a vein, cool the liver, and give a spare diet, as steeled whey with Melon seeds, Endive, Plantane, red Roses, and Coral in pouder: make Clysters of steeled whey with Astringents boyled in it: if there be choller let it be gently purged with Rhubarb and Myrobalans infused in Plantane water, then bind with troches of burnt Ivory, sealed Earth, and syrup of dried Roses.

To prevent, open a vein twice a year, exercise much and purge often, and abstain from Wine.

Of the Liver-flux.

Sanguification is hurt when the natural heat or

or Spirit in the liver is offended. This is by a cold cause and distemper of the parts adjacent, as the mesentery, guts and stomach, or from cold water or medicines; or from vehement heat that dispersеth the natural: or it is consumed by drying causes: or it is choaked by an over-moist constitution. And as the causes are, so the flux is divers. For sometimes it is wateriſh, crude, and half concocted blood and this is called a true liver flux. Another is a bastard flux from distemper, that hurts not, but corrupts the faculty in its work, as when the blood is too sharp, by choler or melancholy; or when it is too thick by staying long in the liver or parts adjacent, and so burns or putrifies. Or when the mass of blood is not purged, from a distemper in the spleen.

The Signs. A true Liver flux is known by the excrements, like the washing of flesh, and grow not together, and bite not, except there be choler mixed, there are the signs of a cold and weak liver, with paleness, and swollen eyelids, and feet, crude and wateriſh excrements, want of appetite, and thirst.

The Prognostick. Hippocr. de Ord. 2. prog. 317. Every Liver-flux is bad, for it brings Cachexy, Dropsie, Consumption, and death. A young flux in a young man may be cured with difficulty, but an old and in an old body, it is seldom cured.

The Cure. Purge not, but restore the natural heat in the liver, neither hot nor cold are good of themselves, but such as restore the substance of the liver. *Meridi.* Give therefore one meat constantly like the liver, seasoned with medicines, to correct the distemper of the liver. As the liver blood of Geese, Ducks, Hens, Turtles, Cock-stones, with Cinnamon, Mace, Saffron, and Cloves. Of this

Water

Water with all Meats. Take *the liver of a Wolf, washed with Aqua vitæ and Salt four ounces, blood of a Turtle or Tortoise two ounces, pouder of Sanders ounce, Schænanth a scruple, Agrimony two handfuls, Roses a pugil, Cinnamon, Cassia lignea, Calamus, Saffron, Myrrh, each two scruples; Harts-horn & Ivory shavings, each three scruples; Currans six ounces, treacle, Mithridate, Confection Alkermes dissolved in Spirit of Wine, each half an ounce; turpentine an ounce, Honey and Sugar, each five ounces; white and red Wine and Agrimony water, each three pints;* steep them three daies, and distil them, give it at meals.

Or give pouder of Wolves liver, with Conserve of Roses, Cinnamon and Raisons, or this. Take *pouder of a Wolves liver two scruples, Diarrhodon without Camphire, Aromaticum rosatum, each half a scruple; Rhubarb a scruple, Frankincense bark half a dram, burnt Ivory, Spike, each two scruples.*

Let meat be of good juyce and easie concoction: Raisons are good to strengthen the liver.

Question. *What is the immediate cause of a Liver-flux?*

Some say it is that heat of the liver, that makes the blood thin in the Mese aicks, with dilatation of the mouths of the veins. But because this cannot be but from great weakness in the Liver, whose natural heat makes the blood, it is the same. But they speak of the beginning of a flux which is heat preternatural, and hath consumed the natural heat of the Liver, which must needs make it cold.

Chap.

Chap. 9. *Of the voiding of Excrements of the Belly, by a wrong place.*

Mercu lib. 2. de excrem.

THere are many credible Histories of this, as the vomiting of the excrements in the Ileum; and some have all their life time voided them at their mouth. And in *Constan.* 1530. vomited dry excrements twenty years, and never voided any by stool, and lived indifferently in health to be old. Anno 1579. at *Colonia*, there was a Maid, that every third day vomited up her excrements for three years, and could have no remedy. The cause was the inverted motion of the fibres of the guts. For naturally motion and contraction begins above, and goes downward, till it thrust out the excrements at the belly. But if nature shall try often this motion in vain, it turns the order, and begins at the fundament and so goes up to the stomach with such force, that it sometimes shut up the fundament.

Card. lib. 18. de subtilis.

Ev Rhaf. 13. Continen.

Sometimes excrements have been voided by the navel, after an imposthume broken between the navel and the peeten. Also excrements have been voided by divers pierced guts, that have been fistulated, of which Authors have written.

Chap. 10. *Of strange things voided by stool, and rumbling of the guts.*

4. Apho. 21.

SOmetimes black things are purged, which *Hippocrates* condemneth alwaies, but they

are

are only bad, when they are burnt in sharp diseases. For if the spleen be out of order, there is a slimy matter about the bowels, and the veins, mesentery and sweet bread. This being burdensom to nature, the expulsive virtue ariseth, and labours to expel it. For it is like melted pitch, and sometimes it is vomited up.

Stools are black three waies, the first is from clotted blood that is fallen out of the veins, and turned black. The second is from natural melancholy, or dreggs of blood about the spleen, that will not clodder. The third is from black choler which shines, and is sharp. The second of these is with benefit to the patient, but shews the weakness of the spleen and vessels; if it be critical, it is not so bad, as symptomatical. The third is worst; the first is indifferent, and not to be feared, so the blood putrifies not.

In the second sort, it is the duty of the Physitian to cleanse the guts with Clysters, lest the matter passing by, offend them. Abstain from all sharp things, nor must you strengthen the belly inward or outward, or bind it, lest you stop in the matter, of which indeed is the spleen.

Voiding of matter by stool.

From an impostume broken in the hollow of the liver or in the mesentery, this may be. But it is wonderful that matter should be voided from remote parts, as the joynts; as in a Noble man wounded in the left elbow, who had a Diarrhœa, and voided the stinking matter after from his arm by stool. *Paræus lib. 10. c. 11.*

Worms.

Learned men report that Worms, Beetles, Eels, have been voided by stools, of which in Worms. *Gesn. lib. 3 Epist.*

Stones

Stones.

Genil. Math. de Gradibus A certain Woman voided a ball like corke involved in a coat or tunicle.

Bones.

Rhasis c.de col. Gordon par. 5. c 18. *Hollerij scholiog. ad c* 57. *lib.* 2. *Anno* 1577 an old Woman had a pain on her side, and a splinter of a rib as long as the hand broken off, came to the straight gut, and went through it, and the wound healed of it self.

Rumbling of the Belly.

These are symptoms of diseases of the stomach and guts; in Virgins often they come from wind in the guts, that cannot get out, especially in the left side in the Colon, and about the navel, where the small guts are most rouled together.

This Symptom hath no danger in it self, but the disgrace, if there be a danger, it is from the causes.

For the Cure, take away the cause, which is crudities and wind, or which is weakness of the stomach.

OF SYMPTOMES of the Fundament.

Chap. 11. *Of Palsie, numness and pain of the Fundament.*

THere is a Palsie in the Fundament from the Nerves of the sixth pair, from which the guts

guts have the nerves, by reason the animal spirits are not received from a cold and moist distemper, or a narcotick force, when one sits upon a cold stone, or hath an opiate medicine applied to the fundament. I saw this in one of an Apoplexy: the sense was gone and was deadly. It is cured as other Palsies.

Of Itching of the Fundament.

This comes from the same cause as a Tenesmus or needing; from a soft slimy humor upon the Sphincter from sharp excrements left there, from Ascarides or from an ulcer.

If it come from a salt humor, evacuate it, and clense the fundament with a decoction of Mallows and violets, Willow, Moulin, Roses, or with Plantane water, and a little Allum, or with juyce of Danewort. If from worms, see worms: if from an ulcer. Take *Traganth, Sulfur, Lytharge, each a scruple; with Vinegar and Oyl of Roses,* make a *Liniment*. If it be joyned with Tenesmus, cure that.

Chap. 12. *Of Tenesmus or needing.*

IN Inflammation, Hæmorrhoids, Erysipelas, and other Tumors and Ulcers, there is great pain in the fundament, and from external causes, but Tenesmus goes before, a Dysentery follows, it is a constant desire of going to stool with pain, when nothing is voided, or only a little slime and blood. *Plat. lib. 1. obser.*

The immediate cause is any thing that stirs up the expultive faculty in the end of the streight *The*

guts; for the clefts of the fundament do not cause a Tenesmus, but in this part where desire of going to stool lieth, therefore the part affected is the *Podex*, or the extremity of the strait gut, and the cause must be fixed the gut, therefore Choler which is thin & eathly fals down is not the cause, except it stick in the mouths of the vessels that go to the streight gut Also a sharp humor or a stone in the neck of the bladder cause this pain, or swelling of any part near, as of the womb, as in women with child, or in the Piles, worms in swelling of the seed vessels, an ulcer in the neck of the bladder, or a cold distemper, &c.

The Signs. There is constant needing with pain, sometimes nothing is voided, and sometimes but a little slime and blood, sometimes the streight gut falls down, with straining, and the urine comes by drops by reason of its nearness.

The Prognostick. A Tenesmus is easily cured it scarse kils any, but the symptoms are dangerous, for if it be in a woman with child, it causeth abortion, it is as the cause is better or worse, it is worst from melancholy, and if it be neglected, it turns to a Fistula and is hard to be cured.

The Cure. It it follow a Dysentery use universal evacuations, and then cleanse the pricking humor. Take *Barley and Meslin, each a handful; red Roses half a handful Earthworms washed and sliced an ounce, Fleabane, Quince and Fenugreek seed, each a scruple; boyl them in milk, strain half a pint, and add oyl of Roses two ounces, two yelks of Eggs,* and make a Clister. This will cleanse and ease pain. Let it be in small quantity, only to wash the streight gut, & give it often: if there be much pain, give a little Laudanum or Syrup of Poppies.

After

After the pain is allayed if there be an ulcer in the ſtrait gut. Take *Barley a handful, Comfrey roots two ounces, Plantane, Sanicle, red Roſes, each half a handful*; boyl them in water, to half a pint ſtrained, add *Honey of Roſes two ounces, two yolks of Eggs*, make a *Clyſter*. Let this following be given twice or thrice in a day. Take *the decoction mentioned five ounces, Bole, Frankinſenſe, Myrrh, Sanguis draconis, each half a handful. Suppoſitories of Goats Suet, with Frankincenſe, Tutty*, and the like: If pain be great, add two grains of Laudanum, or uſe this fume. Take *Maſtich a ſcruple, Frankincenſe, Storax, Calamite, each half a ſcruple*; *Moulin flowers, red Roſes, each two drams*; make a *Pouder* for a *Fume*.

If it come from a ſlimy ſalt humor ſticking to the guts, cleanſe with Barley water, Mallows, Honey of Roſes. If from Choler, cleanſe with Barley water, Milk, Broath and Sugar. If from a ſtone, uſe Emollients to looſen the paſſages that it may come forth by Clyſters. If from Worms, uſe Clyſters of Peach flowers, Wormwood, Horehound, Hyſop, Hiera. If from too great coldneſs of the guts, uſe Mints, Lineſeeds, Dill in a Bag, and apply it to the fundament, or receive the vapor from their decoction.

Chap. 13. *Of the Hæmorrhoids.*

IT is a flux of blood from the veins of the fundament which have divers diſeaſes, they are ſwollen, or inflamed and pained, or they bleed which is called the flux of the Hæmorrhoids.

Hence there are differences of them. The

fift are internal, that come from the Spleen-branch of the gate vein, which are about the Colon and the streight gut by the Mesentery, and in the muscles of the fundament, and in the inward gut: this branch is one, and hath a fellow Artery from the mesenterick that comes beneath the branches. The external come from the branch of the hollow vein called the Epigastrick, and go to the outward parts of the strait gut or the muscles of the fundament. And so there are two sorts of Hæmorrhoids, some evacuate the blood from the gate vein, others the superfluous blood from the hollow vein.

Moreover some are called blind Hæmorrhoids, others open, they are blind when they only swel and bleed not. They are called open that bleed at times, in the blind there is pain at going to stool, and this pain causeth often an inflammation from the blood that flows to it.

They differ in bigness also, in number, figure, place and constitution. Men have it chiefly in their youth, and sometimes women, the pain in the blind Hæmorrhoids, is because the parts are membranous and nervous, which are of exquisite sense, and the rather if there be an inflammation.

The Causes. The immediate Cause is the opening of the vessels, from adust blood or the like. They flow of themselves by nature, some every month, or every quarter of the year, or without order. Sometimes from an outward cause, as a strong purge of Scammony, Aloes, which open the Hæmorrhoids.

The Signs. They are known by flowing, or swelling, or pain; and whether they are internal or external the external may be touched and seen. The internal

ternal are not felt but by preſſing the fundament, their ſhape is alſo to be ſeen.

Hæmorrhoids that flow moderately and in convenient time, prevent many diſeaſes, and cure ſome. Women with child are the better for them, and the worſe when they ſtop. Theſe make the terms flow the better: if they be ſtopt or flow too much, they cauſe many diſeaſes Nature muſt not be uſed to them, for the exceſs is dangerous. Inward blind Hæmorrhoids, if they go towards the yard, are dangerous, becauſe if they be inflamed, they cauſe a ſtrangury, and it is better to leave them to nature, then to open them, except they ſwell much. *The Prognoſtick.* *Hipp. 6. aph. 11. & 21. Gal. 6. epid. com. 5. t. 25. Gal 3. de natur. fac. c. 8.*

When they ſwell only, and bleed not, uſe friction, with Mercury leaves, Pellitory, Borage, Figs, or anoint them with juyce of Beets, Centaury and Anodynes: if you fear a great flux of humors, let blood in the arm to revel, and then in the ham or ankle: if pain then abate not apply the Leeches to the fundament: if you wil evacuate from the hollow vein, either apply them to the ſides, or backwards or inward: in diſeaſes of the ſpleen, apply them inwardly behind to the left ſide: in obſtructions of the liver, apply them inwardly and outwardly to the ſides: in diſeaſes of the kidnies, Pleuriſie, Peripneumony, and in outward diſeaſes, apply them outwardly, and more to the ſides of the fundament: in madneſs, when the humors are burnt, apply the internally and externally: in melancholy and Pleuriſies, apply them to the ſides more outward. *The Cure.* *Fabr. ab. Aquapendente.*

To allay pain, abate heat, and hinder inflammation, uſe Populeon or Oyntment of Roſes. As, Take *Mucilage of Fleabane ſeed made with*

Rose water half an ounce, oyl of Violets, Roses, each three drams. Or, Take *fresh Butter, oyl of Roses, each an ounce; washed Ceruss half an ounce,* stir them in a leaden mortar for a Liniment. If pain be great, Take *Mallows, Lettice, Violets, Moulin leaves, each a handful; leaves of Mandraks, Chamomil flowers, each half a handful; Linseed half an ounce,* make a Decoction for a Fomentation. Then Take *Oyl of Poppies an ounce, Oyl of Roses half an ounce, juyce of Nightshade two scruples,* mix them in a leaden mortar. Or make this Cataplasm: Take *Mallows, Violets, each a handful; Nightshade, Moulin flowers, each half a handful;* boyl them in Milk, then stamp them *with Wheat and Barley flour, each a dram and half; with yolks Eggs and Oyl of Roses,* make a Pultis: if the pain be very great, add *Opium.* Or, Take *Populeon half an ounce, Oyl of Poppies an ounce, Opium a dram, Saffron a scruple, with a whole Eg* make an Oyntment.

If they never bleed, and there be no hopes that they will; dry them up with Oyntment of Scrophularia or great Pilewort. Or, Take *white Lilly roots, Scrophularia, each an ounce; flowers of Moulin a handful, of Chamomil half a handful, of St Johns-wort a pugil, Dates six,* boyl them soft, bruise them, and ad *Linseed and Fœnugreek, each an ounce; Myrrh, Frankincense, each two scruples; Saffron a scruple, four yolks of Eggs, fresh Butter two ounces,* make a Pultis: or apply *pouder of Moulin in Milk* to consume the tumor, *or a scruple of Bdellium, with juyce of Moulin.*

If they are open, and bleed not kindly, but with pain: help nature with Fomentations and Fumes of Mallows, Althæa, Chamomil, Melilot, Linseed and Fœnugreek: or with Aloes or strong Wine.

If

If they flow too much, or too long, or too often, ſtop them. Open the arm-vein, if they flow too much, for blood taken from the hollow vein, makes revulſion from the liver, and ſo from the Meſeraicks: or if ſtrength permit not bleeding ſo, cup the ſhoulders, loyns and Hypochondria. Allay the ſharpneſs of the blood with Lenitives and thicken it, with Syrup of Purſlane, dried Roſes, Quinces, Sorrel, Currans, Myrtles, and the diſtilled Water of them.

Theſe are ſtronger, Bloodſtone, ſealed Earth, Troches of Ivory, Amber, and others mentioned in a Dyſentery. If a flux urge, give Treacle, Philonium, Requies of *Nicolas*, Laudanum; if ſtrength will bear, revel the ſerous humors to the guts, with Syrup of Roſes, Spina cervina, Manna, Triphera Perſica. Take heed of ſtrong purges, leaſt the humors flow to the part affected.

If theſe ſtop not the flux, give Glutinators, as for wounds: of Bole, Sanguis Draconis, Frankincenſe, Pomegranate flowers As, Take *leaves of Moulin two handfuls, Oakes and Nightſhade, each a handful; red Roſes half a handful,* boyl them *in red Wine for a Fomentation.* Or, Take *Bole a ſcruple and half, Snakeweed roots, Cypreſs, red Roſes, each half an ounce; Pomegranate flowers, Myrtle berries, Hypociſtis, each a ſcruple; Sanguis Draconis half a ſcruple red Coral a ſcruple, Frankincenſe two ſcruples, with Oyl of Roſes and a little Wax,* make a Liniment.

Or uſe the Plaiſter againſt the rupture; if theſe wil not do, uſe Cauſticks, as burnt Braſs, Vitriol, Myſy, Pſory, with Oyntment of Litharge, Ceruſs and Acorn-cups

If theſe do not, uſe manual operation, cut them firſt, and then ſear them up with a hot iron,

Hippocrates burnt them without incision.

Diet. In blind Hæmorrhoids, let the diet be thin and moist, that may wash the guts, as Borage, Spinach, Mallows, Raisons. Avoid sweet-scented and sharp Spices. Drink Barley water, and no strong Wine: if they flow too much, use thickning Meats, as Rice, Bole and Coral, or Quinces, Pears, and let the body and mind be at ease.

Question 1. *What blood is it that is evacuated by the Hæmorrhoids?*

All say that it is thick and melancholy, except *Hippocrates*, but by melancholick blood, they mean not only that which is cold and dry, but burnt blood with melancholy juyce, this makes it look so red; and there are burnt cholerick humors in the Meseraicks that cause feavers or agues, which nature sends out by the internal hæmorrhoids, and the same are evacuated by the external, if they pierce into the hollow vein: Moreover they are more subject to the Hœmorrhoids that have burnt blood, that are in their youth sanguine, and have their blood burnt by distemper, and are subject to the hypochondriack disease. And I have observed that without blood or pain, there is sometimes voided slime that is white; some take it for matter, which *Fernel* saith, is the dreggs of melancholick blood. This comes forth of the veins of the Fundament, after long melancholy diseases, and hard riding. This white humor is not matter, because there is no ulcer, but thick blood turned like to the white of an Eg: this is in such as have over hot blood.

Lib. 6. de morb. & symp. ca. 10.

Quest.

Question 2. *Whether Aloes opens the mouths of the Veins, and causeth the Hæmorrhoids?*

All the Arabians affirm it, others deny it as the Greeks. They say Aloes hath a binding quality, but this controversie is ended in a word. Aloes outwardly applied, doth close the orifice of the vessels, and stop blood: this is the opinion of the Greeks. But because it attenuateth, and maketh the blood hot, it opens the Hæmorrhoids given inwardly to them that are subject to them. *Leonard. Fuchsius parad. lib. 1. c. 1.*

Question 3. *Whether Horseleeches are to be applied to the Hæmorrhoids?*

Galen and others say, that nature must not be used to bleed by the Hæmorrhoids; for it is dangerous, if the blood be too thin, and clear, and much. But others by experience commend them against melancholy, madness, diseases of the kidnies, and the like, where they never before did bleed. *Fabricius ab Aquapendente* saith, That blood by evacuation of the Hæmorrhoids, from the hollow vein, is better taken in malignant feavers then from the arm, because the Hæmorrhoids are near the hollow vein. But observe that if the humors in the hollow vein, are noxious, you may open the external Hæmorrhoids, if they swell, though they never bled before; and so you may do when the humors are in the branches of the gate-vein, because the inward Hæmorrhoids consent. But this bleeding at the Hæmorrhoids is better in *Italy*

Italy and hot Countreys, then in the North, because the blood is there hotter, and more adust, and they are more subject to the Hæmorrhoids.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK. THE THIRD PART.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Meſentery, Sweet-bread, and Omentum.

Chap. 1. *Of the Meſentery, Meſeraicks, and milkie Veins.*

FIRST I ſhal ſpeak of the Meſentery and its veſſels, and the milkie Veins lately found out. I ſhal therefore ſpeak of thoſe veſſels that conſtitute the Meſentery, before I ſpeak of the diſeaſes of it. Look in Anatomies for the figure, and place, and conſtitution of it.

The

The Ancients described three sorts of vessels in the Meseraicks, that is Veins, Arteries and Nerves. And *Gaspar Asellius* of *Cremon* hath published a new kind of Meseraick vessels. He found them in opening a live Dog, and then he gave his mind to follow them: it is eahe to find and see them, you feed a Dog full, and open his belly five or six hours after, but in an empty fasting creature, or when the chyle is distributed, they appear not, nor in old folk. *Asellius* cals them milkie Veins, from their colour and juyce like milk. The branches of these white Veins are dispersed from the center of the Meseraery all over. And thence go to the guts, they differ as he observed from the nerves by their cavity, from arteries by their thinness, and from other veins by their whiteness, and from all by their juyce in them.

In lib. post. de lacteis venis an. 1622.

It is wonder they were conceited so long from industrious Artists, and it is because they opened none but dead bodies; only some living creatures were opened by the Ancients, to find out the motion of the heart, or Diaphragma, or instruments of the voice, or of the brain, or to see how the meat was changed in the Stomach, while these were doing, the creature died, and the milkie veins did disappear or vanish. None before *Asellius* opened a living creature to find out the milkie veins.

They have many valves or little gates, such as *Columbus* saith, are in the extremities of other meseraick veins. But *Asellius* saith there is this difference, The valves of *Columbus* are carried from without, inward, but of these from within, outward. And the reason is, because the milkie veins suck chyle from the guts, which must not

go

go back again, but the other veins carry blood and excrementitious humors to the guts, which muſt not come back.

Theſe milkie veins are diſtinct from other veſſels, and are from one ſtock as they are. But they are greater in the ſtock and branches then the reſt. They are twice as many in number, for the liver wants more chyle to provide for the whole body, then the guts want blood for their private nouriſhment, many of them go to the thin guts, but none to the thick. Their inſertion into the guts is plain, but where the ſtock is, it is not ſo manifeſt. They gather all meat in the Pancreas, and we may ſuſpect that they come from thence, and ſo there is another uſe of the Pancreas, more then the vulgar ſuppoſe, namely to purge that goes into the milkie veins from its muddineſs, that it may go cleaner into the liver. Hence we gather that the Pancreas or ſweetbread is a peculiar Parenchyma, that makes a kind of concoction and alteration of the chyle, of which hereafter. Theſe milkie veins gape at the guts like Horſleeches, with ſpungie heads that are like roots, and pierce into the capacity of the guts, the end in a wrinkled coat, becauſe the inward tunicle of the guts is beſmeared.

They paſs thus They go from the guts through the Meſentery, bending between the two tunicles, partly ſeparated from the other veſſels, and partly with them. Sometimes ſtraight, ſometimes above them; by many glandules to the Pancreas, in which they embrace each other in innumerable turnings, then they go from thence in greater branches by the ſides of the gate vein, which they paſs about as a crown, and ſend ſome of their branches into the hollow vein, and ſo go under

the

the hollow of the liver, and so into the liver, and there are divided into small branches like fibres or hairs, and they disperse themselves in the flesh of it so long, till they are quite lost.

The proper action of these veins, is to distribute the chyle to the liver, which they keep from corruption, the valves they have, help them, for they keep the chyle from going back to the guts, so exactly, that if you press them with your finger, the chyle will not return.

These bring chyle to the liver, the other Mesaraicks bring blood from the liver to the guts. From hence many difficulties and questions among Physitians are at an end, as by what waies the chyle went to the liver? and how it turns to blood, and goes back to the guts. Nor do we now talk more of the sanguification in the Mesaraicks, as if the chyle had been first made in them.

Hence we gather that blood is wholly made in the liver, because the milkie veins are spred all over the flesh of it, and there end, and there is no union of them with other veins. This we are engaged for to *Asellius*. And though there are yet some doubts, yet some I hope will find them out

Chap. 2. *Of the Distemper of the Mesentery.*

THe Mesentery hath many diseases, it is the sink of the whole body, by veins and arteries that are in it in abundance. *Fernelius* said that he found the causes of Choler, Melancholy, Diarrhœa, Dysentery, Cachexy, Apoplexy, Faintness, Feavers, and other diseases in it. For

6 De part. morb. & symp. c. 7

the

the matter being moved, caused Convulsions, Epilepsies, Faintings and death. These diseases were hard to be known by any of the Ancients, except *Hippocrates*.

The first distemper which is seldom alone, but is joyned with matter, and it is difficult to know it. This matter is either bred in it, or sent to it. For the chyle being sent by the Meseraicks and milkie veins to the liver; if it be impure by error of diet, foul humors may easily be gathered in the veins and glandules under them. And these may well be sent from the liver, and spleen, and branches of the gate-vein, from the liver and whole body, to the vessels of the Mesentery; for Nature useth the vessels as well to evacuate foul humors, as to carry nourishment and good juyce.

Also the meseraick arteries receive foul humors and excrements to carry them to the guts, and in these are the causes of many diseases. For what distemper soever they get from choler or flegm, they carry to the parts, in which they spred themselves. Hence the natural heat of parts is weakned, and they cannot do their duty; therefore *Spigelius* writes that the spleen-artery with two mesenterick branches, is the seat of hypochondriack melancholy, and these humors are after sent out by the Hæmorrhoids.

Adria Spigelius lib. 6. de humor. corp. fab. c. 4.

Lo. cit.

There is great consent of the breast with hæmorrhoidal artery, because the stock from which the artery ariseth, descendeth from the heart, and makes the intercostal branches first. Hence it is that Hypochondriack and Scorbutick persons complain of pains in their breast, but not long, but their breast is girded for a time: it is when wind or water that is thin and sharp, is sent by the

the foresaid veins into the muscles of the breast, and these twitcheth and stretcheth the membranes. And by these arteries the Colick turns to a Joynt-gout, and the Joynt-gout into the Colick; and the Colick into the Pallie, when the matter is sent from the meseraicks arteries, to those of the loyns, and so easily to the marrow of the back and brain, because the arteries of the loyns run into the spondils of the loyns by common holes, and so into the marrow. A distemper also of the Metentery goes before a dry dropsie, and if there be a hectick, it is incurable.

The cure is in the distempers of the guts, and because it is seldom without matter, we shall shew it in the next Chapter more plainly.

Chap. 3. *Of the straightness of the vessels of the Mesentery, and stoppage thereof.*

THe vessels of the Mesentery are straight, as the veins meseraick, or the milkie veins which hinders the distribution of the chyle.

Straightness from distraction and compression, the milkie veins are obstructed, from chyle that is crude, thick, or slimy from food that breeds it. They are compressed by swelling of the glandules, and the Meseraicks suffer from the same causes.

The Signs. The sign of this disease, is a flux of chyle by the belly that is white, and the whole body is decayed. For when the chyle hath not its way to the liver, the valves break, and the mouths of the vessels open, and the chyle falls into the guts

The

The Atrophy comes for want of nourishment to the body. The obstruction of the Meseraicks is known by sense of stretching and heaviness, and there is pain and rumbling in the guts, belching, and the like, of which in the Hypochondriack disease.

The Prognostick.

It is a dangerous disease, because bad humors lie long before they are felt, and make strong obstructions.

The Cure.

First, take away the obstruction by openers, let them not be too hot, nor make the humors sharp and breed choler.

Use gentle purges to open the mouths of the Meseraicks, and draw out the humors gently, after preparation thus. As, Take *Troches of Capars, Wormwood, each a scruple; extract of Gentian, Carduus, Centaury, each half a scruple;* make Pills. Or, Take *Endive, Grass, Succory roots, Fennel, Polypody, each half an ounce; Endive, Succory, Agrimony, Dodder, each a handful; Fumitory, Centaury, each half a handful; Spike or Lavender seeds half an ounce, Fennel, Broom seed, each a scruple; Succory, bugloss flowers, each a pugil; white Tartar two scruples, Currans an ounce,* cut and infuse them in *Whey, Succory & Fumitory water,* then strain & ad *Sugar,* infuse them a day at the fire, then strain again, and give *four ounces.*

To cure all Diseases read my *Sennertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus* and *Riolanus,* of the last Editions.

Stronger are Oxymels. As, Take *opening Roots, each half an ounce; Succory, Cedrus pinus, Ash. and Tamarisk, and Caper barks, each three scruples; Endive, Fumitory, Agrimony, Centaury, each a handful; Carduus, Centaury, each half a handful; Succory, Liverwort, Turnesol wers, each two pugils;* infuse them in *Wine-vinegar and Succory water,* add *a dram of Spirit of Salt three days in Balneo,* strain and add *Honey or Sugar,* and

O make

make an Oxymel.

You may make Physick-wine or Ale that is more pleasant, of Tamarisk bark, Wormwood, Carduus, Centaury, Germander, with Cream of Tartar. This is an excellent Medicine against melancholy and thick humors, to cut and attenuate and open obstructions; but in black choler, salt and bitter humors that have fire in them, it is not good, because it doth not abate sharpness: but then you must use things to temper those humors.

After preparation evacuate, open the Hæmorrhoids by Leeches, and purge the humor offending. Thus, Take *dried Wormwood half a handful, Carduus a handful, Centaury, flowers of Sloes, each half a handful; Senna two ounces, Agarick, Turbith, each two scruples; black Hellebore two scruples, Citron peels half an ounce, Ginger, Galangal, Cloves, each a scruple; Anise and Fennel seed, each half a scruple*: infuse them in Wine.

A Vomit is good if nothing prohibite, of which hereafter. Carry away the reliques with Diureticks. Take *extract of Wormwood, Centaury, Carduus, Gentian, each a dram; troches of Capers a scruple, Spikenard, Schœnanth, Smallage and Parsley seeds, each a dram; with juice of Endive* make Pils. Or use Steel prepared, or Spaw-waters.

Chap. 4. *Of the Inflammation of the Mesentery.*

Lib. 2. de febr. c. 21. THis is usual, and the original of all half or semitertian agues, for the hot humors flow with blood into the spaces of the Mesentery, and cause

cause an inflammation. For nature useth to send bad humors from the nobler parts to it, and they are sometimes voided by stool. Sometimes otherwise, and if not, they stick in the Meseraick and Mesentery, and cause an inflammation in some part of it.

The mouths of the Meseraicks are stopt from causes both internal and external. The external are whatsoever is taken, as meat or drink that offends. The internal are thick, slimy, tough humors.

This disease deceives many Physitians, therefore it is good to know it rightly, and that you may by the pain, beneath, above, or upon the navel, or in the sides, or over all the belly and loyns on both sides, or upon the right side only, which goes to the belly, above and beneath the stomach from thence: the body is bound or very costive. The urin red, because some of the choler is sent to the kidnies. The mouth is bitter: appetite is lost: there is thirst, watching, and a feaver. If the guts are affected also the feaver is constant, and commonly a Semitertian. *The Sign.*

It is long and dangerous, because the feaver is great from the great inflammation of the guts or Mesentery. Sometimes they rot, and the patient dies. Sometimes there is a deadly impostume, if there be a lingring feaver, the patient consumes away by degrees. *The Prognostick.*

Here, as in other inflammations, the humors must be stopt, revelled, repelled, purged out, and the distemper corrected. Therefore if there be plenty of blood, and the strength permits, open a vein in the arm: if it be from stoppage of the terms or Hæmorrhoids, open the Saphena also. *The Cure.*

To prevent the flux of humors to the part, and

to temper the humor, give Coolers at the mouth and by Clysters: if the inflamation tend to concoction, give a gentle Purge of Syrup of Roses, Manna, Rhubarb, Senna in Whey; astringents are no waies good but cooling and emollient Clysters are. And at last, when the disease declines, give Diuretick's to provoke urine. See Sect. 2. Part 2. Chap. 2.

Let the diet be thin, and such as abate the heat of the blood; rest and sleep are good. Let the belly be kept loose.

Chap. 5. *Of other Tumors of the Mesentery, Imposthumes, with Suppuration and Corruption.*

THere are other tumors in it, from thick and tartarous humors, that turn to a Scirrhus, node or stone, or slowly turn to imposthumes. This is from evil diet that causeth much choler and flegm which is not evacuated, but sucked into these parts which are of a loose and glandulous substance, where it grows to a head by degrees. So *Parœus* said that *An.* 1572. one *Isabel Rowland* died, and when she was opened, the Mesentery and the Pancreas had a tumor that weighed ten pound and a half: it was scirrhous without, and there were infinite imposthumes in the Mesentery in their several baggs, like Oyl, Honey, whites of Egs, or water all of several sorts.

Benivie. lib. de ab morb & sanit. causis c. 37.

Iober. In vita Rondeleti.

Authors also write of stones found in the Mesentery, and sometimes a Gangrene.

The Signs. Lib. 6. de part. morb. cap. 7.

They are hard to be known, till the patient dies: but *Fernelius* hath shewed us how to know these imposthumes. *If* (said he) *the belly be very large, without rumbling, or long costiveness, or sup-*

pition

picion of a Dropsie, touch it. And if there be much fat that cleaves to the skin, which may be taken up with the hand, and separated from the muscles, the body being fat, it is so. When the tumor is in the muscles of the belly, that is first to be felt, and when you press it, there is pain, because that part is sensible. The guts are not straitned by it, nor the belly bound. But a tumor in the Mesentery lies deep and is not known but by pressing of it, but there is no pain because the part is without Sense But because this tumor presseth the guts, and straitens them; it makes the belly more bound, and they go seldom to stool, because the excrements fall down slowly. But to know whether the tumor be in the whole Mesentery, or in a part of it, and where it is, whether it be hard or soft, you must feel. But you must know what humor it is by observing the constitution of the liver and spleen. Thus *Fernelius.*

And because there is obscurity in this, you must consider other Symptoms. There is sometimes loathing and vomiting, without signs of the stomach affected; the stools are bloody or stink, there is watching, a lingring feaver, cough, and faintness. And tumors that are hard or deep-lying imposthumes are scarce regarded, by reason of the dull sense of the Meserery, but when they break, they are manifest.

These diseases last long, and cause a Consumption or a Dropsie; sometimes the impostlume breaks, and is voided by stool. If it goes another way, it makes a pain like the Colick or corrupts the parts adjacent. The Symptoms are divers, as the humor is, and Nature hath divers waies to expel them, as we shewed. *The Prognostick.*

If they be hard or stony, they cannot be cured, but give things against strong obstructions, and *The Cure.*

things that shall be prescribed against the Hypochondriack disease. But if nature hath not tryed to evacuate the matter, there is little hope: if she have, help her forward by art, clense the matter, & discuss the reliques, and heal the ulcer. Let the part be defended by which the matter flows. It is good to give Cypress Turpentine, with the yolk of an Eg.

Or these Dryers. Take *Sarsa, China, each an ounce and half*; *Avens Strawberry leaves, each a scruple*: *Scabious, Ladies-mantle*, Pauls *Betony, Ground-ivy, each a handful*; *Wood Rhodium six scruples, Currans two scruples*, boyl them in *Chicken broath, or Whey, or steeled Water*; strain, and give *four ounces*.

Or this Electuary. Take *Conserve of red Roses*, Pauls *Betony, Succory, each two ounces*; *Scabious an ounce, Rob of Juniper two ounces, powder of Sarsa, China, Wood-aloes and Rhodium, each two scruples*; *Pearl, red Coral prepared, each two drams*; *with Syrup of Cinnamon* make an Electuary.

Let the diet be of good juyce and ealie concoction, not gross, nor slimy, not sharp, but moderately clenting. You may use the Decoction of China with Liquorish, and Raisons for drink.

Chap. 6. *Of Symptoms from humors gathered in the Mesentery, and chiefly of pain.*

FRom diseases in the Mesentery arise divers Symptoms, vomiting, Diarrhœa, and pains when the humors go to the membranes, which comes often. Also divers sorts of Feavers, corruption of the parts adjacent from heat. If the hu-

humors fill the Glanduls, or stop the vessels nigh, they cause Cachexy, Atrophy, faintness, or swelling of those parts, and there are all the Symptoms which are in the Hypochondriack disease and Scurvey.

Among these, there is a peculiar sort of pain, from matter contained in the Mesentery, of which *Hippocrates* saith thus. *It is a very sharp pain, and the patient tosseth, and roares, and belcheth oft-times, and then seems to be better after it; sometimes he vomits a little choler, &c.* Now the matter of this pain and other Symptoms, is in the Mesentery, for this Mesentery is only a double Peritonæum or Cawl fixed to the loyns, or rising from the ligaments of the Vertebræ of the loyns, to which it is strongly knit, and therefore the cause of this pain may wel be from the Mesentery. And so is the cause of the Palsie and Epilepsie, when the matter is sent from arteries of the Mesentery to those of the loyns. *De quo dolore dictum p. 2. s. c 2.*

The Signs.

In the Chapter of the Colick from the scorbutick humors, we shewed some signs of this pain, but these are the signs of this pain being present. A jaundies, disposition in the eyes, a blewish colour in the face, heavinesse in the Hypochondria, thirst increased, higher urin, belly bound, pain in the loyns. And when the matter cannot get out by the guts, it goes to the loyns, and so to the head and joynts: hence come Palsies, Convulsions, Epilepties, Delirium, and when the evil humors have weakned the bowels, and infected all the blood, there is an Atrophy or want of nourishment in the arms and legs, which is seldom cured.

The Prognostick.

After many years torment, there follows a hectick, or imposthumes in the Peritonæum, or

parts adjacent

The Cure. Take away the cause, and abate the pain, by often Clysters, that the matter may find out a passage by the guts. I have known natural vomiting to do excellent, and many pints of sharp, bitter, corrupt humors have been voided, when nature hath sent the humors through the *Vas breve*, or short vessel into the stomach to be vomited up. Thus are all those pains and diseases cured.

But when nature doth not tend that way least an inverted motion of the guts should follow, you must labour to loosen the fibres of the guts that are stretched, and open the mouths of the Meseraicks and so make way for the matter with Clysters of Goats milk, or the decoction of Mallows, Althæa, Pellitory, Brank ursine, Mercury, Chamomil flowers, with Cock broath, and Cassia, Honey of Roses and Violets, to which you may add Hiera to cleanse more. Give to drink Oyl of sweet Almonds new drawn with Manna. Anoint the belly with Oyl of sweet Almonds, white Lillies, Chamomil, and make Cataplasms mentioned in other places. If the pain be very great, add Narcoticks, as Poppy seed, Laudanum, Philonium, &c.

Chap. 7. *Of the Diseases of the Pancreas.*

THe Anatomists say that the use of the Pancreas or Sweet-bread, is to hold up the vessels, and to be like a pillow for the stomach. But it is not simply a glandulous body made for this use, but it is a Parenchyma, and hath its own

flesh,

flesh, and all the milkie veins go into it. It is therefore made, that whatsoever mud there is in the chyle, may be taken into it, that the chyle may be putrified, and it may be it altereth the chyle some way; and also it doth the duty of the spleen, when it decayed in diseased melancholy bodies, as *Riolanus* saith. This Pancreas hath its diseases, as tumors and impostumes. *Riolanus* brings an example of a tumor in *Augustan Thuan*, whose body being opened, the liver was found hard, round as a ball, stuft'd with flegmatick stuff like Suet, but the Pancreas was as heavy and large as the liver, scirrhous all over, full of knots like Pigeons eggs; the spleen did not weigh an ounce. *Aubertus* hath a story of an impostume. In a Merchant of *Leyden*, who stil when he went to sleep, swounded, and fell into a sweat, and at length died. His body was opened, and his Pancreas had only an impostaume and was rotten.

Riol. antropog lib. 2. c. 16.

There may also be divers Symptoms from an obstruction and swollen Pancreas, the stomach is affected by its nearness, with sense of pain and weight. There is beating about the back, by reason of the compression of the Cœliack artery, and there is short breath from consent of the Diaphragma.

It is cured as the obstructions of the spleen and Scirrhus, and you must lay Plaisters usual for the spleen, to the back, upon the region of the Pancreas.

Chap.

Chap. 8. *Of the Diseases of the Omentum.*

THe Omentum hath divers veins and arteries, the veins are from the gate-vein. Its upper membrane hath both the Gall oepiploides, Cawls. The inferiour hath the right and hindmost Epiplois or Caul, and so many arteries from the Cœliack mesenterick branch. Hence it is that all the humors do easily fall into it. Moreover it only cleaves to those parts to which the branches of the spleen, veins come, and therfore it easily receives foul humors from the spleen, especially in that part which is between the spleen, the Diaphragma, and the stomach. Where there is a cavity arising from the connexion of the stomach, Omentum, Colon and bowels, that hath no passage out, but is shut up like a purse, so that it will hold water. Hence it is that wind and humors shut up in these parts, are accounted to be from the spleen, when the matter is in the Omentum, and often swells the belly, or the left side of the navel. Some while they compress or distend their stomach, hear a noise from wind and humors, included or shut up in the cavity of the Omentum, of which hereafter.

Hipp. 7. aphor. 54.

Vesalius. The Omentum often swells from flowing to it, it hath been known to weigh five pound, when naturally it weighs but half a pound.

Columbus. Also it hath been seen to grow to the muscles of the belly and Peritonæum. Somtimes it fals into the coods, and drawing the stomach downwards, it causeth hickets. Somtimes it rots, and som-

sometimes it is wounded, and cut off.

Humors in the veins and substance of the Omentum, are hard to be evacuated, because the veins open not into any part for evacuation, and they must needs go back to the place from whence they came. Therefore these humo s are not taken away but by constant drinking of spaw-waters.

Wounds of the Omentum are not alwaies deadly, and though a piece be cut off; but if it putrifie or imposthumate, it is scarce cured. See more in the Chapter of the Hypochondriack disease and the Scurvey. *Gal. 4. de vsu part.*

THE

THE FOURTH PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of preternatural Diseases of the Spleen.

Chap. 1. *Of the use of the Spleen, and the Nature of Melancholy.*

ANCIENTLY it was thought the Spleen was only made to receive Melancholy, but the most skilful Physitians say that it is an instrument of sanguification, or making of blood. For it draweth to it self by its natural faculty, the thicker part of the chyle, by the vein called the spleen branch. And makes proper blood of it to nourish it self, and the ignoble parts of the lower belly, as the better and purer part of the chyle is car-

carried to the liver, by the right branch of the gate-vein called Meſentery, to make pure blood for the nobler parts. So the that ſpleē doth cleanſe the blood, and make a ſort of ignoble blood alſo Now the original or riſe of the Spleen-branch, not from the liver, but the gate vein, and the connexion of the Spleen to the ſtomach by veſſels, and its conſtitution being like the liver, and the Symptoms that happen to it, when it is diſeaſed, ſhew that it was not only ordained to attract and evacuate Melancholy from the Liver.

But that which the Spleen cannot turn into blood, is evacuated by convenient waies. The thick by ſtool, with the excrements, or by the Hæmorrhoids, and ſtock of the gate-vein, or by urin ſomtimes. The thin like water, is ſent away by the ſplenick arteries and the kidnies, or by ſtool, or ſweat ſomtimes.

As for the nature of melancholy humors, it is vulgarly divided into that which nouriſheth, called Alimentary, and that which is excrementitious; the nouriſhing Melancholy, is the thickeſt and coldeſt part of the blood. The excrementitious Melancholy is twofold natural and beſides nature. The natural is that thick dirty excrement which is gathered and ſeparated in the Spleen by fanguification. A preternatural excrementitious Melancholy, is an humor made black by aduſtion or burning. It is hot and dry, and is the worſt of humors, of which there are three ſorts. The one is called black Choler, made of burnt blood, and this is the moſt gentle. The ſecond is made of Melancholy burnt. The third is made of choler burnt which is worſt of all.

Melan-

Melancholy is washed often with much Serum, and drawn from the Spleen, and the more when it is thick. And therefore *Hippocrates* cals Melancholy often by the name of Water. And I deny not, but the peculiar and fourth sort of Cacochymy, is from the serous humor. But there is two sorts of Serum; one is mild, which is watereth blood, and thinner: the other is sharp and salt, which is made so by corrupt, salt, or sharp humors. But Serum or whey so properly called is a watery humor void of saltness and sharpness.

Chap. 2. *Of the Distemper of the Spleen.*

THe Spleen hath many diseases, as distempers, obstructions diseases, of number, figure, magnitude, inflamations, scirrhus, wounds, ulcers, and many Symptoms.

The distemper is hot or cold, dry or moist, with or without matter, but most commonly with matter. It may be a bare distemper, but it is seldom known, except there be matter. Sometimes there is thick drosse blood in the Spleen, or flegm sent to it, from the crudity of the stomach.

The Causes The Spleen gets all sorts of distempers, as the liver doth, from hot, dry, cold, and moist causes. Especially from meat or drink, or medicines of those qualities inwardly or outwardly. Also from grosse meat comes thick chyle, which breeds abundance of melancholy, more then can be purged by the usual passages; and if there should but a small quantity be bred, yet if the waies are not open to purge it, it staies in the Spleen, and makes it of its own temper.

The

The causes of breeding melancholy shall be mentioned in Chap. 3. of the Scurvey at large, as in brief, thick air, grosse and windy meats, of an earthy substance, salted or pickled, or smoaked, all grosse meats; all Pulse, Chesnuts, sour fruits, new or hard Wine. Drunkennesse, and gluttony, passions, fear, and sadnesse. Also when the heart or liver are hurt, there are bad humors sent to the Spleen, for it hath many arteries from the heart: and therefore if the arterial blood be bad, the Spleen is infected therewith, and there are passions. As fear and sadnesse which are the causes of many diseases in the Spleen. Also the liver can easily impart any evil to the Spleen, by the branches of the gate-vein.

The Signs. The diseases of the Spleen are generally known, when the diet is such as breeds melancholy. The diseases of distemper are known in particular, by the nature of the causes that went before. If it was a hot cause, it signifies that there is a hot distemper; if cold, a cold. The effects shew the same, so. if the Spleen be too hot there is thirst, sense of heat, and burning in the left side. Much noise and rumbling argue a cold distemper, and belching, and sour vomiting. A dry distemper is known by a kind of hardnesse on the left side, and a thin urin. The rest shall be shewed in the Chapter of the obstruction of the Spleen.

The Prognostick. These diseases are easily cured at the first, but when there are obstructions or hard tumors, they are difficult. From neglect of these diseases, follow Scabs, Melancholy, Scurvey, because the Spleen is the shop of publick work. A distemper with matter is worse, and harder to be cured, because melancholy is thick, and is commonly as bad

bid in the Spleen, the motion of it is slow, and thence come strong obstructions, and the incurable Scirrhus.

The Cure. For the cure of the Spleen, observe some things in general. First, because the Spleen hath a publick office, preserve its strength by moderate astringents; Vinegar and sour things are no friends to the Spleen, they are better against choler. Secondly, the Spleen hath but little sense, and its substance is hard, and the humor bred in it, is thick. Thirdly, the Spleen is evacuated by the Hæmorrhoids and vomiting, when the *vas breve* or short vessel is opened. If it be diseased by consent from the liver, heart, or whole body, mind them; it is cleansed by stool and urin also. And because the matter flows often from all the body to the Spleen, it is good by *Galens* advise to open a vein.

Galen de curat. prolan. miss. c. 16.

Therefore the medicines for the Spleen, are bitters, nitrous, with a binding kind of fourness, and all things that we shall mention against the Scurvey.

The distemper is to be cured by the contrary, and because it is seldom without matter, prepare it, and then evacuate by proper waies: as by the Hæmorrhoids with Leeches. To evacuate by stool, prepare thus. Take *Succory roots and Polypody of the Oak, each half an ounce; bark of Tamarisk, caper roots, each two drams; Harts tongue and Maidenhair, each an handful; Broom, Borage and Buglos flowers, each a pugil; Purslane seed a scruple, Agnus castus seed half a scruple, Raisins half an ounce,* boil them in *Water*, strain and add *Sugar an ounce and half, or Syrup of Apples and Vinegar.* Or make a Julep *with Fumitory and Succory water, and Syrup bizantine, and of Apples,*

with

with six drops of Spirit of Vitriol. Then evacuate *with Syrup of Apples by Crato* thus made. Take *juyce of sweet Apples, borage, Balm, each half a pint; Borage flowers and Violets, each a pugil; Senna, Epithymum, black Hellebore prepared each half an ounce; with Cloves, Cinnamon, Saffron, Aromaticum rosatum, Diamoschu dulce each half a dram;* make a Syrup, give *three ounces with six drams of Manna, or an ounce,* and drink a little Chicken-broath after it.

You may use *Quercetans* Pills of Tartar, but these seem better. Take *Polypody of the Oak two ounces, barks of Tamarisk, Capars, Buglos roots, each half an ounce; Currans bruised an ounce and half, Indian Myrobalans an ounce, Broom flowers half a handful, Columbine seeds and Broom seeds, each two drams;* infuse them in *Fumitory and Harts tongue water, with Salt of Tartar a dram,* and add infused four daies in Balneo *an ounce and half of Cream of Tartar, Senna two ounces, Turbith six drams, Dock roots half an ounce, black Hellebore an ounce and half, Mirrh an ounce, Cordial flowers two pugils, Epithymum six drams, Mace, Cinnamon, Cloves, each half an ounce;* strain, and put it in Balneo, to be infused for a day longer, then pour of the clear, and ad *Aloes three ounces,* then coagulate it with a gentle fire, and ad at the end *Diarrhodon, Lætificans, troches of Lucca and Capars, each two drams; Saffron a dram, salt of Senna and Strawberry leaves, each half a dram; Oyl of Aniseeds six drops, of Citron two grains:* make a Mass. You may make these Pills quicker with the extract of Scammony.

Last of all, evacuate the reliques insensibly, or by urin, with troches of Capers, Lacca, with convenient Liquor.

To be a skilful Physitian study my *Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus,* and *Riolanus,* of the last Editions.

Use outward Medicines with Vinegar and water, to make them pierce, as Oyl of Capars, white Lillies, Orris, Spike, Oyntment of *Agrippa*, of Sowbread.

Abstain from crude, salt, and slimy meats, or smoak dried. Let wine be thin, and clear, not strong.

Chap. 3. *Of the organical diseases of the Spleen, and chiefly of Obstructions.*

Riol. 2. anthropogr. c 25. Arist. hist. anim lib. 2. c. 13.

SOme have had four Spleens, others two. *Fallopius* saith that he saw three in one body. Sometimes the spleen and liver are out of their places, but that is marvelous: but this is not known till after, therefore we shall speak of obstructions.

The Causes

The chief Causes are thick and drossie humors, Tartar-like as they cal them; that are bred of unseasonable diet, that is thick. Also the suppression of terms or Hæmorrhoids, causeth obstructions in the spleen, but when it is too hot, it draws the chyle before it is wel concocted out of the stomach, by the veins it hath in common with the liver. Vehement exercise doth the same, and constant lying on the left side.

Hippo. 4. de morb.

The Signs.

First, there is heavines on the left side, and then pain after running, or long walking. When the disease increaseth, because the thick part of the chyle cannot be drawn by the spleen, by reason of the stoppage of the passages, nor the melancholick excrement purged, it goes to the liver, and there the blood is made melancholy, and is sent to the whole body. Then the rosie colour

turns

turns wan, there is heavineſs and difficult breathing after exercise; heart-beating, scabs, and Dogs-appetite. If the melancholy be sent to the stomach, there is sour belching and vomiting, the urin seems good.

It is stubborn, and long for the most part, and turns to a Scirrhus, except it be cured betimes. *The Prognostick.*

After universals, use attenuaters and cutters, that are not too hot, as Tartar, and Medicines made of it, or of Steel. As, Take *the bark of Capar roots and Tamarisk, each half an ounce; the opening Roots six drams, Bugloss three drams, Germander and Ceterach, each a handful; Agnus castus seed a dram, Bloom and Borage flowers, each half a handful*; infuse them in *Wine, in five ounces strained*, dissolve *Syrup of Borage two ounces, Oxymel of Squills an ounce*, make three Doses: or give it *with three ounces of Syrup of Harts-tongue, and a dram of Tartar vitriolated.* *The Cure.*

If there be hot humours, Take *Purslane seed, Scabious, and of Agnus castus; leaves of Tamarisk, Maidenhair, Harts-tongue, each two drams; Diatrion santalon, bark of Capar roots, each a dram and half; with Oxymel of Squils or tamarisk water, with Gum dissolved in it*, make Troches.

These move urin powerfully, therefore give them not before purging. Take *pills of Fumitory and Tartar, each a dram; of Ammoniacum six grains, extract of black Hellebore three grains*, make small Pills.

You may give a Vomit, for there is a direct way from the spleen to the stomach, by the short vessel, or *vas breve.*

After evacuation, return to the use of attenuaters and cutters, especially Troches, to consume the reliques, and provoke urin.

If these will not do, let him go to the Bath or Spaw-waters, or use steel which opens obstructions, of which in the Hypochond iack disease: then prescribe strengtheners, and consume the reliques.

As, Take *Harts tongue two handfuls, Hyssop, Germander, Rosmary Centaury, each a handful; bark of Tamarisk, Sassaphras, each two scruples; Citron peels half an ounce, Cinnamon, Mace, Cloves, each two ounces*, sew them in a bag of linnen or silk, and infuse it in *half a pint of white Wine.*

Or, Take *Germander, Centaury, each half a handful; barks of Tamarisk half an ounce, with Wine.* The leaves of Henbane boyled in Vinegar and Oyl of Capars, are a good Fomentation. And Ammoniacum dissolved in Vinegar, extenuates the Spleen. Use the diet as before.

Chap. 4. *Of the Spleen too big, and puffed up.*

Marcel. donat. de histo. mirab. l. 6. columb. lib. 15. Anato.

THe proportion of the Spleen is out of order at first: some have been seen with a spleen as big as a liver. Some have had a spleen that filled the whole body. It hath been sometimes twenty pound weight, these are not to be cured. Therefore we shall speak of the pusling up of the spleen, from windy meat and cold water, and humors in the first passages, that are apt to breed wind.

The Signs. There is a swelling and stretching in the left Hypochondrion, and pain with weight; if you press it, there is a noise and belching, the patient will tell you if it came from evil diet, and if not, the cause is from evil humors.

Wind

Wind is eaſily diſcuſſed, therefore this diſeaſe is not hard to be cured. *The Prognoſtick.*

Firſt, diſcuſs the wind, but evacuate firſt if need require. The decoction of Chamomil, and Bettony flowers is excellent. Or, Take *Agnus caſtus ſeeds, Ameos, Smallage, Cummin ſeed, round Birthwort, Centaury the leſs, Capar and Tamariſk barks, each equal parts; and with Wine or Vinegar in which Ammoniacum hath been infuſed a night,* make Troches. *The Cure.*

Foment with the decoction of Capar barks, Tamariſk, Rue, Calamints, Chamomil, Melilot, Agnus caſtus, Dill, Cummin, Bay-berries boyled in Wine-vinegar and Water. Then anoint with oyl of Rue, Orris, Bayes, Spike, Capars. A Cupping-glaſs applied to the Spleen with friction, diſcuſſeth wind powerfully.

Chap. 5. *Of the Inflammation of the Spleen.*

THere are many veins and arteries in the Spleen, if any be ſtopt, the Spleen may be inflamed; or if any one have a fall or ſtroke upon the ſpleen; or when the terms or Hæmorrhoids are ſtopt, and return to the ſpleen: it may be inflamed, and the blood that cauſeth it is pure unmixed with melancholy. *The Cauſes*

Heat and pain on the left ſide, ſwelling in the belly and ſtomach, and to the right ſide, a greater beating, then when the left kidney is inflamed. A feaver like a quartane, difficult breathing, from compreſſion of the Diaphragma. The feet and knees are red: the noſe is without blood, and the ſigns vary as the humor that predomi- *The Signs.*

nates in the inflammation.

The Prognostick. This is seldom, but it causeth many diseases, and ends in a Scirrhus. If from blood, its less dangerous; and if it be all over the spleen, it is worst. A bleeding at the left nostril, after signs of concoction is good. It either goes to another part, or departs by bleeding at the nose, or urin, or stools, or turns to matter, or a Scirrhus.

The Cure. Open a vein presently in the left arm, then the left Saphena, and the Hæmorroids; then apply repellers to the spleen, not too astringent or binding, or cold least the humor be made thick. Add Vinegar to it, or at first use this Fomentation. Take *Oyl of Roses and Quinces, each half an ounce; sharp Wine five pints, Vinegar an ounce:* apply it hot with a cloath.

Then prepare and purge, least the humor flow from the parts adjacent, as we shal shew in a distemper with matter. But let the purge be alwaies according to the humor, drink little, least the humor be carried to the liver. Lay on this Cataplasm: Take *Barley meal, Bean flower, red Roses, Chamomil, Wormwood, each half an ounce; with Oyl of Roses, and a little Saffron, and juyce of Purslane.*

After the heat is abated, use resolvers with repellers. As, Take *Oyl of Roses two ounces, of Chamomil, Lillies Capars, each an ounce.*

In the state and declination, use only resolvers, but take heed that you discuss not the thinnest part with too strong discussers, and leave the thick. Therefore, Take *Fænugreek and Linsed-flower, and of Barley, each an ounce; Figs steept in Vinegar six, Goose grease, Oyl of Lillies, Althea, and Oyl of Capers,* as much as will make a Cataplasm. You may take away the reliques, as in

obstru-

obstructions of the Spleen.

If the inflammation suppurate (which is rare) and which you know by the horror and pain, do this least more parts be corrupted. Take *Althæa roots in pouder an ounce, Barley meal, Fænugreek, and Linseed, and Wheat flour, each half an ounce; Figs four, Oyl of Lillies an ounce and half,* make a Pultis: or apply Diachylon, and then clense and heal the ulcer.

Chap. 6. *Of a Scirrhus, and hard Tumor of the Spleen.*

IT is a hard tumor from a thick humor which is in the spleen, because it makes thick blood, and is nourished therewith.

A thick humor in the spleen hardned. Som- *The Causes*
times it is melancholy; the Chymists call it tartarous, there is pain, watching, care, and a feaver. These humors are gathered from a fault in the spleen, that is so weak, it cannot concoct nor expel: or when the thinner humors are dried up, and consumed, and the thick grow hard. Somtimes there is a putrifying or stone-like condition in the humor.

It is to be felt; if it be old, there is no pain, *The Signs.*
when you press it. The face is wan, and like lead. Breath is short; and there is like a weight that draws down the left jugular. The feet swel and there are ulcers in the leggs, hard to be cured, and other Symptoms in the Scurvey. If there be much flegm, there is a Cachexy over all the body.

Many find no benefit by medicines, but in time *The Pro-*
there is a Dropsie; some come to suppuration, *gnostick.*

and they recover: others grow old with it, and deny not, for every Scirrhus that is confirmed, whether in the spleen or other part is incurable.

The Cure. After universals, of which before, when there is hope use emollients, attenuaters, openers, *Gal.* 13. that are not very hot, as bitter things with Vi- *meth. c.* 5. negar and Oxymel to penetrate; purge sometimes with Senna, black Hellebore, the Catholick extract, with a little Mercurius dulcis, or Mercurius vitæ

Use things good in obstructions. Or, Take *the opening Roots steept in Vinegar, each two drams; Succory roots, Polypody, each half an ounce; Capar and Tamarisk barks, each three drams; Broom, Borage and Buglose flowers, each a pugil; Anise, Agnus castus and Melon seeds, each two drams; Raisins stoned an ounce, Figs four,* boyl them in *steeled water, in a pint dissolve Syrup bizantine of Harts tongue, Oxysaccarum, each an ounce;* make four Doses.

Then this Purge. Take *Fern and Polypody roots, each half an ounce; Ceterach a handful; Germander half a handful, Senna an ounce and half, black Hellebore prepared an ounce, Jalap roots a dram, Galangal, Citron peels, Fennel seed, each two drams;* infuse them, strain out *ten ounces,* and ad *Syrup of Harts-tongue, the five roots each an ounce;* make a Potion for four or five doses.

This is a Secret. Take *Fern roots an ounce,* *Foreſtus ex* *Dodder two drams,* boyl them in *strong Wine from* *Fauentino.* *eight ounces to three:* strain and drink it.

Or, Take *Conserve of Fumitory, Groundpine, Scurvey-grass, Borage, Buglose and Broom flowers, each an ounce; Burnet roots candied half an ounce, troches of Capars an ounce, Diarrhodon a dram, with Syrup bizantine* make an Electuary: give *half an ounce* first and last.

Or

Or use the decoction of Tamarisk: or give a dram of the pouder of the spleen of a wild Ass, and of a Horse, and of a Wolfes liver with convenient liquor *Gal. 9. de compos. sec. lo. c. 2.*

To make the Spleen less, give Wormwood-wine in the morning, and steeled Water, or Iron quenched in Water, after meat. Or this Electuary.

Take *Tamarisk and Caspar barks, Rocket seed, Agnus castus, Ceterach, Endive seed, each a scruple; Saffron half a scruple, Steel prepared half an ounce, with Honey or Sugar, or syrup of Harts-tongue,* make an Electuary, give *two ounces.*

First, use Emollients outward, then Digesters. As. Take *leaves and roots of Althæa, Briony roots, Capar and Tamarisk barks, each an ounce; Ceterach, Broom flowers, each a handful; Agnus castus seed half an ounce,* boyl them in *Water and Vinegar,* and foment the side with a Spunge, then use this Oyntment.

Take *Oyl of Lillies, bitter Almonds, Capers, Rue, Chamomil, white Wine, each three ounces; pouder of Althæa roots, Mallows, Fern, each half an ounce;* boyl them till the Wine be consumed, strain and add *Vinegar half an ounce, Sowbread, Briony and Tobacco in pouder, each two scruples;* boyl till the Vinegar be consumed, strain and ad *Ammoniacum and Bdellium dissolved in Vinegar, each two drams.* Or make a Cataplasm *of two parts of Ammoniacum dissolved in Vinegar, and one part of the juyce of Tobacco, half a part of Rosin and Turpentine, and juyce of Danewort, with oyl of Capars and Wax. Jerome de Aquapendente* saith, he hath cured hard Spleens with it.

Let the air be pure: the meat attenuating, abstain from hard flesh, milkie-meats, and all sweet *The Diet.*

things

things, for they make the spleen swell, use Capars and Broom flowers pickled: drink no new Wine, but sleeked Water, or water out of a Tamarisk cup.

Chap. 7. *Of Wounds in the Spleen.*

The Signs. If they be deep, there is black blood by vomit or stool voided, and the pain reacheth to the throat.

The Prognostick. If it be deep, it is dangerous, by reason of the many veins and arteries: if the outside be wounded only, it is not deadly.

The Cure. Nature commonly cures these wounds, but help her with vulnerary Drinks. As, Take *Comfrey roots half an ounce*, Pauls *Betony a handful*, *Agrimony, Ceterach, St. Johns-wort, each half a handful*; *Sanicle, Pyrola, each a pugil*; *red Roses, Raisons, each an ounce*; boyl them in *Water*, add *a dram of Cinnamon*.

It matter flow out by urin, namely by the cœliack artery, to the trunk or body of the great artery, and so to the emulgent arteries, which is a short way: give things to provoke urin.

Chap. 8. *Of Ulcers of the Spleen.*

The Causes Ulcers do follow inflamations, and wounds, if not well cured

The Signs. Wounds, inflammations or tumors went before, there is a pain in the left side, in time of exer-

exercise. Matter is vomited or voided by stool, or urin; sometimes pure and concocted: sometimes black, drossie and wan.

A new ulcer may be cured, but an old is a lingring death. *The Prognostick.*

Cleanse and heal the wound; if matter be vomited or voided by stool, give Hydromel. If by urin, give an Emulsion of the four cold Seeds, with Hydromel, and Asparagus, and Liquorish-roots boyled in Whey. To heal, give Frankincense, Mastich, Spike, with Honey or Plantane-water. *The Cure.*

Chap. 10. *Of the proper action of the Spleen hurt.*

I Told you that the Spleen doth not only receive melancholick excrements, but make blood, as the modern Anatomists have observed. Now this action of the spleen is hurt, when it doth not attract the chyle, or doth it in part So that the thicker part of the chyle goes to the Liver, and breeds feculent blood. If it attract more greedily then ordinary, there are obstructions by reason of the straitness, or by compression from a tumor or a stone.

The chyle brought to the spleen, is not changed into blood of its own nature, by reason of its weakness, or its faculty hurt, or from an external fault. Hence it is, that the blood is thicker then it ought to be, for the nourishing of the parts, from an outward error, namely thick and slimy diet, which makes the chyle thick, and fit to breed melancholy, which is sent to the spleen, and cannot possibly breed good blood.

The

The Signs. The action of the spleen may be hurt from these causes mentioned, or from them that follow. As evil diet of thick and slimy food easie to corrupt: also if the actions of the spleen are hurt, there are divers Symptoms, for the dregs of blood being sent to the veins, and there putrefying, or burnt, or causeth scabs, or an ulcer. If the spleen attract too strongly, it is known by pissing presently after drink.

The Cure. It is as in the Chapter of the Scurvey and Hypochondriack disease.

Chap. 10. *Of pains in the Spleen.*

The Causes THe Spleen hath its membrane, and when it is stretched, it hath pain from the solution of continuity, either from inflammation or inflation, or puffing up, or from a tumor, and obstruction, and ulcers, and other outward causes.

The Signs. There is pain on the left side, and that may be also when the spleen is sound, therefore it is to be distinguished. For this pain comes often after meat, riding, or exercise with a pricking. And it is because the Peritonæum is drawn by water and wind, that stretch the membranes.

The pain of the muscles is known by the touch, for the spleen lies deeper. Moreover in the pain of the spleen the colour of the countenance is changed, and the urin.

The Prognostick. The danger is in the causes of the pain, some are greater then others.

The Cure. If the pain be from an internal cause, as stroke or fal, let blood, lest the blood should flow more to the spleen; then lay a moderate repeller upon

on the ſpleen. If it be from an internal cauſe, remove that, or uſe Anodynes or Narcoticks.

Chap. 11. *Of the black Jaundies.*

THe black Jaundies is a turning of the whole body black; ſometimes it is from poyſon, and commonly where there is no ſuſpicion of poyſon, it is thought to come from the ſpleen. For when the ſpleen doth not its duty, that is, ſucks not in the thick and melancholy chyle. It is ſpred over all the body, either from weakneſs of the ſpleen, or from obſtruction of the veſſels that go from the gate vein to the ſpleen The ſame is, when that excrement is not expelled by proper waies, but is gathered in a great quantity.

Some think that the black Jaundies comes from the gall or choler which is corrupted in the Meſeraicks, and ſo made green or black. *Plin. tr. 3. lib. 1. c. 2.*

If there be no ſuſpicion of poyſon, this black is from an internal cauſe, and you muſt ſearch whether it comes from the gall or ſpleen. If it come from the gall, there will be ſigns of a diſtempered liver, and of choler corrupted. If it come from the ſpleen, there will be ſigns of a diſtempered ſpleen, as heavineſs on the left ſide, ſtretching, and hardneſs, if not, the cauſe is a cold diſtemper, which keeps the ſpleen from ſucking. *The Signs.*

The black Jaundies are worſe then the yellow, by reaſon of the ſtubbornneſs of the humor. If choler be the cauſe, it ſignifies greater corruption and danger. *The Prognoſtick.*

If it come from the gall, cure it as the yellow Jaundies, only let the medicines reſpect melancholy. *The Cure.*

choly, If it come from the spleen, correct its distemper, or open the obstruction, and purge melancholy in both.

Medicines of Steel are best here. As, Take *Steel prepared two ounces, Currans an ounce and half,* infuse them three daies *in Dodder and Fumitory water, each a pint*; pour off the *Water*, ad *Dock roots, Polypody, Capers barks, each half an ounce*; *Centaury, Dodder, each half a handful*; *Columbine and Broom seed, each a dram*; boyl them, and at the end, add *Senna an ounce*, strain and ad *syrup of Harts-tongue, Pizantine simple, each an ounce*; *with Sugar* make a Syrup, discuss that which remains in the skin with Diaphoreticks, *as the decoction of Chamomil flowers, Scordium, Fennel roots, red Pease, and the like.*

Use a bath of Mallows, Beets, Rue, Pellitory and Chamomil flowers, wash the face with Bean flower water, or the decoction of Lupines.

THE

THE FIFTH PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of the diſeaſe of the Hypochondrion or ſide, and of the Scurvey.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of the Hypochondriack Diſeaſe.

Chap. 1. *Of the Nature of the Hypochondriack Diſeaſe.*

WHEN all the concoctions and alteration in the body are well done, and according to nature, there muſt be none or few excrements to hinder

der the actions. For there are few diseases but come from those parts, where the excrements of the first or second concoction are gathered, because they remain not alwaies there, but are either themselves, or vapors from them, spread through the whole body, by the veins and arteries, which cause divers diseases and symptoms.

The Hypochondriack disease is chief here. It is a gathering of foul humors, chiefly melancholy, or flegm, or choler in the branches of the gate vein, the coeliack artery, and the mesenterick, in the Hypochondrion, especially in the left side, between the stomach and the spleen chiefly from a defect in concoction in the spleen, without putrefaction, from whence, through vapors, like humors, divers Symptoms arise.

Hippo. 2. de mor. *Hippocrates* knew this, when he described a patient, *that could neither bear fasting nor eating, his empty guts rumbled, and the mouth of his stomach moved, and he vomited sometimes flegm or choler, or sour humors, and seemed a little better after. And a little after he saith, that he was hot and high coloured, and thought he should alwaies have large stools, and was troubled with the headach, &c.* By these words he described this disease.

The name is from the place affected, that is the Hypochondrion or side, under the bastard or short ribs to the guts, containing not only muscles but the bowels within, because it lies under the gristles of the short ribs; some call it the windy disease. The Chymists call it the Tartar of the Hypochondria.

Dioclet. & Aetius.

Chap.

Chap. 2. *Of the part affected.*

THe place in which this matter is contained, is the branches of the gate-vein, and the cœliack and meſenterick artery. The Hypochondriack diſeaſe is larger then the Hypochondriack melancholy. For many have one that have not the other, I mean the windy diſeaſe, as *Diocles* and *Ætius* call it.

Therefore the place containing the cauſe of the Hypochondriack diſeaſe, is ſuch as the humors may flow from, that is the branches of the gate-vein, and cœliack and meſenterick arteries, that come from the liver and ſpleen, to the ſtomach and parts adjacent. Theſe are the places of the Meſentery, Omentum and Pancreas, from which bad humors may eaſily flow into the veſſels. For the office of theſe veſſels, is to carry blood to the ſtomach and parts adjacent, and to evil humors to be ſent out by art or nature, which cannot come to the guts, but through theſe veſſels. Hence it is evident, that whatſoever is ſuperfluous, and foul in the liver, ſpleen, or the whole body, may be laid up in theſe places.

The ſhort veſſel ſhews a conſent with the ſtomach and ſpleen, and this is the way by which in this diſeaſe, blood is vomited and purged. You may add the Omentum, for it hath large veins from the gate-vein. Alſo there is a cavity in the left ſide, under the Diaphragma, made of the connexion of the ſtomach, Omentum, Colon, and bowels that hath no paſſage out, but ſo that it can hold water and wind; and there is ſometimes gathered from the bowels adjacent, flegm

Adria. ſpige. ſaxon. l. 6. c. 5.

that is thick, or water, or black choler, and wind. These stick so close, that no purges nor vomits can remove them, only drinking of Spaw-waters. And if from thence, any thing get back into the veins and arteries, it may be called the Cause of this disease.

Chap. 3. *Of the Causes of the Hypochondriack disease.*

THere are divers opinions of the nature of this humor, I shall speak my thoughts of it. It is not of one sort, but divers, hot, cholerick, bitter, burnt, melancholick, flegmatick, acide, so that some are hot, others cold, as appears by sharp belching, fluctuation, or noise of much wind, slow concoction. But hurts of the brain and heart, are from adust or burnt humors, as appears by heat in the Hypochondria. The Chymists call them Tartarous humors, and some parts of them may be so called, namely the thicker clay-like or more fixed part, that makes this disease last so long. Of which *Hippocrates* speaks as they are bitter, salt or sour, and make such vomiting, whereby the teeth are set on edg.

Lib. de prisca medi.

2. The parts in which the humors that cause this disease are bred, cause difficulties. For *Dioscorides* saith, That obstruction of the meseraicks and heat come from that cause, and to these he adds inflammation of the lower orifice of the stomach, and many are of his mind, but obstructions alone are not sufficient.

Therefore observe. That while Authors laboured to explain and manifest this obscure disease, some of them only considered the parts, by

the

the hurt of which it was most manifest. Others considered those parts, where the fountain of the disease is. Therefore consider what parts suffer from themselves, and what by consent. Then observe that though the stomach suffer as appears by vomiting and other signs. Yet all those humors are not bred in the stomach, but are sent from other parts. And if they be bred there, they cannot be the cause of this disease, but of the Symptoms only, which are about the stomach. Therefore we shall determine that the place in which the cause is contained, is the vessels that come from the liver and spleen, to the stomach, to which we add the great branches of the gate-vein, and the arteries in the Mesentery and Omentum.

But there are divers opinions of the cause of breeding such humors. If we consider well, we shall find the spleen to be the immediate cause, though the liver be not without fault, and the stomach is also concerned in it as a remote cause that made bad chyle. For the spleen having a power to make blood, as the Learned now agree, and draws to it self the thickest part of the chyle for that work, to nourish the bowels, so that the first sanguification is in the spleen, and it takes away that which is impure, before it goes to the liver. It is no wonder then, if it be ill, and if that an errour be in the first concoction, that it be not mended in the second, that bad blood is made in the spleen. It is manifest that the parts in the lower belly, and the stomach it self, receive no good nourishment from it, and they are weak and therefore necessarily must bad humors be about those parts, especially if they be not sent forth by convenient passages,

Many things hurt the sanguification of the spleen; first the chyle, if it be foul and thick, which the spleen draws from the stomach. 2 The hot distemper of the spleen, to which the distemper of the liver is joyned. Hence it is that the liver and spleen, by reason of their heat, draw the meat and drink crude from the stomach, and the thinnest part of the chyle first. So that the thick wanting a vehicle to carry it sticks in the Meseraicks, and grows thicker, and is sometimes burnt, and then comes to the spleen, and is not well concocted.

To these may be added external errors in sanguification. As all meats of bad juice, hard concoction, and that breed crude, thick or melancholick humors.

When this heat is over, a drines remains. Nor must we look only at the first qualities, but to the manner of the substance. For while the liver is flourishing and red, it sanguifies right. And if the spleen be of a right mode, it doth its work well also. But if it be too dry, or hard, or scirrhous, it cannot.

The stomach also is concerned in this getting of bad humors, when it is naturally weak. For if there be crude chyle, whether from a fault in the meat, or the stomach that goes to the liver and spleen, it stops by the way by its thickness, and causeth wind, and stretcheth the Hypochondria, and it after burns, and breeds melancholie.

Anger and passion do the same, for by anger all the Spirits necessary to concoction, are taken away; and if there be sadness, it will move melancholy. The Glanduls in the Mesentery being many, and if they swell, they press the vessels,

ſels, and hinder the fit diſtribution of the chyle, and the voiding of the excrements.

And the ſtoppage of accuſtomed terms or Hæmorrhoids, may cauſe ſuch excrements to be in the firſt paſſages, and in Hypochondria, and ſo afford matter to the diſeaſe.

Chap. 4. *Signs and Symptoms in the Hypochondriack diſeaſe.*

THe Symptoms teach us to know this diſeaſe with the cauſes mentioned, which are the fountain of the ſigns; as crudity of ſtomach, wind, rumbling of the belly, ſharp belching, much ſpittle, belly bound, heat in the Hypochondria, the ſpleen ſwollen in ſome; the urin is variable, there is trouble of mind, and beating of the arteries in the left ſide, difficult breath, heart-beating, pain of the breaſt, lazineſs, pain of the legs, giddineſs and darkneſs, noiſe in the ears, in ſome ſadneſs, ſorrow, doting, not in all alike.

In ſome the ſtomach is bad, and they think they are well in other parts. For the blood from the branches of the gate-vein to nouriſh the ſtomach, being not good, it is weak from ill nouriſhment, and concocts ill, and ſo there are ſour belchings. And ſo there is a reciprocal generation of ill, when the ſpleen ſends evil blood to the ſtomach, and receives bad chyle from it. But before this is, there is a great boyling of this humor in the ſtomach, and thence comes much wind, that ſtretch the ſtomach and parts adjacent, and makes ſtraitneſs about the midriff, ſo that they ſtand ſometimes, nor do theſe Symptomes ceaſe, till the thick be vomited up, or inſenſibly

discussed. Sometimes it goes away with a fit of an ague, and then sweating.

The wind is so in this disease, that it is called the windy Disease. For when the stomach and guts cannot well concoct, wind must needs be bred. And when the heat is great in the vessels about the stomach and spleen, and much windy matter sticks there and by the daily concoction of a weak stomach, there is crude, thick and windy chyle sent to the branches of the gate-vein. It is no wonder, if much wind do breed Now the wind is contained in the cavity above mentioned in the left side, under the Diaphragma, that is made of the connexion of the stomach, Omentum, Colon, and bowels, and hath no passage out.

There are also great pains in the stomach which reach to the back, so that they are taken for fits of the stone. And after concoction they vanish, and return again after eating, and sometimes fasting. Nor do they cease till they vomit up their meat crude, or bitter flegm, hot and sharp, that sets their teeth on edg.

The belly is bound, by reason of the dryness of the vessels, on both sides of the liver and spleen. But if the humors turn very sharp, there is a flux of choler, melancholy, with black humors.

There is heat in the Hypochondria, and now in one side, now on the other, or in both, from hot humors smutting: and this is more manifest, when the humors are moved by heat, or the like.

The urin is commonly thick, red, and sharp, or stinks; sometimes thin, when thick humors stop the passages of it. There is also trouble when vapors ascend to the heart, or when the stomach

is

is disordered. There is often palpitation of the heart, and fainting, partly from consent of the stomach, partly from vapors which arise from foul humors, which the heart labours to expel, and then they despair of life. There is beating on the left side, from a hot distemper, from the cœliack branch which is there spred. And the vapors that flie up from the foul humors through the veins and arteries, bring divers Symptomes in the head and nerves. And while they ascend through the gullet or rough artery, they dry the palate, tongue and mouth, and cause thirst. The same make difficult breath, and pain and constriction in the breast, when they press the Diaphragma. If they get through the membranes of the brain, they tear them, so that they think their brain will be pulled out of their skull. When they get into the brain, the spirits are disturbed, the eyes are dim, and their noise in the ears, or false imaginations, or dotings. So that some are in continual sorrow, others cry and lament, and if the humor or vapor sent to the brain, be from black choler, it causeth madness. If it be sharp, an Epilepsie, and sometimes the disease ends in an Apoplexy.

The same vapors, when hot and dry, cause long watching, troublesom sleep, and terrible dreams. These Symptomes are not all in every one, but more or less, according to the variety of the humor, or plenty of it, and as the parts are that are hurt. Nor is it essential to this disease, that there be hardness, pain, stretching, and tumor in the side, when the cause of the disease is in the branches of the gate-vein, and the adjacent arteries, and vapors are sent from thence to the heart and brain.

If the womb caused it, there is a stoppage of the terms, and a rumbling often in the lower belly.

And because the liver and the stomach do often work contrary, and make the cure more difficult, you shall thus discover it. The distemper of the liver is known from the redness of the cheeks, heat of the hands and knees, red urin and thirst. But a cold distemper of the stomach, is known by sharp crudities: and if it be nidorous, or a burnt scent, it is from the heat of the liver, and then there is much wind, because the heat of the liver acteth less upon the gross matter.

CHAP. V.

The Prognostick.

THis is a stubborn disease, by reason of the variety of Symptoms, and the contrary actings of the bowels, and worse from the cause that lies hid, for the matter that lyeth in the cavity of the Omentum, is hard to get out. When the matter is gathered on the right side, it is better, because the humor is gentler, but is worse when it is on both sides. The Hæmorrhoids or terms coming, cure the disease. If they flow gently, it is good also when the left nostril bleeds. A giddiness, or Megrim, or old headach ends in an Epilepsie and Convultion, or in blindness: sometimes in an Apoplexy. This disease is commonly joyned with the Scurvey; they that loath and vomit, and have evil concoction, or turn hectick, die of a Consumption.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

The Indications and Cure.

THe humor lodged in the Hypochondria muſt be evacuated, and the vapors that breed ſo many Symptoms revelled. And becauſe they are ſlimy and flegmatick, by reaſon of the concoction of the ſtomach hurt; they muſt be made thin, clenſed and opened. And becauſe they are hot, and in a hot veſſel, they muſt be cooled and moiſtned. You muſt alſo prevent the breeding of ſuch humors, and laſtly the parts, by reaſon of whoſe weakneſs this is, muſt be ſtrengthened, but all muſt be done warily, leaſt while we do good to one part, we hurt another.

Bleeding.

THe humors which cauſe the diſeaſe, are in the branches of the gate-vein, and cannot be well evacuated, as the branches of the hollow vein. Nor doth any branch of the gate-vein come to the outſide of the body, but the hemorrhoid vein which goes to the ſtrait gut. Therfore if that be opened the diſeaſe is cured, which is ſeldome, but when nature doth it of it ſelf. The internal Hæmorrhoids may well be opened in ſuch as never had them open or ſwel, but whether they be opened by art or nature, they alwaies do good. And albeit the internal and external Hæmorrhoids come from divers veins, becauſe they are in the ſtrait gut, and are communicated

cated by their orifices; they do good when opened outwardly.

Therefore use *Grass, Asparagus roots, of Borage and Bugloss, Fennel, Scorzonera, Polypody, Liquorish, Dropwort Succory, Endive, Maidenhair, Ceterach, Harts-tongue, Germander, Fumitory, Agrimony, Centaury, Wormwood, Broom and Fennel seeds, juice of sweet Apples*: these are good against melancholy. Sometimes use stronger, sometimes weaker, as the disease requires

After Preparatives, purge *with Polypody, Fumitory, Epithimum, Senna, Jallip, Myrobalans Indian, Catholicon, syrup of Polypody, Apples, Epithimum, and with black Hellebore.* When there is flegm, use stronger things to purge flegm, as *Agarick, Turbith,* alwaies giving meat two hours after, lest the strength of a strong medicine pierce beyond the liver and spleen. If there be a nidorous or burnt crudity, use *Manna, Syrup of Roses, Rhubarb, Senna,* and give Whey after them.

Because the humor is stubborn, purge by degrees, and mix alterers and preparers with purgers, as *the decoction of an old Cock, the seeds of Mallows two drams,* which *Fuchs* gives to moisten the belly. *Cream of Tartar and Tartar vitriolated, open the first passages.*

Quercet. in pharm. rest. c. 8. Tetrab. 2. ser. 2. c. 10.

Vomiting often is good, if the stomach wil endure it, then give Whey fourteen daies or more, with *juyce of Succory, Fumitory,* Pauls *Betony, Carduus, Germander, Ceterach,* for bitter things are friends to the spleen. If Whey breeds wind, boyl in it *Coriander seed, or a little Sassaphras*: this will bring a right temper again.

It is good to provoke urine, if the things do not heat, and the way be easie and open from the

the ſpleen, by the cœliack artery, to the emulgents, and ſo to the kidnies; for ſo ſome have piſſed very black with great benefit.

At length, if all things fail, uſe Steel and Spaw-waters. *Valerius in exercit. hollo.*

As for Steel, the beſt Phyſitians commend it, as *Aigineta, Dioſcorides, Oribaſius, Rhaſis*, and many others.

There are divers opinions of the manner of uſing it, but all ſay, it purges not by election. But I ſuppoſe it propable, that iron and ſteel have a peculiar force againſt burnt and melancholick humors, to attract and ſuck them in, and become one with them. Steel being a metal, cannot be turned to nouriſhment, and being a groſs ſubſtance, cannot pierce into the inmoſt parts, nature is provoked by it, and the melancholick humor is evacuated with it, and the excrements are made black, if not, forbear the uſe of it.

The preparation of it, is not alwaies in very pouder, but in groſs. Let it be given in an obſtructed ſpleen, and abundance of melancholick humors, that it may ſtick in the firſt paſſages, and ſuck up the thick humors, and go down eaſily; for being ſo prepared, it troubles not the belly, nor provokes vomit. Nor is it ſo troubleſom, if ſteel be diſſolved with Spirit of Vitriol, and ſome Spleen-water added to it, and an extract of black Hellebore made with that liquor, it is an excellent remedy. But this is certain, that what way ſoever it is prepared, the ſtrength lies in the Sulphur that is in it plentifully; therefore take heed that you looſe not that in the preparation. It is given with *Conſerve of Roſes, Violets, Borage, or with ſome ſyrup or juyce of Succory or Agrimony.* And that the ſtomach be not offended by it, add *Cloves* *Merc. de recto præſ. uſu lib 2. c. 7.*

Cloves, or Cinnamon, or Diarrhodon, give two scruples at least, and a dram and half at the most, with two ounces of Syrup, or three and four ounces of wine, or six. Take after it a draught of white Wine, or a draught of Cinnamon water, or Cock broath.

It is given in the Spring and Fall, lest the winter should hinder with cold, or the Summer with heat: in the morning fasting, and if the patient have strength, let him walk upon it, four hours after let him eat. At first let him take it onely every third day, and when he is used to it, every day, some vomit not at all after; others after some few dayes vomit not. It is to be continued for nine, fifteen or twenty dayes, and if it be not voided, use a purger with it, as *a dram of Aloes, with syrup of Maidenhair.*

As for Spaw-waters, they attract melancholy, because their mineral Spirits trouble the humors and fetch them along with them. They that use them, do often void black excrements in abundance, which comes from the Vitriol. Some Chymists give some grains of pouder of Salt, to work in a small quantity because they say a great quantity of water hurts the stomach, but in my judgment they are out. For that plenty of water doth not offend, for it is presently evacuated. Sometimes it proceeth all the vessels, and washeth away whatsoever is ill, which no pouder can do. Neither is the proportion of pouder considerable to such a number of Meseraicks, and no art can imitate that singular mixture made by nature.

All the time of the cure, have a regard to the spleen and its strength, by inward and outward applications, because the original is from thence, and to the parts that are instrumental to this disease, as the stomach. Also look to the head and heart,

heart, that vapors hurt them not: therefore divert, dissipate, and correct the vapors by things mentioned. Moreover it is observed, that many in this disease, have found no benefit in the time of Physick, but presently after have been perfectly cured.

CHAP. VII.

The Diet.

IF you are bound to observe diet in any disease, do it in this, for it hath its original, and is nourished from bad diet. Therefore let the air be temperate, the meat of good juyce, easie concoction: temperate, as Lamb, Veal, Mutton, beware of gross meats, use no Milk nor Cheese. *Capers pickled are bad, for they are not only hard of concoction, but the Vinegar exalts and ferments the humor. Asparagus, Endive, and Succory, and Parsley, are good. Let the Bread be pure Wheat leavened and well baked.*

Let the drink be thin white Wine, clear, not sharp. Let sleep be moderate and in season, not presently after meat. A sedentary life is not good. You must abhominate passions of deadly, especially anger and sadness.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK.

THE SIXTH PART.

THE *SECOND SECTION.*

Of the Scurvey.

Chap. 1. *Of the Names and Nature of the Scurvey.*

THE Word Scorbut or Scurvey, was borrowed from the Inhabitants of lowe *Saxony*. It is so called from the effect, namely the torments of the belly. It is a question whether the Ancients knew this disease. *Plin.* mentions a disease called *Stomacace* and *Scelotyrbe*, Physitians take it for the Scurvey, and I consent. Some think that

a lib. 21. hist. natur. c. 2

the

the black Jaundies by *Ægineta* described was it, others deny it. Others think that *Hippocrates* described the Scurvey, where he speaks of diseases of the spleen, and chiefly of great spleens, I am of their judgment for it, for what he speaks, there agrees so exactly with the Scurvey, that he could not be ignorant of it. And he sets it forth there also under the name of *Convolvulus* from bloody which signifies the torments or breaking of the belly, and may agree with this. And though *Convolvulus* or *Ileos* be in the small guts, yet it may be understood of the torments of the whole belly, and the Word *bloody* is added, which may agree with the Scurvey; for they do vomit or purge black blood often. Other Greek Physitians saw it but seldome, and could not describe it so plainly, or give it a name. *Ægineta* describes it elegantly, and *Avicen* also, only he speaks not of the hardness of the spleen, because that is not always: but the question is not about the name, but the disease.

2. *De morb. inter. 2. prognost.*

Paulus lib 3. c. 49. Avic. lib. 3. fen. 15. b 2. c. 52.

It is a common, endemical, natural disease in the *North*, and the Inhabitants by the *Baltick Ocean* and the *Germane*, and in lower *Saxony*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Frieslers*, *Brabant*, *Denmark*, *Swethland*, *Norway*, *Island*, and in other places near the Sea, or where they drink seldom good water; or have evil air or diet. Sometimes it is not endemical, but acquired by evil diet.

To open the nature of it, it is hard to give it a perfect definition, but I shall describe it thus.

The Scurvey is an evil nourishing or Cachexy of the body, coming from a melancholick humor by a peculiar way corrupted with weakness of the legs spots, swollen and bleeding gums loose teeth, and many other Symptoms.

Chap.

Chap. 2. *Of the Subject and Cause of the Scurvey.*

WHen the Stomach, Spleen or Liver, do not their office, there is so great a collection of bad humors, that the receptacles ordained by nature to receive them, cannot contain them; and then the superfluous humors go to the adjacent parts, as the Metentery, Pancreas or Sweet-bread which are as the link to the whole body. The Omentum also takes the same, and that cavity on the left side, under the Diaphragma, that is made of the connexion of the Stomach, Omentum, Colon and bowels, that hath no passage out, but so shut up, that it can contain both water and wind. The Spleen is the chief cause of these evil humors, the Metentery and places adjacent, are the receivers and seat of them. Therefore in these places, we must seek for the causes and Symptoms of the Scurvey.

That this may be understood, you must know that the concoction by which the nourishment is made fit for the body, and separated from unprofitable excrements, is done by a kind of fermentation, by which that which before was fixed, is rarified and made spiritual and as the Chymists say, *Volatile*, and freed from excrements not only that they may be easier assimilated, but that they may give matter to the Spirits. So in fruits from maturation, there is a more subtle nature, and a Spirit may be drawn from them, which cannot be from the unripe.

Now when the parts not fit for nourishment, are separated and voided by stool, and that the liver

liver may make better blood, the spleen hath taken the thicker part of the chyle, and cast what is unprofitable into the passages ordained by nature, to expel them. A man is in good health, if otherwise there is the beginning of a Scurvey. For the cruder and thicker parts of the chyle stick in the first passages, and stop in the branches of the Meseraicks and gate-vein, and in the Mesentery, and Pancreas, and Omentum: and they are continually increased by the cause that gives matter, and other crude humors are mixed with these salt, thick, fixed humors, and stop in the same places. And so there is a collection of tartarous humors in the first passages. There by continuance they corrupt more, and cause many Hypochondriack diseases, till at length they get an evil contagious disposition, peculiar to the Scurvey.

The humors in this Scurvey disposition lie some time in the first passages without doing hurt; but when they are much increased, there is a serous humor that washeth them, and makes them move to the liver, and mix themselves with the blood, and infect it, and they are carried with it into divers parts of the body, as the muscles, tendons, joynts, and so produce divers diseases and Symptomes, according to the parts that receive them.

For being sent outward, they can neither be assimilated or made like the parts, nor well be sent forth, but are there detained, and trouble the body, and make it lazy, and being moved, they cause divers wandring pains. When they go to the gums, they make that soft tender flesh swell, and corrode it, then they itch, and the flesh being worn away, they bleed, grow yellow, and are ulcera-

ulcerated, smell strong, and stink, and the teeth are loose, and fall out. Now the humors that fall down by the thigh branches of the hollow vein, and by the capillar or hair veins with the Serum, come with the blood to the skin, and there make red or blew spots. When they come to the tendons and ligatures, they cause heavinesse of legs, and weariness and weakness, and the parts are sometimes loosned, sometimes dried by them: hence the tendons are rough, and the legs loose in motion, and there is a kind of Palsie. When they are carried to other parts, they cause humors, putrifactions and erosions, of which hereafter.

Scrabuti scales.

That we may search deeper into the seat of the Scurvey, we say there is a twofold subject of its cause. 1. That fountain in which it breeds. 2. The seat in which the cause bred is contained. As for the fountain of the matter, if it be without contagion it is the Mesentery and first passages of the body, or the branches of the gate-vein, which run through them (the spleen being often free from it.) But if the chyle be ful of salt and tartarous excrements, the spleen can neither attract nor work it. But if the spleen be weak or stopt, it can less do its duty. And therefore the seat and first fountain of the matter of the Scurvey from bad diet, is the Mesentery, Omentum, and first passages, and the spaces between the stomach, spleen and liver, as we shewed.

If this disease continue long, and the matter of it being much, is sent by the veins and arteries into the whole body, then the body is the seat of the Scurvey. Now doth that occult disposition alwaies keep it self within the humors, but infects the parts adjacent. And from the vapors

of

of the humors, the stomach, the spleen, the liver, the kidnies, and the Omentum and guts are affected. And the bowels, when they have received that evil disposition communicate the same to the nourishment that flows thither, as it is in the Elephantiasis and in the French pox, and so the whole body is infected with a cachochymycal Scurvey.

To these causes is added the melancholick humor, that is crude and serous, mixed with other corrupt humors. But this cannot be an immediate cause, till it be corrupted it self. And so the cause of the Scurvey is not only a black humor, but it is mixed with much thin, like a lixivium or lye, that is mixed of water, and salt, and burnt parts. And why the same Symptoms are not seen in quartane agues and melancholick diseases, (though they turn to the Scurvey) the reason is, because they have not obtained the peculiar and occult corruption of the Scurvey, which is a sign of a stronger impression then can be in the first qualities; but it is the poyson, whose impression is so strong, that the dispositions made thereby, cannot be taken away all the life time: therefore the Scurvey comes not simply of a melancholick humor.

There is a third kind of breeding of this scorbutick matter; if you rest not in the first qualities, but consider the occult faculties mentioned by *Hippocrates*, when he speaks of sour and bitter things, and the fermentation of salt humors. We have shewed that that thin and tart serous matter is retained and walked with much Serum; and if it stay long, it at length gets a peculiar, specifical and scorbutick corruption. Thus I learn first from the diet, which useth to breed

Lib. de prisca med.

the Scurvey, as salt and smoak, dried meats eaten at Sea, or in the Towns near it, where the air is thick, or salt, or in Fens; or such as is produced from marshie grounds, or corrupt muddy water. In these places, I say the Scurvey is usual. And in these meats, there is little that is volatile, and nature cannot make it volatile, or thin, or spiritual. And therefore there is a Cachochymy bred with it, which is heaped up in the first passages.

Moreover, the medicines against this disease, are not all kinds of openers and attenuaters, but all such as abound with volatile Salt, as *Scurvey-grass, Watercresses, Brooklime, Celandine, Fumitory, &c.* All which being tasted or bruised, have a thin, sharp and quickly vanishing vapor, which is from the volatile Salt, which if they loose by reason of there being old, they can do no good. But according to *Hippocrates*, every cure is to be done by its contrary, now the fixed and volatile Salts are opposite. And in regard every fixed body is made volatile, by a volatile body, and every volatile is made fixed by a fixed. It comes to pass, that these plants which have abundance of this volatile Salt, do attenuate, make thin and volatile those scorbutick humors, which have that fixed Salt, which keeps them in; so that they may more easily be discussed by nature.

Medicamenta scorbuto propria.

Nor doth the breeding of the Scurvey cease here, but after those crude humors which abound and stick in the first passages, are mixed with other corrupt humors, and cannot be turned into nourishment, they corrupt more and more every day, till they come to that specifick, proper, peculiar corruption which causeth the Scurvey.

Chap.

Chap. 3. *Of the first external Causes of the Scurvey.*

THey are of two sorts, either a melancholick humor is contracted by ill diet, or abuse of the six things not natural, and the evil disposition of the bowels: or the blood (though good at first) is infected with a scorbutick contagion.

As for diet, Beef, Goats flesh, rusty Bacon, or pickled or smoak dried, or salt things, or fishes taken in Mores or Fens, or in the Sea, that are hard of concoction and of evil juyce, and salted, or pickled. or dried in smoak or frost, or in the Sun. And all meats that are usual in Countries where the Scurvey reigns, have great force to breed the Scurvey. For all these dry exceedingly: also much Salt that cannot be made volatile, breeds this scorbutick matter, and Vinegar as it kils choler, so doth revive melancholy. Also all pulse, or corrupt bread, Sea-biskets, Coleworts, Onions: and all things that breed a thick, dry and melancholick humor, of which *Galen.* *Hippo. 3. de rac. vic. in acu.*

Also stinking water with worms in it, usual at Sea, or broaths made of such wine not wel digested; or that is decayed, or beer made of bad water, with few hops. *3. De lo. aff. c. 7*

This kind of diet breeds muddy, thick, and melancholick and tartarous humors, and hinders that fermentation and spiritualizing, which is required in concoction. Also a moist air, cold, thick and salt, or morish taken in by the breath, or by the pores of the skin, infects the blood and Spirits, and choaks the natural heat, and helps to breed crudities.

Also idleness choaks the natural heat, and hinders excretions, or stoppage of any usual evacuation or passions, especially sadness, breed this melancholy.

Also fevers, especially quartans or old tertians, that begin in the spring, and after in fits are every day, end in the Scurvey. All these cause it sooner when there is a disposition in the spleen or bowels, and weakness or obstruction either by nature or by contraction.

Also it may come only by infection, or from the parents or the Nurse, or by kissing, or by drinking in the same cup; or from the scent of putrefied dead of the Scurvey: in which there are examples. It infecteth as the french pox, and gets to the blood, either by the spittle or breath, or by milk, or through the skin, and puts the like disposition into the bowels made for nourishment, and weakeneth them, so that they breed foul scorbutick blood.

Chap. 4. *Of the signs of the Scurvey, and of the diseases and Symptoms that follow it.*

THere are many Symptoms: for they have not only the Scurvey, that have spots on the [illegible] their gums rotten, and teeth loose, [illegible] and by other signs, those are only [illegible] a man may have it long before the [illegible] and many times they die of it, [illegible] Nor are the same [illegible] the beginning [illegible] but it resembleth

other

other diseases, and deceives many, because it may be joyned to almost all diseases.

There are degrees of this disease, and when it is grown old, it is eatily known, but not at first, because heavinesse and lazinesse are signs of other diseases.

Therefore when you suspect the Scurvey, consider if the patient have, or doth live in a Country where the Scurvey is familiar; or if used a diet to breed it, whether he be splenetick, or of parents that had the Scurvey or Melancholy.

At first there is a lazinesse in the thighs and the whole belly; a sense of heavinesse, weakness of legs, a dul pain, straitness of breast and difficult breathing, not observed, but when the body is much moved. He grows more corpulent then before, and seems fatter, his fresh colour turns blew, his pulse is small, weak and uneven sometimes vermiculent, or great, and hard without inflammation.

As it increaseth, the gums swel, and are loose, stink and putrifie; the hem at the roots of the teeth consumes, and they are loose, so that they may be pull'd out without pain. The legs are indisposed to walk, and as in a Palsie, there are divers spots, as red, purple, blackish, not onely in the legs, but in the back and loyns. They are sometimes ulcerated, and like the Elephantiasis; there are varices or crooked veins under the tongue, and in the neither lip.

The feavers in the Scurvey, are sometimes continual and malignant; sometimes putrid and intermitting, then come every third, fourth, or fifth or seventh day.

Some are very much bound in the belly, others are too loose, and if often turns to deadly Dysentery.

sentery. Sometimes there is vomiting and loathing, a Palsie, a convulsive motion, Epilepsie, running Scabs, toothach, Pleurisie, Joynt-gout, Erisipelas, Dropsie, Atrophy, Gangrene. *Fugalenus* confirms all these by histories.

Thirdly, there are so many diseases and Symptoms in the Scurvey, that ignorant Physitians are at a non-plus, they are poysoned.

No wonder then, that so many evils should come from one cause. For though at first this humor be about the spleen chiefly, and in the spaces between the liver, spleen and stomach; yet when it is grown much, it goes to the liver, and gets into the hollow vein and arteries, and so into the whole blood and so infects it: and by these vessels, it gets into this or that part, or into the whole body, and causeth divers diseases in divers parts. And the peculiar corruption of the humor doth much mischief.

As also the nature of this salt and serous humor, which can be altered divers waies. Sometimes like water, sometimes like a vapor, thin and light. Sometimes it is dry as a stone, and hard, and gets easily into any parts of the body, and is eatie to be moved, and therefore produceth such variety of evils. And it moves the rather, because salt and serous humors are not perfectly mixed with the blood, but are easily separated from it, not moving it much; and therefore they move not, they move to and fro, and if the blood be hot, they flow the more. Moreover, this humor is an enemy to the nerves, and hence it is, that a Convulsion and Palsie, and pains in the members, are produced by it.

The head conduceth much to the distribution of this serous humor, by reason of the innume-

rable

rable veins and arteries, within and without the skull. Now the Serum that is contained with the blood in these vessels, is unfit to nourish those parts. Nor can it easily get back the way it came, nor get out sensibly, by reason of the thickness of the skull; nor be discussed insensibly by the heat of the part. But it is heaped up there, and falls upon the internal membranes, by the nerves.

But to be clearer, I shall speak of every thing in particular. A lazinesse and heavinesse of body comes when the nourishment is distributed into circumference of the body, with this serous humor, and goes to the muscles. And because these serous humors cannot be assimilated, there they stick, and hinder the strength, and cause laziness.

Difficult breathing and straitness of the breast is a Symptom also: and it comes when evil vapors from the lower belly, especially about the spleen, in that cavity of the Omentum mentioned, stop and hinder the free motion of the Diaphragma, as in a Dropsie, they breath short from a swollen belly. Hence it is, that they complain of their breast, but of a compression under the Diaphragma by the stomach. And by this sign, the Scurvey is different from the ordinary difficult breathing, and this is by fits: of which *Severinus Engalenus*.

Moreover, while nature is above the disease, it keeps the humor from the noble parts, and sends it to the gums or legs. So that first there is a redness and itching in the gums, the flesh swels and stinks, then the teeth grow loose, and fall out easily. The thicker part goes to the legs, and makes spots first red like flea-bites, then purple, then *Obser. 6. 7 8. & sequentib.*

then bleeding, and at length black, not only in the legs but (when there are many humors) in the back, arms, neck and face.

The urin discovers the scurvey, sometimes alone sufficiently: and it doth it accordingly to the constitution, as it is troubled yellow, while the putrifying matter is in the first passages. But when the corruption of the humors is increased, if the urin be clear it is discoloured to blackness, and with bubbles like Lixivium or Lye, like that in a Tanners fat over or marrans, made after sweating, often times red and at the side of the urinal. Sometimes the urin varieth without any evident cause, and is at first thick, the next day thin like water, and then yellow like Citrons, gold, or red and thick. Sometimes it is like that of a sound person, and such thin urin useth after a medicine taken against the Scurvey, to turn thick the next day.

The pulse is various, sometimes weak and unequal, sometimes vermiculant like a worm, that it creeps rather then beats; then sometimes it is great and hard without inflammation.

Moreover, there is often a blunt pain in the legs, sometimes lancinating. Sometimes the leggs seem to be knocked with a hammer, but these are not constant, but chiefly at night, because Melancholy moveth at that time.

Sometimes there is a titilating in divers parts, and they think the flesh will be torn, and pain in the belly; hence it is called in Dutch, the Rupture of the Belly; some have it vehemently. And though it be a kind to the Colick, they differ in that it lasts above forty daies sometimes, and is all over the belly, and it is pulled with the navel, so that the navel sometimes seems knit to the loyns, and

and the belly to be hollow. The strait gut is pluckt upwards, and doth not only hinder the excrements, but Clysters and Suppositories from being given.

There is pain sometimes in one, sometimes in the other Hypochondrion, it is dull from the wind there contained, that cannot get out, but gets sometimes to the loyns, sometimes to the whol body. There is pain in the loyns from bad blood, contained in the veins there, chiefly in the vein of the loyns, and they that have it, can scarce go, or move. This may arise by way of a Catarrh from the head, falling by the veins upon the marrow of the back, and it goes from the shoulders, where it begins by degrees to the loyns, and so to the hip-bone, and causeth a Consumption of the back, and the patient consumes to death.

There is also the Nephritick pain in the reins, or something like it, when the scorbutick matter, sticking about the spleen, gets in abundance by the emulgent arteries to the kidnies and ureters. This matter stretching and twitching the vessels, causeth pain in the Pubes, about the os sacrum or holy bone, and then they piss red or black like blood, and it is thought to come from the stone. And we cannot deny but a stone may be bred of this tartarous matter.

There is often headach and toothach, and a false Pleurisie like a true, without inflammation arising from a serous humor or sharp vapor, sent to the external membranes, therefore they cough not nor spit, but what distils from the head.

Also there is Arthritis or joynt-gout, but it runs from one place to another, if you apply cold repelling Topicks: and it is joyned with a small Palsie, which ends and turns with the pain, and

then

then there are other proper signs of the Scurvey. This is from the serous humors, being sharp and very moveable.

Moreover, when the ligaments, tendons and muscles, are touched with this serous blood, the legs are weak and unmoveable, and at length in a Palsie. But before this, commonly there are tumors in some part, that break forth and vanish easily.

There is also a tossing and shaking, and a kind of resolution of all the members: the ligaments by which the lower jaw is fixed to the roots of the ears, are ful of a tough and earthy humor, so that the mouth cannot so well shut. This symptom hath been seen once.

Salmon ibert. 122. orb.

Some have died of an Apoplexy, when the matter of the Scurvey gets into the brain

Some are suddenly blind without loss of other sense, when the thick or serous matter gets to the beginning of the opticks Some are astonished with a gentle, constant feaver, or intermitting from the vapors flying to the head. Others are too watchful from sharp vapors, and are frighted in their sleep There is also sadness doting, loss of memory, palpitation of the heart, swounding from those evil malignant vapors.

Some are stopped in the stomach to the mouth as with a stick, and fear to be choaked when they first begin to swallow.

There is sometimes constant belching. Some melancholick persons that are a little scorbutick will belch an hundred times in an hour.

There is also vomiting, and yexing, and nothing helps them more then milk, which allayeth the sharp humor that twitcheth the stomach. And there is alwaies a constant spitting,

Also

Also a flux and Diarrhæa, from weakness of the liver and veins, that attract not the nourishment as they ought. The excrements are of divers colours, and ash-coloured, Some are hurt by astringents because they cause short wind and suffocation, by stopping the matter in the veins and in the bowels. Sometimes there is a blood-flux like a Dysentery, but not with so much pain. Sometimes the belly too is much bound, when the water that should wet the excrements, goes to the spleen or kidnies. Sometimes they sweat much, even in winter with a few cloaths.

Sometimes the Laundies is joyned, and a stinking breath that none can abide, and they are forced to turn away. Sometimes chilness often, and no heat follows.

And divers feavers, lingring, constant, intermitting, without any similitude to any, but to quartans or quotidians. Therefore consider all sorts of fevers, and judg not by the number of the daies, & the fits but by the propriety of the signs.

Quartans often turn to the Scurvey, and are joyned with it, and differ from other quartans by many signs. Sometimes these feavers are like malignant and pestilent, and the black or purple spots deceive many; for melancholy putrifying, brings many diseases, according to the mixture of humors.

There are also hard tumors like those of the French pox. These are from a tartarous melancholy, sent into the superficies of the body, that fixeth in the legs, and grows hard When the thin part of the humor is consumed by heat of a feaver, and the thick remains.

Sometimes, not only the leggs, but belly swels in continuance of time, and there is a Dropsie, when

when the matter is much, and cannot be contained, the part goes to the legs, and the rest flaies among the bowels, and by strength of nature is sent to the paunch, and swells it. In such there is greater difficulty of breath, and trouble, then in other Dropsies, but it is rather cured then the other. There are dry ulcers in the legs without matter, that are malignant, and hard to be [illegible] cause they are from malignant melan- [illegible] sometimes there are ulcers in the face that [illegible] black ulcer hath been seen about the temples stinking and malignant, called a *Carcinoma*. And the yard hath been corroded by the passage of the malignant humor. Sometimes there hath been a gangrene and mortification in one or more parts, often about the foot, with black or purple spots, and then an ulcer with a crust or scab that gangrenes and mattereth not, and one or more of the toes begin to die, and purple spots are above the joynt of the foot in the leg

Baldwin. Rossæus de scor. c. 7.

Some have legs that fal away for want of nourishment very small. Others consume all over like a skeleton, for want of good nourishment, and the natural heat and nourishing faculty of the parts, are so weak, that they cannot nourish them.

CHAP V.

The Prognosticks.

After you know the disease by these signs and Symptomes, be not forward to prognostick, but consider all circumstances. For the matter of the Scurvey is an enemy to the heart, as well as to the nerves, so that ignorant Physitians

Physitians have wondered how men could live with such a faint and little pulse

At first it is easie to be cured, when the disease is only in the humors, and hath not hurt the bowels, and often times only air altered, and good diet do it. But if it be fixed, it is seldom or never cured perfectly. Men have it nine or ten years, women twenty, for the humor is stuborn, and as it hath been long a gathering, so it must be long in curing, for it will resist the best medicines. If the patient be negligent, either in diet or Physick, or forbear but a little, the disease seems to be gone, but it returns more fierce with new or greater Symptoms, it often ends in a long Diarrhœa, a Cachexy, Dropsie, or a Consumption, as the humor falls in this or that part. The blacker the spots, the more danger.

An hereditary Scurvey is seldom cured, alwaies some reliques remain, and it returns again, because the natural weakness of the seed is the cause Women are worse to be cured then men, especially if their courses stop before their time. The swelling and corrosion of the gums, except presently cured, eats on all the flesh, and the teeth fall out. A scurvey joyned with the Scurvey, is not cured, except you cure the Scurvey. In great spleens, if blood flow from the right nostril, it is evil. If the black spots vanish, it signifies that the natural heat is quenched.

Chap. 6. *Of the Cure of the Scurvey in general.*

THe Indications are first from the nature of the humor, it is melancholick, crude, serous,

rous, salt, and corrupted after a peculiar manner. The crudity must be mended, with medicines that work by an occult and manifest quality, then you must drive the humor from the first passages. Then take away the obstructions of the spleen, and mend its evil disposition. Therefore use openers, alterers, evacuations, and strengthners.

If the Hæmorhoids flow not, and there is no hope they will, after a Clyster open a vein in the arm with a large orifice, except strength be wanting. Some open in the left, because the spleen is on the left side. It is thought good to open the Salvatella, for which there is no manifest reason, then the ham or ankle-vein, at divers times.

If the disease be fixed, and there be more Cacochymy then lethargy and the spots appear, take heed of bleeding, least you loose the best blood, but prepare the Cacochymy.

Therefore first dissolve the earthy and drossie humor, and cut it, and make it thin, and cleanse it, so that when obstructions are opened, the thick matter may be voided by stool, and the thin by urin. For strong bodies, use strong medicines, but still begin with the most mild, and proceed to stronger by degrees, always mixing things that amend the Cacochymy of the Scurvey, by a peculiar vertue. As *roots of Scorzonera, Avens, Elecampane, Succory, Polypody, Gentian, Rhapontick, round Birthwort, Squills, Tamarisk and Caper barks, Germander, Groundpine, Dodder, Agrimony, Fumitory, Hyssop, Hops, Ceterach, Hartstongue, Betony, Organ, Broom and Succory flowers, bitter Almonds, Bay and Juniper berries.*

Make a Potion thus. Take *Succory, Fennel and Polypody roots, each an ounce; Tamarisk and*

Caper

Capar barks, each half an ounce; fresh Scurveygrass, Brooklime, Fumitory, each a handful; Ceterach, Germander, Hyssop, Maidenhair, Harts-tongue, each half a handful; Raisons an ounce, boyl, take twenty ounces of it strained, add Cinnamon two scruples, and with Sugar make a Potion for five or six doses.

Or make it a Syrup, and give *an ounce and half with water of Harts tongue, Fumitory, Scurveygrass, Watercresses, Brooklime.* Or give *spirit of Salt, cream of Tartar, Tartar vitriolated in broath, or other proper liquor.*

After the humor is prepared, and the passages open, use Purges. Some avoid Confectio Hamech; but if you infuse it or boyl it, it is milder. As, Take *the Augustan decoction of Senna four ounces, Confectio Hamech a dram and half, Diaphœnicon half a dram, boyl them, and to the straining, ad Manna half an ounce, bark of Capars and of an Ash, each two scruples; Wormwood, Centaury, Germander, Ceterach, each half a handful; Thyme and Epithimum, each half a pugil; Anise and Fennel seeds, each half an ounce; black Hellebore prepared, Senna, each three drams; Rhubarb two drams, Cinnamon half a dram, conserve of Fumitory, Scurvey-grass, Borax, each an ounce and half; boyl them in three pints of Whey, in Balneo for two hours: give two ounces in the morning, and two hours before supper.*

Or, Take *Succory, Parsley, Polypody roots, each half an ounce; Tamarisk and Capar barks, each two drams; black Hellebore prepared a dram and half, Scurvey-grass, Watercresses, Brooklime, each a handful; Ceterach, Agrimony, each a handful; Anise, Fennel, Agnus castus seed, each a dram; Raisons an ounce, boyl them in Whey, strain*

and add Senna an ounce, Rhubarb a dram, Borage, Bugloss, Broom flowers, each a pugil; Cinnamon, Cloves, each half a dram; take eight ounces of the strayning, add syrup of Senna an ounce, of Fumitory compounded six drams, cream of Tartar a dram.

Pills.

Take *Pills of Tartar by* Quercetan *a scruple, or Pill aggregative two drams, Tartar a dram, extract of black Hellebore six grains, make twenty Pills: give half a dram before supper.*

Powders.

Take *Senna half a dram, Epithimum and cream of Tartar, each two drams; Cinnamon, Cloves, Galangal, Aniseeds, each a dram; Diagredium half a scruple: give a dram infused in half an ounce of Whey.*

This Pouder is commended for curing the Scurvey perfectly. Take *Aloes, Saffron, each two drams; Myrrh a dram, Electuary of the juyce of Roses in tablets half an ounce, make a pouder, give a dram in the morning, and as much two hours afore supper in Goats milk, in which Brooklime is boyled.* If Aloes be too bitter, take the species of the Electuary of juyce of Roses, and make Pills.

Purging Currans.

Take *Senna an ounce, Mechoacan, Polypody, each six drams; Cordial flowers a pugil, Cinnamon half a dram, Fennel seed a scruple, Liquorish half a scruple, boyl them in Water or Wine, and steep them a night, strain, and to a pint, add Sugar two ounces, Manna three ounces; boyl them to a Julep, add at the end juyce of Scurvey-grass two ounces, boyl them again, and add cream of Tartar two drams, Cur-*

rans

rans washt ten ounces, let them infuse, give from half an ounce to an ounce and half. If you please, you may add *a grain or two of the extract of Scammony*, when you give it.

A Bolus.

Take *Diacatholicon half an ounce, Confectio hamech half a dram, Senna and cream of Tartar, each half a dram; or a dram with Sugar.*

To Cure all diseases Read my *Sennertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus*, and *Riolanus*, of the last Edition.

Then use Medicines against the Scurvey, as Scurvey-grass, Brooklime, Watercresses, they have much volatile Salt; and long experience teacheth, that whether they are taken raw, or in a Conserve, or the Juyce, or distilled Water, they do good. Brooklime hath less volatile Salt then Scurvey-grass, therefore of them two, you may make a good Medicine, though there be a Feaver.

For the same, you may use Horse-radish, Celandine, Moneywort, Mustard seed, and some the *Norway* Fruit, called *Chamærubus* or Groundbramble, is excellent.

Decoctions and Potions.

Take *Watercresses three handfuls, lesser Sorrel roots and all two handfuls, steep them a night in eight pints of Whey, boyl them till two pints be consumed, strain and give six ounces in the morning, and two hours afore supper*, continue it till he mends. Or use *Scurvey-grass and Brooklime boyled in Milk, if no Feaver, or in Whey, if there be a Feaver: Engalenus* cured many with this alone. But that the volatile Salt may not flie, boyl them but a little, or in a close vessel; but the juyce is better then the decoction, and you may add a little Sugar and Cinnamon. Thus,

Take *juyce of Watercresses, Brooklime, and La-*

dy smocks, Scurvey grass, each two ounces; Whey three ounces. If there be heat, add *the juyce of Sorrel.* Or, Take *Brooklime, Watercresses, Scurvey-grass, each a handful; infuse them in Rhenish wine, strain and infuse in it these in a bag, Watercress seeds half a dram, Cinnamon Cloves, Mace, each a dram; give a draught every morning.*

Or, Take *Horse radish roots an ounce, Watercresses, Brooklime, Scurvey-grass, each a handful; Fumitory half a handful, stamp them in a stone mortar, and Goats whey a pint and half, infuse them hot twelve hours, strain and add Saffron a dram, Cinnamon a scruple and half, with half a dram of Cinamon water.* Let him take some of these morning and evening, and if he can, let him sweat after his mornings draught.

Syrups.

The Syrup called *Scelerybicus* of *Foreſtus* is thus made. Take *juyce of Watercresses and Brooklime, each three pints; Sugar two pound, boyl them to a Syrup.* Or make the Scurvey-grass Syrup of *Gaspar Packish* used in *Uratislave.*

Distilled Waters.

Pharmacop. reſt. c. 7. They that like not Syrups, may take simple or compound Waters, as the Scorbutick-water of *Quercetan.* Or ours thus made: Take *Tamarisk, Ash and Capar barks, Polypody, the five Openers, each an ounce; Gentian six drams, Elicampane, Cookow-pints, Citron peels, each half an ounce; Germander, Groundpine, Carduus, each a handful; crotches of Wormwood, Capars, each an ounce; Rockets seed half an ounce, stamp them, ad Horse-radish roots a pint and half, Watercresses, Brooklime, Fumitory, Scurvey grass, each three pound; with Rhenish wine, Carduus and Dodder water, distil them.*

Spirits.

Spirits.

The Spirit or Liquor from the green Plant often distilled, as strong as from Wine is excellent, try it, or you will not believe the Spirit to be strong.

Liquid Extracts or Essences.

We shewed the tincture or essence of Wormwood, Scurvey-grass, Fumitory, Germander elsewhere.

Liquors are like these, the juyce is digested in Balneo, till the sediment be at the bottom thick, and the juyce grow clear and red; pour it off gently, add to a pint three ounces of Sugar to make it keep, and boyl it to a Syrup. *Lib. 5. in. stit. p. 3. s. 3. c. 9.*

Or use this Mixture. Take *Spirit of Tartar compounded two ounces, of Juniper berries two drams, of Burnet, Calamus, each half a dram; of Saffron half a scruple, or instead thereof, give the juyce or syrup of Scurvey-grass, Watercresses, each two drams; syrup of Cinnamon half an ounce, of Fumitory, Sorrel, Citrons, each an ounce; digest, and strain them, give from a dram to three drams.*

Electuaries are thus made. Take *Conserve of Scurvey-grass two drams, Germander, Sorrel, Succory, Elicampane candied, each half an ounce; with syrup of juyce of Citrons, or Endive, or Bizantine, make an Electuary.*

Pouders, in cold bodies. This, Take *Cubebs, Mace, grains of Paradise, each half a scruple; Rocket seed four scruples, Saffron two scruples, give a scruple with four ounces of Milk.*

Or make Troches of Pouders, with Diarrhodon, Diatrionsantalon, Confectio de Hyacyntho, Troches of Capars, Confectio Alkermes.

Repeat the Purges mentioned, if the disease

abate not, then use things against the Scurvey a-gain, things that evacuate and discuss sensibly o insensibly by urin or sweat: and observe which way nature tends.

Spaw-waters from iron are good, for steel is excellent in the spleen diseases.

If the matter go forth by urin, use Diureticks, for *Hippocrates* adviseth them for splenetick people, and *Galen* commands Diureticks in all quartans, make them of Scorbuticks. Or use these, the four great cold seeds, Rocket seed, Valerian root, Capar, Tamarisk bark, Locusts, Juniper-berries.

1 Lib. de in-ter affect. Gal. 1. ad Glau. c. 2.

To take away the reliques sensibly, use a bath or stove of Mallows, Brank ursine, Brooklime, Watercresses, Mugwort, Melilot, Chamomil flowers, Bettony, Wormwood, Juniper-berries, Bay-berries, Lineseed. Give him a Sweat first before he goes in. Take *Gentian roots a dram, Asarum half a scruple, Cinnamon two scruples, Pepper and Ginger, each half a dram; Saffron three grains: give one half before, and the other after bathing, with four ounces of this.* Take *Sorrel, Brooklime, Fumitory, Watercresses, each half a handful; stamp them, and add a pint of white Wine, strain out the juyce.* This disease is better cured by sweating, then purging or bleeding.

Salomon Albertus.

Then strengthen the parts: first the stomach with conserve of Roses vitriolated, Myrobalans Chebs, candied Nutmegs, Syrup of Cinnamon, Juniper-berries, Aromaticum rosatum, Diambra. Outwardly use Oyl of Mints, Mace, Cloves and Stomach-bags.

For the Liver, use Agrimony, Succory, Germander, Liverwort, Spikenard, Wormwood, Diapeires, *Hollerius* Electuary of Wine, and Raisons,

Liver-

Liver-waters made of a Calves liver distilled; if there be heat, Diarrhodon and Trionsantalon. Use Fomentations, Liniments, Plaisters outwardly.

To strengthen the Spleen, Ceterach, Harts-tongue, Groundpine, Capar and Tamarisk barks, Syrup of Apples, Fumitory, Harts-tongue, Saffron, and the Tincture of Iron, *Quercetans* extract for the spleen, and the Spleen-water, or of Schœnanth, Troches of Capars, Diacapparum of *Rondeletius*: and use outward things.

For the Heart, Confection Alkermes, Conserve of Borage, Buglos flowers, Clovegilli-flower, Balm, Citron peels and flowers candied, Nutmeg, Syrup of Citrons, Gilli-flowers, Cinnamon, with Scurvey-grass in all. Use outwardly Oyl of Citrons, Orange peels, Benzoin, Mace, Cloves, Cinnamon, Oyntments, Liniments and Baggs.

For the Lungs, Hyssop, Maidenhair, Elicampane, Conserve of Roses, *Pauls* Bettony Species Diaireos, Syrup of Juniper, Waters and pectoral Extracts.

Chap. 7. *Of the special Cure of some Scurvey or scorbutick Diseases.*

Of Straitness of the Breast.

IF this be not removed after the remedies mentioned, it is to be cured with Scorbuticks and Pectorals, and because feavers and obstructions are with it. Use with Scurveygrass things to cool, and openers, as Maidenhair, Dodder, Ceterach,

Carduus, Fumitory, Bettony, Confection Alkermes, and the like.

Of Corruption of the Gums.

The gums looſneſs, rottenneſs and ſtink, are cured by clenſers that hinder putrefaction, partly aſtringents and dryers, as Columbines, Roſemary, Hyſop, Snakeweed, Pomegranate flowers, Nutmeg, red Roſes, Horſtail, Oaken leaves, Pomegranate peels, Sloes, Sumach, Birthwort, Mirrh, Allum, Vitriol, Honey of Roſes, Diamoron, Honey, Oxymel of Squills, Spirit of Vitriol, with Scurveygraſs, Watercreſs and Penywort water. A Mouth-water. Take *Sloes an ounce, Scurveygraſs and Watercreſſes, each a handful; red Roſes half a handful, Pomegranate flowers two drams, boyl them in ſteeled Water, add Allum a dram, Honey of Roſes and Diamoron, each an ounce.*

Or uſe Scurvey-graſs water, or Watercreſs, or Brooklime, or Tobacco water, or chew and rub with Sage, Scurvey-graſs, or Watercreſſes.

Make Liniments of Honey of Roſes an ounce, Oxymel of Squills half an ounce, Allum burnt half a ſcruple, mix them, and rub the gums twice a day.

Or this, Take *Mallows, Sage, Columbines, each half a dram; burnt Allum two drams, with Honey make a Liniment.* Or, Take *Honey two ounces, Wine-vinegar an ounce, flour of Braſs a ſcruple, Allum a dram, boyl them til they are red, ad pouder of Sage, Nutmegs, Harts-horn, each half a ſcruple, make a Linimene.*

Pouders or Dentifrices. Take *burnt Salt, Allum, Oyſter ſhels, Vine aſhes, red Roſes, Snakweed roots, Columbine leaves, Sage, make a Pouder.* Swallow not any down, but ſpit it preſently out.

Some cut out the rottenneſs. Or uſe Allum

or

or Oyl of Vitriol. Or this which is excellent. Take *Sublimate two drams, burnt Allum a dram, boyl them in Plantane water, dip a sponge in, and wash the gums.*

Against the ulcers in the Jaws. Take *water of Self-heal, Plantane, Scurvey-grass, each three ounces; of Tobacco two ounces, spirit of Vitriol a dram, Honey of Roses an ounce.* This wil fix loose teeth.

The spots vanish of themselves. Or use Baths and Fomentations of discussers, and emollients, and dissolvers proper against the Scurvey: or this Liniment. Take *May butter two ounces and half, Juniper berries two drams, Wine two ounces, boyl til the Wine be gone, and strain,* rub the leggs with a hot cloth often, to open the pores.

Mitigate pains with resolving Fomentations against the Scurvey, or with a Cataplasm of Chamomil flowers, Watercresses, Juniper-berries boyled in Milk.

Before the spots come forth, abstain from fat things, least the pain increase. Against pain in the soles of the feet or fingers ends, Take *Elder-flowers two handfuls, boyl them in Wine, add Soap two drams, wet a clout, and apply it.*

If the Belly ach be not gone by taking away the cause; use Clysters that moisten and warm, of Dill, Chamomil, Althæa, Fœnugreek, with Oyl of sweet Almonds, Lineseed, Dill, Chamomil, Honey of Roses. And anoint with the same outwardly, or apply the belly of a Sheep dipt in the same Oyls.

An Arthritis or Joynt-gout from the Scurvey is cured at first, by Wormwood Wine drunk half a year. If there be obstructions, or a feaver, or thirst, open with Dodder, Harts-tongue, Ceterach, Bettony, Hyssop, Horse-radish, Elicampane, Water-

Watercresses, Scurvey-grass; and outwardly Horse-radish stampt.

Astonishment, trembling, Palsie and Convulsion, tossing, are cured all alike. If they be new, they come from the Serum in the muscles onely. If the tendons be not hard, they are cured in four or five daies, especially the Palsie in the leggs. If the tendons be grown hard, use Topicks; in the beginning, *Take four handfuls of Bettony, Juniper-berries an ounce and half, boyl them in eight pints of Water to a Pint, strain and ad Sugar two pound, boyl them to a syrup, add Ginger two ounces, Mace, Calamus, Cubebs, Senna, each half an ounce; make an Electuary, give a spoonful before and after meat.* Outwardly foment with the Decoction of Sage, Bettony, Mugwort, wild Time, Rosemary, flowers of Chamomil, Elder, Melilot, Juniper-berries. Let the stiff legs be fomented with the vapors of these, till they sweat every day, and let the tendons and the ligaments be chafed with the decoction. If there be a tumor, use emollients first.

If the knees or other members be stiff, use the Decoction of Lillies, Althæa, Mallows, Violets, Brank ursine, Linseed, Fœnugreek, Chamomil, Figs, with Brooklime and Watercresses.

After Fomentations, use Oyls and Unguents, and Emollients of Hogs and Mans grease &c. As Take *Briony, wild Cowcumber, Anise, each an ounce; Earth worms prepared two drams, boyl them in Oyl and water till they are soft, press out the juyce, ad oyl of Lillies half an ounce, Linseed, Chamomil flowers, each an ounce; Turpentine two drams, Oyntment of Bdellium three drams, juyce of Scurvey-grass an ounce, melt them with wax to an Oyntment.* Or use Oyl of Foxes tue, Indian Nuts, Sagapen, Opoponax, Bdellium, Castor, with Scurvey-grass and Water-

Watercresses alwaies. You may use these against hardness and roughness of the cheeks and jaws.

In Carus, and much sleep, with a lingring fever, use things against putrefaction and feavers: the Cresses that grow in clear Water, are best against them.

When there is fainting and trouble of mind, let them not rise from the bed, but use medicines against the fits, and against the Scurvey.

In vomiting, give Milk; if you use binders, the disease will be worst. In constant spitting, provoke not the matter with sharp and hot Medicines.

If the breath stink, use Conserve of Sage, Rue, Rosemary, Cloves, Cinnamon, Gallia moschata, Citron peels, Wood-aloes, in Troches. Or wash the mouth with Sage, Rosemary, Mint water, with Vinegar of Squills.

In a loosness, take heed of astringents, they bring Suffocation, Dropsie, or Cachexy. But use Wormwood and sweating, adding Scurvey-grass. If cold caused it, take away the matter with a dry diet, and provoke urin, and strengthen the parts that receive it: as Wormwood wine mixed with Succory water. Outwardly to the belly, use Oyl of Roses, Mastich, Wormwood, or the Plaister of the Crust of Bread.

If this flux comes from heat that pours out the Serum, in the beginning of feavers, though it is symptomatical, it must not presently be stopt, because it abates the matter of the disease, but give Clensers of Choler, as Syrup of Succory, with Rhubarb.

In a scorbutick Feaver, after generals, use moderately hot Scorburicks, as Dodder, Maidenhair, Ceterach, Polypody; and to cut, Hysop, Bettony;

tony; to allay, use Succory, Endive, Sorrel.

Against hard tumors, make a Pultis of Comfrey roots, Althæa, Briony, Wormwood, Celandine, Bean flower, Lupines with white Bread and Milk. Against Oedema in the leggs, use Elder, Rosemary, wild Time, Brookline, Watercresses, Juniper-berries.

In an Erysipelas, help nature to expel the humor with Elder flower water, or Carduus, or Scabious water, and sealed Earth, to provoke sweat. Take heed of fat repellers.

In a Dropsie from the Scurvey, use cutters and attenuaters with Scorbuticks. There have been many cured without purging. If blood be thick, or if any usual evacuation by bleeding be stopt, open a vein. The Hæmorrhoids opened, have cured many by voiding of black blood: or open the ankle-vein.

In swellings like the plague, this is an experienced Medicine. Take *pouder of Wormwood and new laid Egs shells and all*, apply them cold.

In ulcers of the legs, see if any distemper nourish them, or flux of humors; and if so give a Purge, and correct the distemper. *Hippocrates* adviseth often bleeding against old ulcers, in and about the ulcers, for they are made drier and gentler thereby. Alwaies mix Scorbuticks, as juyce of Scurvey-grass, Wormwood, Smallage, with Honey boyled, and Birthwort, and Allum. In ulcers less malignant, use Diapompholygos, Oyntment of Tobacco, Sugar of Lead; or wash with the Decoction of Housleek, and Watercresses, and Scurvey-grass.

When the members grow rough and consume, use the resumptive Oyntment. When there is a Consumption, cure it as the Scurvey with good diet.

Chap.

CHAP. VIII.

Diet.

CONsider the six things not natural. Let the air be moderately hot and dry, thin, pure, open, with no stinking vapors, make it good by art, if it be bad, by burning of odors.

Take heed of diet that breeds thick or tartarous humors. Let it be of good juyce, easie concoction, and attenuaters, cutting, opening and clensing. As Ptisans, Hen-broath, Raisons, Milk of Goats, which loosneth the belly. Mix Antiscorbuticks to correct the evil humors. Also eat Apples, whole Oranges, which have cured many. Season meat with Hyssop, Rosemary, Thyme, Savory, Saffron, Cinnamon, Mace. Use no Vinegar alone, because it hinders concoction, and fixeth the humors, and increaseth melancholy, instead of Salt, use a pouder of Salt, Juniper berries, and Asarum roots: or stir up the appetite with juyce of Sorrel or Oranges. *Baldui. Rossetus epist. 2.*

Drink Rhenish Wine, or clear Beer, or Wormwood-wine, with Germander, Harts-tongue. Or this Wine: Take *Sarsa, Cinnamon, Sassaphras, each two ounces; Wood Rhodium, Cloves, Scorzonera, each an ounce; Harts-tongue, Germander, Scurvey-grass, Wormwood, each two handfuls; Cinnamon two drams, Raisons a pound.* Or make this Water to mix with Wine. Take *Scurvey-grass six handfuls, Watercresses, Harts-tongue, each two handfuls; Sarsa three ounces, Raisons half a pound, juyce of Brooklime six pints, of Sorrel three pints, distil them in Balneo.*

Use exercise before meat, and let it be moderate,

rate, for motion stirs up the heat. Let sleeping and waking be moderate; and sleep not in the day time. Stop no usual evacuations. Use Baths of sweet water to take off the reliques in the skin. Avoid sadness as destructive.

Chap. 9. *Of Preservation against the Scurvey.*

THe diet mentioned observed exactly, is good to prevent the Scurvey, But if you have the Scurvey, you must have a diet contrary to the Scurvey; but they that fear it, are to keep a good temper, and use things opposing the preternatural cause.

To evacuate any evil juyce that is lodged, at the Fall of the Leaf, use this or the like Medicine, Take *Polypody an ounce, Buglos and Succory, each half an ounce; Ceterach, Fumitory, Dodder, Maidenhair, Germander, each a handful; four great cold Seeds, each a scruple; Borage, Buglos, Broom flowers, each half a handful; Senna two ounces and half, Rhubarb a dram, Anise and Fennel seed two ounces, Raisons stoned an ounce, boyl and strain, ad syrup of Roses two drams, Bizantine, syrup of Apples, and of Epithymum, each an ounce: give four ounces at a time.*

He that will be free from the Scurvey, let him take heed of the infectious seeds of it. Be not acquainted with such as have it. Drink not with them. Smell not their breath, nor kiss them; for there are many histories of the Scurvey taken by these means.

THE

THE SEVENTH PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of the diseases and symptoms of the Liver.

Chap. 1. *Of the Distemper of the Liver in general.*

THERE may be either a simple or a compound distemper in the Liver, with, or without matter, but it is usually with matter; for if it be hot, it will quickly get hot and choleruck humors. If cold, crude, thin and flegmatick humors. If moist, thin and watterish humors.

Besides

The Causes Besides the six not natural things, the Causes are all humors that are different from natural mediocrity. And these are either bred in the liver, by reason of the bad chyle, or sent from other parts, or from the whole body.

The distemper of the Liver is known from the hurt of the action, of which hereafter in particular.

The Prognostick. This disease is worse then the distemper of the stomach, because the part is more noble, and remedies cannot so well get to it, by reason of its farther distance.

The Cure. A distemper is cured by its contraries, hot by cold, dry by moist, but many things which are peculiarly proper. As Livers of beasts, Hens, Geese, Wolves: and Raisons or Medicines hereafter.

Of a hot Distemper.

This is from the heat of the parts adjacent, an Erysipelas and inflammation, from hot meats and Medicines, Wine and Spices.

The Signs. 1. The causes aforegoing. 2. The effects, as want of appetite, vomiting, cholerick stools, yellow urin, swift and often pulse, biting heat all over, especially in the palms of the hands, and soles of the feet; yellow face, rough tongue. Cold does good, and heat hurt: if it increase much, the Liver corrupts and melts, and there is a bloody flux.

Gal. 6. de lo. aff. c. 7. 8.

The Prognostick. It is hard to be cured, especially when the stomach is cold, because that will be still hurt by cold things.

The Cure. If the parts adjacent are too hot, amend them. If the humors be too hot, let blood, if need be. Then use Coolers: As, Take *Succory roots half*

an

an ounce, Endive, Succory, each a handful; Melon and Endive seeds, each a dram; Raisons an ounce, boyl them in Barley water, to a pint strained, add syrup of Endive two ounces, Sorrel an ounce and half: give it at three or four draughts.

Or, Take *Water a pint and half, Sugar candy two drams, boyl and strain, ad red Sanders two scruples, red Roses a scruple, spirit of Vitriol half a dram, infuse them six hours; ad syrup of Currans, and juyce of Citrons, each six drams; with spirit of Vitriol make a Julep for four or six draughts.*

Epithems. As, Take *juyce or water of Endive, Lettice, Succory, each three ounces; Roses an ounce and half, Diarrion santalon, yellow Sanders, each half a dram; Troches of Spodium a dram, Spike half a dram, Vinegar of Roses half an ounce.* Or use *Galens* cooling Oyntment, or the Rose-oyntment of *Mesue.*

Let all hot meats be avoided, use Ptisans with the cold Seeds. Spaw-waters are excellent to cool the Liver. *The Diet.*

Of the cold Distemper of the Liver

This comes from cold in the parts adjacent, cold water, and Medicines, or too much loss of blood.

Cold causes preceeded; the pulse is little, slow and seldome, the urin white and thick, the whole body is cold and white, the blood is crude; cold things hurt, and hot do good. *The Signs.*

A cold distemper is worse then a hot, because it is against the nature of the part, and when the sanguification is hurt, it threatens a Cachexy, and brings a Dropsie, if it be not prevented. *The Prognostick.*

It is mended by hot things. If the terms be stopt, and there is much blood, first open the saphena: or if the Hæmorrhoids be stopt, provoke *The Cure.*

them. As for Medicines, Take *Fennel and Parsley roots, each half an ounce; Agrimony, Germander, Maidenhair, each a handful; Hops and Fumitory, each half a handful; Anise, Fennel seed, each a scruple; boyl them to ten ounces strained, add syrup of the two Roots two ounces, syrup of Agrimony Oxymel, each half an ounce; give it at thrice.* Or, Take *Fennel, Parsley, Agrimony water each three drams; syrup of the two, or of the five Roots Lizantine, each half an ounce; with Cinnamon or Aromaticum rosatum.*

Or Electuaries of Conserve of Rosemary, Bettony, Citron peels, Wolves livers prepared, Diamargariton calid; with syrup of Bettony or Agrimony.

Or, Take *Raisons stoned an ounce, Chebs Myrobalans candied two drams, Aromaticum rosatum a dram, Schænanth, powder of Wolves liver, each half a dram; with Honey of Roses make an Electuary.* Anoint outwardly with Oyl of Wormwood, Spike. Or use this Epithem. Take *Agrimony a handful, Cypress roots a dram, Aniseeds, Fennel seed and Schænanth, each half a dram, boyl them in water, add two ounces of Wine, and half an ounce of Vinegar.*

The Diet. Let the air and diet be hot.

Of the moist Distemper of the Liver.

The chief causes, are moist diet, and too much bathing.

The signs are no thirst, soft pulse, waterish blood, corn-coloured urin, many moist excrements: Dry things do good, and moist hurt.

The Prognostick. Unless there be great moisture and corruption of the Liver, there is no danger in it.

The Cure. If there be more cold then moisture, give Wormwood,

wood, Agrimony, Mastich: If more heat then moisture, Sanders, Diarrhodon, and use the same outwardly.

Of a dry Distemper of the Liver.

All dryers cause this distemper, the signs are the causes that went afore, & a dry hard habit of body; constant thirst, little blood, belly bound, with hard and dry stools. Moisteners do good, and the contrary hurt.

It easily turns to a Marasmus or Consumption, and is dangerous, because it is against the nature of the Liver. If it be hot also, it is hardly cured. *The Prognostick.*

Use Syrup of Conserve of Borage, Bugloss, Roses, Violets, sweet Almonds, Raisons, Melon seeds and emulsions, Broaths, Gravy, yolks of Egs. Outwardly Oyl of sweet Almonds, Violets, Oyntment of Althæa. *The Cure.*

The causes of compound distempers, are easily known from what hath been said of the simple.

Of the Distemper of the Liver with matter.

It is seldom without matter: if hot, it hath hot matter, if cold, cold; and it is either in the substance of the liver, or in the vessels, where it makes an obstruction: It is gathered in the Liver, by the weakness of the expulsive faculty, or straitness of the vessels, or is sent from other parts.

The signs of a hot humor in the Liver, are causes that are hot, vomiting of choler, or purging, first thin and pale, then thick, yellow; and stinking, bitter mouth, loathing, great thirst, and a feaver often: Cold things do good, and hot hurt: The contraries are signs of a cold Liver. *The Signs.*

A distemper with matter, from a humor that weakens *The Prognostick.*

weakens the Liver, is dangerous, by reason of the nobleness of the part, but it is sooner cured then a bare distemper.

The Cure. First, consider whether the humor be in the Liver bred or flow from some other part; for if it come from another part, it must be revelled, repelled, and the Liver strengthened; the matter must be purged with a gentle Medicine, and altered, if need be. Then observe whether the hollow or bunchy part of the Liver be offended, for the hollow part must be purged, the bunchy part must be clensed by urin. But you must first purge, and then if blood come from the whole body, open a vein in the arm; to revel from the Liver, rub the arms and thighs, and cup and scarifie the shoulders. Strengthen the Liver with Oyntments, of Oyl of Roses, Mastich, Mirtles, Wormwood, Cerot of Sanders. When the matter is lodged in the Liver, purge it away, if they be sharp, hot and cholerick. After bleeding evacuate with Syrup of Roses, Tamarinds, Manna, Rhubarb. If the humors be cold, with Honey of Roses Agarick, Diaphœnicon.

In a hot Cause, provoke urin with the greater cold Seeds, Grass roots, Asparagus, Fennel, Parsley roots, Butchers-broom, of which hereafter.

Chap. 2. *Of the Obstruction and preternatural opening of the Vessels of the Liver.*

THe branches of the gate-vein being dispersed through the substance of the Liver, bring the chyle to it, to be made blood, and that

is

is sent into the whole body, by the hollow vein. Now these veins are either too close or too open, the closeness or obstruction is usual, it is called a straitness in the vessels of the Liver, that hinders the distribution of the nourishment, from a matter in the cavity of them, which if not soon removed, turns to a Scirrhus: This matter is over the substance of the Liver, so that it is not only a fault in the veins, but of the whole Liver, as it is an organical part, the chief for bleeding and dispersing of blood, for it hath pores, which if stopt, the natural heat of the Liver cannot be cooled, nor the sooty vapors be evacuated.

That which stops the Liver, is either a humor or wind, or both; the humor offends in quantity or quality, as when it is thick, slimy. Sometimes it is wholly besides nature, as corrupt blood and a filthy thick humor, cold or hot; for choler staying in the Liver, grows thick, and causeth dangerous obstructions, and turns to a stone sometimes. Again this matter is either bred in the Liver, or comes from another part, and it either receives it, by reason of its weakness, or attracts it by its heat, or keeps it by the straitness of the vessels. *The Causes*

The outward Causes, are errors in diet, as thick, gross diet that binds, or much exercise after meat, or bathing, for so the crude chyle is snatcht into the small veins of the Liver.

It is new, or old, or with distemper which nourisheth the humor that stoppeth; also it is either in the bunchy or hollow part of the Liver. *The Differences.*

There is heaviness about the Liver, especially when they breath much, or exercise presently after meat; they breath short when they go up stairs, the colour of the whole body and face is *The Signs:*

Gal. 2. de loc. aff. c. 8. & 7. aphor. 52.

changed, they are easily feaverish, the urine is thin. And when the obstruction is in the hollow of the Liver, you can feel nothing amiss without, but when it is in the bunchy part of the Liver, the belly is hard there, the Diaphragma is hurt, there is a bloody flux many times, because the chyle is not well changed into blood. The signs of the causes are the straitness of the veins, a thick, hot, cholerick humor, with heavinesse in the right side, and pricking, with sense of weight only if the humor be cold.

The Prognostick.

If it be small, it is quickly cured, otherwise there is danger in time of a Scirrhus, Dropsie, Jaundies, or a Feaver, that in the hollow part of the Liver is most easie to be cured: it is worse when it is from an humor then from wind.

The Indications and Cure.

Stoppages must have openers, and they must here be proper for the Liver, and strengtheners. If there be Plethora, open the right arm in the Basilica, if terms be stopt, the Saphena: Give Lenitives, after purging, give Openers of obstructions, as in a cold Cause.

Take *the five opening Roots steept in Wine an ounce, Asarum roots two drams, Maidenhair, Sticory, Agrimony, each a handful; Germander, tops of Hops, each half a handful; Anise, Fennel, Ameos seeds, each two drams; Columbines a dram, red Pease half an ounce, Schænanth three drams, Raisons six drams, Liquorish three drams, Juniper-berries twelve: boyl them; to a pint strained, ad syrup of five Roots bizantine, Oxymel, each an ounce; Diatrionsantalon, Diatrion pipereon, each a dram; give it at thrice.* If you will purge, add *half an ounce of Mechoacan, two drams of Rhubarb, ten grains of Spike, and of Cinnamon half a scruple.*

My

My opening Syrup.

Take *opening Roots an ounce, Succory, Burnet, Cookow-pints, each half an ounce; bark of an Ash and Elder, each five scruples; Dodder, Maidenhair, Succory, Agrimony, each a handful; Flixweed, Carduus, Germander, Centaury, Broom flowers, each half a handful; seeds of Carthamus, Broom, Columbines, each half an ounce; infuse them in Water and Vinegar of Squills a pint, strain and add juyce of Endive, Fumitory, each half a pint; and the white of an Eg*: digest them three daies, and strain and ad sugar, and clarifie it to a Syrup. *Galen* in great obstructions by thick matter, useth Capar, Tamarisk bark, and Harts-tongue, and things against the spleen. When that is had, use Figs and Raisons also.

In an obstruction from a hot Cause. Take *Graß and Succory roots, each half an ounce; Endive, Succory, Scariola, Dodder, each a handful; Agrimony, Wormwood, each a pugil; Endive, Succory, Melon seeds, each two drams; Winter-cherries seven, Raisons half an ounce, boyl, and to a pint strained, add syrup of Succory, and of the two opening Roots, and of Sorrel, each an ounce; with Diatreos and Sanders, make a Potion for three doses.*

Medicines of Tartar are good both in a hot and cold Cause; in a cold Cause use Spirit of Wine and Tartar, or the essence of Tartar. In all obstructions, especially from cold humors, use Medicines of Steel, of which in the Chapter of stoppages of the spleen, and the Cachectick Pouder. Take *Steel filings prepared with Sulphur, put them in a crucible, til the Sulphur be extracted, & to that, add as much Sulphur as Steel, let it be evaporated as before, put this Steel into a frying pan,*

with as much Vinegar as will be a fingers breadth above it, set them upon the fire, and stir them till the Vinegar evaporate, then add more Vinegar, and evaporate it the third time, till it be red. Always use some strengtheners, as Wormwood, Mints, if you will have hot; or Roses, Endive, Succory, if cold.

In an obstruction from a cold Cause. Take *Wormwood, Southernwood, Agrimony, Dodder, each a handful; Cypress roots half an ounce, Chamomil flowers half a handful, Cinnamon, Spike, each a scruple; Cumin two scruples, boyl them in white Wine, strain it for an Epithem for the Liver: and boyl the rest soft, and with Oyl of bitter Almonds make a Cataplasm.*

In a hot Cause. Take *Succory water, Endive and Wormwood, each four ounces; Vinegar half an ounce, Diarrhodon, Diatrionsantalon, each two drams; Spike a dram, make an Epithem.*

The Diet. Let diet be attenuating, and clensing in tough humors, as Ptisan Barley; avoid gross and astringents, Wheat-meats, Milk and Cheese, especially if old; hard flesh, Eels. Many dishes hurt. Let Wine be thin and old, but in a hot Cause none at all.

Of opening of the Veins of the Liver.

Too much heat or moisture or sharp humors, open the veins, and make the Liver, loose or too much blood, or some violent external Cause, it is known by a bloody flux.

They must be stopped with Plantane, Shepheards-purse, Solomons-seal, Tormentil, Roses, Mirtles, Currans, Barberries, Wormwood, Quinces, sealed Earth, Bole, burnt Ivory, Coral, syrup of dried Roses, Mints, Coral, Troches of Spodium, sealed Earth, and steeled Waters.

Outwardly to the right side, apply astringents and

and Cataplasms, and Fomentations of the same things boyled in Wine. *Fenive. de abdit morb c. 4. Hollerius inter rara. num. 3.*

Chap. 3. *Of inflation or puffing up of the Liver.*

THis inflation of the Liver, is when a thick wind is shut up under the membrane of it, and swells it, and causeth pain.

This wind comes from windy, flegmatick and melancholick meats; or from the weakness of the Liver; sometimes it is sent to it from the parts adjacent. *The Causes*

It is known by a tumor on the right side with pain; somtimes more, somtimes less, without heavines, the colour of the body and face are not changed, the urin; if there be no feaver, is white and thick. Somtimes this pain is from the stretching of the Peritonæum, and the Membranes adjacent, and is taken for the pain of the Liver, when wind or humors get into the void spaces. *The Signs.*

It is hard to be cured, because the wind there contained is hard to be discussed. *The Prognostick.*

If it be to be cured, it is by expellers of wind from the Liver. Therefore use all things in obstructions of the Liver from a cold cause, as Diacyminum and Diagalangal. Outwardly foment against wind: as, Take *Chamomil and Melilot flowers, each a handful; Wormwood half a handful, Anise, Fennel and Lineseed, each half an ounce; boyl them, and foment, then anoint with oyl of bitter Almonds, Spike, Chamomil, Wormwood, Nard.* *The Cure.*

℞ Let it be attenuating, not windy: and let the Wine be old. *The Diet.*

Chap.

Chap. 4. *Of the Inflammation of the Liver.*

A Pure inflammation is from blood; also it is from choler, melancholy, and flegm mixed therewith; these cause several tumors. Blood gets into the substance of the Liver by attraction or transmission, from the whole body or some part; it attracts by great heat, and receives by its weakness, either bred or acquired. Sometimes hot remedies applied to heat the stomach, cause it, because they first work upon the Liver. And it may be from a Cupping-glass applied to the Liver, when there is bleeding at the nose. Therefore it is best to use cold thickners in this case.

Guil. Farb cent. 2. obs. 46.

The Signs. Heavines on the right side, stretching and pain, and a feaver at the first, very strong, and a dry cough, if the inflammation be great, by reason of the vapors sent to the lungs, difficulty of breath, by reason of the compression of the Diaphragma, difficult lying on the right side, because it is then pressed; and on the left, because it hangs by its own weight, and the membranes are stretched, they lie at most ease upon the back. The pulse is quick, unequal, hard and darting. Great thirst, want of appetite, rough tongue, red and black, clammy, great heat, and cold without, when the feaver is malignant, thick urin, red and little, cholerick or bloody stools, like washings of flesh, or like Goats dung, vomiting of choler, and hickets sometimes.

Gal. 4. de nat. vict. in acut. t. 17.

The inflammation of the Liver must be distinguished from that in the parts adjacent: first from

from that in the mesentery and the muscles of the belly the tumors are not round like the bunch of the Liver, but take heed you be not mistaken when the tumor is in the middle of the belly, for in some the Liver reacheth so low.

If it be in the bunch of the Liver, it is known by lying on the Right side, for then the tumor appears more, and the parts on the right side of the neck seem to be drawn downwards, when the hollow of the Liver is inflamed, there is little tumor to be felt, but greater thirst and want of appetite, and vomiting of choler, you may know what humor is the cause of the inflammation by the largeness of the symptoms, and the Feaver. If it be choler or blood, the symptoms are greater then in flegm or melancholy.

The Prognostick.

It is dangerous because of the nobleness of the part, and Dropsie or Atrophy will follow, or death, if the bunch be inflamed the pain is greater, if the hollow, the vomiting of choler and loathing is greater; if there be a tumor on both sides it is worse, the least danger is when it is on the left side, bleeding at the nose cures inflammations of the Liver and Spleen in men under twenty five. A part neer inflamed is cured by bleeding at the right nostril, or by good sweating, or by Urine. The hollow part of the Liver is cured by cholerick stools, sweating, and sometimes by vomiting. Vomiting black or green is deadly, and so is cold external. The change of the impostume to the spleen is good, the contrary is bad.

Galen. 6. epid. com. 2. t. 14.

Gal. 3. de crisib. c. 3. Avic. 3. cano. fen. 13. to. 3. c. 1.

Indications and Cure.

First revell and repell the matter flowing, if it be by way of transmission from a part, strengthen the liver that it may not receive the matter, it is safe to cure it without suppuration; therefore

Ft. tetr. lib. 2. ser. 2. c. 3. fore after a cold Clyster, presently open a vein in the right arm, the first, second, or seventh day, if there be pain, and strength, *Galen* in great inflammations bleeds til they faint, if terms be stopt, open the Ankle vein. In weakness, apply Horseleeches to the right arm and to the Hæmorrhoids, and after general evacuations, use Cupping and Scarifying to the Thighes and Hips.

When the bunchy part is affected, use Lenitives, as *syrup of Roses, Violets, Manna, Cassia, Tamarinds*, presently after bleeding, if the hollow part of the liver be affected only, give only clysters, not purges, lest the matter be sent to the mesaraicks. Thus, Take *Barley water a pint, red Sugar an ounce, oyl of Violets, Roses, two ounces*, with *the yolk of an Egg* make a *Clyster, add Cassia half an ounce* if you please; when there is great inflammation, boyl *Succory, Lettice, Borage*, prepare the humors with *Succory* as in the distemper of the Liver, sweet things swell a liver inflamed.

Trallia lib 4. c. 1. After preparation, if the bunchy part be inflamed, to provoke urine is best As, Take *Fennel & Asparagus roots, each half an ounce; Parsley and Succory roots, each two drams; Maidenhair, Agrimony, each a handful; red Pease half a handful, four great cold seeds, each a dram; Raisons an ounce, boyl them, to a pint strained, add syrup of the two roots two ounces.* When the hollow part is inflamed, it is better to purge, *Galen* useth Nettles & Mercury, Epithymum & Polypody, & other loosners, & goes higher by degrees. In inflammations with choler, give syrup of Roses solutive, Manna, Cassia, Rhubarb, Diaprunis, Diacatholicon. With flegm, use Carthamus seeds, Agarick, Mechoacan

Gal. 13. meth. c. 15.

can. In melancholy Epithymum, Senna, more or leſs, as the Feaver is, and the part affected.

Preſently after bleeding uſe Topicks. firſt Repellers, ſome cool and aſtringe, and repell that the matter flow not, as oyl of Quinces, Myrtles, Roſes, juyce of Quinces, Vinegar, Sanders, Sumach, Myrtles, Brambles, ſome aſtrin e and cool not, as of Wormwood, Nard, Maſtich, Cypreſs nuts, ſharp Wine, Schænanth, Cypreſs roots, uſe theſe laſt in an inflammation with flegm and melancholy leaſt a Scirrhus be made, the other in choler, apply them not actually cold except there be an Eryſipelas,. As, Take *oyl of Roſes, Quinces, each half an ounce; Chamomil Dill or Wormwood, each two drams; red Sanders half a ſcruple, Vinegar two drams, with Wax make a Liniment for the Liver,* then this Epithem. Take *Succory, Endive, each a handful; red Roſes half a handful, flowers of Chamomil, Melilot, Wormwood, Dill, each a pugil; red Sanders three drams, Schænanth a dram, boyl them, to a pint ad to ounce of Vinegar, make an Epithem.*

Uſe Aſtringents all the time of the cure, and in the declination of the Polegmon not to repel, but to keep the tone of the part and to ſtrengthen; when the inflamm ation increaſeth, uſe diſſolvers or Diaphoreticks in a greater quantity, with the Repellers. The Remedies muſt therefore be of a mixed quality, becauſe two indicati ons meet one from the flegmon, in which blood is at that time mixed being groſs and fixed, another from the part affected which is the Liver, which being preſſed with much matter cannot expell, except it be ſtrengthened by Aſtringents. *Gal. meth. . 2.*

If the Phlegmon tend to ſuppuration (which you

you must labour to prevent) help nature with softners and ripeners; the signs of suppuration in an inflammation are pain, a feaver, chilness without order, and the greater heat; after matter is made, the symptoms abate, but the strength is very low, the pulse is faint, and they swound.

If the Imposthume break to the guts as is usual from the hollow of the Liver, and the matter come forth, you must only temper the sharpness of the matter. If it flow not clean out, give a Clyster of Barley cream and Sugar and Hydromel at the mouth.

If the matter go to the kidneys (as when the bunchy part of the Liver is affected, only abate the acrimony or sharpness, with a pint of Goats whey, with an ounce of the emulsion of Melon seeds.

If it go to the stomach and the Patient vomits with difficulty, give Hydromel or Honey of Roses, if he vomit easily, help nature with fat broth or warm Barley water, &c.

Sometimes the membrane about the Liver is eaten through, and the matter falls into the cavity of the belly, and then the ancients fell to cut and burn the belly in a dangerous disease, that they might leave no means neglected, some opened against the Liver with an incision knife where the tumor appeared, and much matter hath been voided, as appears by histories.

Hipp. 7 Apho 45.

The Diet. It must be very temperate, but if he have an eye to the strength, forbear tough and thick meats that retain the matter in the Liver, use clensers, without sharpness or sweetness, as Ptisan strained, Oxymel, and water, or bruised flesh in weakness. Spices and Wine hurt, let meat be taken with Vinegar.

Chap.

Chap. 5. *Of the Scirrhus and other Tumors of the Liver.*

SOmetimes the inflammation of the Liver turns to a Scirrhus, as when the thin matter is discussed and the thick remains, and is melancholick, or when the humors grow thick by using of too great coolers, and the inbred heat of the parts is weak, or it follows old obstructions. Therefore a scirrhus of the Liver is a cold hard tumor without pain, from a thick or slimy matter or both; it is a disease of magnitude increased, besides nature, and of a cold distemper.

The Causes.

All thick and slimy humors, and blood it self when the thin parts are consumed and the thick remain, and the natural heat is weakned.

The Signs.

There is a manifest hardness in the Liver without a feaver or sense of heavyness more then in an obstruction, the pain is obscure by reason of the pressing of the parts adjacent, there is little urine, the colour is changed in the body, and it is lean because the sanguification and distribution is not well made, it follows a Cachexy, and a Dropsie, and death will follow it, if it be not presently cured; he lies better upon his right side, for when he lies upon his left, the weight of the Liver hurts the stomach.

The Prognostick.

A true scirrhus of the Liver is never cured, but brings necessarily a Dropsie, a Scirrhus suppurated turns to a Cancer.

The Indications and Cure.

A cold hard Liver must be healed and made soft, and when the matter is thick, hard and slimy it must be attenuated, softned and clensed, first then use lenitives and prepare the humors,

as

as we shewed in obstructions. To take away a Scirrhus, use fomners with discussers. As, Take *roots of Marsh mallows three ounces, Scrophularia or Clowns all heal two ounces, wild Cowcumbers an ounce, Fern half an ounce, leaves of Agrimony, Althæa, Wormwood, Chamomil flowers, tops of Dill, each half a handful; Fenugreek seed half an ounce, boyl them in Water and Vinegar for a Fomentation.*

Or, Take *roots of Althæa an ounce, Orris and the inward peels of Elders, each half an ounce; Chamomil, Melilot Elder flowers, each a pugil; Wormwood half a handful, both Spikes, each a dram and half; boyl them in Tripe-broath and Wine equal parts, foment therewith.*

Use no Fomentations too long, least the tune of the part be loosned. Or, Take *Diachylon two ounce, Ammoniacum, Bdellium dissolved in Vinegar, each a dram; Goose grease, marrow of Calves feet, each two ounces; with Wax make a Cerot.*

Or the Herbane leaves boyled in Vinegar, with Oyl of bitter Almonds like a Pultis. For externals take notice that after emollients, a vapor of strong Vinegar and Aqua vitæ sprinkled upon a hot brick, is good to attenuate and dissolve the matter that is sott: and you must still continue dissolvers, till you have rooted all out.

Actius If it will not be cured by externals, it is good against a Scirrhus in the hollow part of the liver, to give the juice or powder of Anagallis, or Brooklime with the purple flower a dram, with Hydromel or the powder of burnt Nettles. Their must be continued long. Medicines of steel are excellent also, of which elsewhere.

The Diet. Let it be as in obstructions, but not so little meat least the strength fail, because the disease is long.

long. Let the Wine be thin, clear, and sweet-scented.

A simple tumor of the Liver.

There is a tumor like a Scirrhus, that grows up quickly, and is almost all over the membrane of the Liver, or the whole right side, so that there is no sign of the Liver, and the fingers cannot be thrust under the ribs.

It is from wind or thin crudities, proceeding from unseasonable drinking of cold water, or gluttony, there is a sense of stretching rather then heaviness; sometimes it is from a thick humor, which by a strong Liver is sent to the Membrane.

It is cured by openers, cutters and purgers of gross humors, and even as a Scirrhus is cured that is but newly come.

Chap. 6. *Of Stones, Worms, and Blisters in the* Liver.

Fallopius, Columbus and *Keuman* in his Book of Stones in bodies opened, have found often-times stones in the Liver.

The cause and manner of breeding it as in other parts, especially the kidnies, they are hard to be known, and are only found after death, the signs of them are the same with the Scirrhus, but the pain is greater, if the stone get to the membrane, and press it.

The Cure is difficult, and as the stone of the kidnies.

Worms.

Riolanus, Bauhinus and my self, have seen worms in the Livers of Anatomies. And children

Lib. 4. *de Hæmorrhoidibus, & Vermibus* cap. 16. *Anno* 1629. *præfiq. dæ-mo.* 6. 16.

children that had the smal pox before they brake forth, and after also had worms of a span long, which all died.

These are not known by any certain signs, therefore I shall speak nothing of the Cure.

The Bladders in the Liver.

There are in the Liver bladders of cold water, as big as a fist, sometimes more and less. If they break, and fall into the cavity of the belly, there is a Dropsie, as some think. They breed of a serous humor from the hurt sanguification of the Liver, which is gathered under the membrane of the Liver being thick.

Chap. 7. *Of Wounds of the Liver.*

THey are onely from outward violence, as from a weapon, by a stab or cut, or from a contusion. Also the vessels or the substance is wounded, either in the bunchy or hollow part. It cannot be from driness.

The Signs. The Causes external, whether they cut or bruise the skin onely, many have bruised blood on the right side: there is pricking pain to the throat and right shoulders: they are apt to lie upon their bellies. They vomit choler or blood, or void it by urin or stool. There is bleeding at the nose, and a pain on the right side.

The Prognostick. Great wounds in the Liver are uncurable, but experience shews that a small wound or a piece cut off, are not mortal, as *Avicena* writes. *Hippocrates* saith, That one stab'd in the Liver died that day. A contusion is worse then a wound, and

5. Epid.

and turns to an impoſthume. A wound in the great veſſels is deadly.

Where you fear bleeding, open a vein; if the belly be bound, give a Clyſter of the Decoction of Succory, Plantane, St. Johns-wort, Roſes, oyl of Myrtles, Roſes, and Honey of Roſes, a dram or two of Rhubarb. Uſe clenſers and glutinaters preſently, as in ſpitting of blood; or two drams of red Roſes, Pomegranate flowers, Bole, Troches of Spodium, Roſes. Or, Take *Conſerve of red Roſes two ounces, of Succory flowers an ounce, Paul's Bettony half an ounce, red Coral prepared, and Pearl, Bole, each a ſcruple; with ſyrup of Myrtles make an Electuary.* *The*

To ſtrengthen the Liver. Take *Diarrhodon, Diamargariton frigid, Aromaticum roſatum, each half a dram; Dialacca a ſcruple, Pearl prepared half a ſcruple, red Coral a ſcruple, with Sugar diſſolved in Roſe-water two ounces and half, make Troches.* Let the Pouders be fine, that they may pierce.

To the Liver, when the wound is open, apply this. Take *Bole, ſealed Earth, each a dram; red Roſes a ſcruple, Bran three drams, Bloodſtone half a dram, make a Pouder, ſprinkle it upon the wound.* Uſe alſo *an Oyniment of Turpentine, Bole, and Mummy, then of Maſtich, and Frankincenſe.* Or this Cataplaſm. Take *Violets, Endive, Succory, each three drams; Agrimony, Dill tops, St. Johns-wort, each two pugils; flowers of Chamomil, Melilot, red Roſes, each a pugil; Barley and Bean flour, each an ounce and half; with red Wine make a Cataplaſm, and Oyl of Roſes an ounce and half.*

In a contuſion of the Liver, firſt let blood, then apply Cataplaſms and Plaiſters. As, Take *white Amber, Bole, Pomegranate flowers, Dragons blood,*

Gum lack, red Roses, make a Powder, give a dram in Plantane water wherein half a dram of Gum tragauth was infused When you mistrust congealed blood. Take *Rhubarb a dram and half, Spike, Schœnanth, each fifteen grains; Mummy half a dram, give a dram in powder.* Or, Take *Rhapontick half a dram, Myrrh, Mummy, Sperma ceti, Tormentil roots, Crabs eyes, each half a dram; give it in Vinegar or Honsuckle water.* Or, Take *Rhapontick and Rhubarb each two scruples; Mummy, Sperma ceti, Tormentil roots, Cloves, each twelve grains; make a Powder for two Doses.* Apply outwardly discussers and strengtheners, as, Nard, Schœnanth, Wormwood, Saffron, Frankincense, Myrrh, &c.

The Diet. Let it be thin, and glutinating, Rice or Barley boyled in Kids feet broath, no Wine, but water with Jujubes or Coriander seed boyled in it.

Chap. 8. *Of Ulcers and Sphacel of the Liver.*

AN Ulcer in the Liver follows a Phlegmon, and it may be from an internal cause, as sharp corroding juyce which putrifieth and that from the evil nourishment infected by the French Pox; this hath turned to a Gangrene, and the membrane of the Liver being broken, the matter fell into the belly, and by its stink corrupted the Omentum, Peritoneum, and Guts, and the membrane hath been found found, and no tumor, and the whole substance of the Liver hath flown out stinking and corrupt.

Acid flor. ser. 5. c. 6.

Tarab. 3. ser. 2. c. 5.

The Signs. A Cough, ulcerous pain in the right side, consumptions, when the ulcer is in the hollow part, there

there is matter by stool, and blood sometimes, with pain in the guts by sharpness of the matter, as in a Dysentery, but the pain is always pricking and heavy in the Liver, and it hath been known that pieces of Liver have been voided. When the ulcer is in the bunchy part, the urine is mattery without any signs of ulcers in the bladder and reins; the evil goes by degrees, and the Patient perceives it not, at length a lingring fever cometh and ends in a Hectick, and there follows a stinking breath and often swounding, the face is of the Jaundies colour, and there are pustles from the adustion of humors. *Cap. 3. observ. med.*

A great ulcer of the Liver brings Death or Dropsie, if the matter be in the substance of the part, the danger is greater, if matter be voided by stool or urine, there is less danger. *The Prognostick.*

In this ulcer, if inflammation went before, you must not bleed, because strength will not permit; but if there be signs of plethory, open a vein least the ulcer be inflamed, and then purge the humor: use things mentioned in the ulcer of the stomach in greater quantity, because the Liver lieth lower, and add Hepaticks or Liver-medicines that dry. *The Cure.*

To cleanse use Barley cream, whey of Goats milk Honey'd-wine or Sugar, and the decoction of China and Sarsa, then use driers; a dram of the troches Cyphoides are commended by *Aëtius*. or these,

Take *Aromaticum rosatum, Diarrhoden de geminis frigidis, each a dram; Nutmeg, Mace, red Coral, burnt Ivory, each a scruple; Sugar candy, Crystal, each three ounces; Diaphoretick Braß a scruple, Conserve of red Roses an ounce, of Bugloß*

half an ounce, Sugar dissolved in Rose water four ounces: make Tablets.

The Gangrene of the Liver.

Dodonæus gives an instance of the disease, of one that from sorrow turned melancholy, and complained of weakness, and hated meat and drink, without feaver or thirst, & his whole body was cold, and his feet swollen, his urine was red, as in a burning feaver or inflammation of the Liver, he died famished; his body was opened, and his Liver was a little blacker then ordinary, and less black then his Lungs that were gangrened, and it pitted with the finger.

Chap. 9. *Of the Diseases of the Gall.*

Lib. 6. pathol. c. 5.

THe Gall is joyned to the Liver, some have two Galls, the passages are not alwaies the same, nor into the same part. *Fernelius* found it empty of choler. *Vesalius* found it bigger then two fists full of matter like ink, I saw the same in one of thirty: there are also stones found in it, which I have also observed three in a Lady, they caused in her neither Jaundies nor obstructions, and she died of a bastard Pleurisie, in others thick humors or stones are the cause of obstructions and Jaundies, they are hard to be cured, and puzzle the best Drs. and they cause great symptoms there are often pains in the Hypochondria, loathing, vomiting. See Jaundies and Costiveness.

Vesa in ex anime observe fallor

THE

THE THIRD BOOK.

THE EIGHTH PART.

Of the Symptomes of the Liver.

Chap. 1. *Of Sanguification hurt in general, and of Weakneſs of the Liver.*

THis is a proper Symptome of the Liver, and it is not from any cooling, but from that which comes from the want of natural heat, whether it come from heat that diſperſed it, or from evacuation

tion, or from cold that quenched it: this want of natural heat is the immediate cause of the weakness of the Liver, hence it is that sanguification is either abated or abolished: and there is distemper which signifies the excess of the qualities, when these are too much, sanguification is not taken away or diminished, but the blood is not good that is made, but answers to the quantity that exceeded.

There are many causes of sanguification hurt, it is hurt primarily or secondarily; primarily from the hurt of the faculty, or from an outward error; the faculty is hurt from all kinds of discases of distemper: if it be hot, the chyle is burnt and the blood is choleruck. The outward error is from the object, when the chyle is not well made, and though there be good chyle made in the stomach, it may be mixed with evil humors which lie in the passages by which the chyle is conveighed. It is hurt secondarily, when the four faculties that attend sanguification are hurt, these are hurt from divers distempers.

The Signs of a weak Liver are found generally in the urine and stools while the stomach is good, and no error in that as for the stools, if they look like new thin washed flesh or dregs of blood; the first argues the coldness of the Liver, the last the excess of heat.

But besides the distemper, there is a looseness of the veins in the hollow part, especially where it goes to the guts and mesentery, and a crude and bloody excrement is voided, and if this be sent to the whole body, there is a Cachexy, and a disease

a disease in the skin from burnt Humors. The urin shews certainly what is in the veins. Also when all the body is long discoloured, it shews the evil of the liver, as when it is yellow or green, this is a certain sign, you need no other. Observe also the precedent causes, which may dissipate or quench the natural heat, as use of hot things, and Wine, great Evacuations and the like.

Bad sanguification is from a bad Liver, and men die of Consumptions, and want of nourishment. Weakness from cold, causeth a Dropsie, when the stools are like washings of flesh; the altering faculty and sanguifying are weak. Bloody spittle, or filthy, or cholerick, is deadly in Liver-diseases. *The Prognostick. Gal. 5. de lo. aff. c. 1. 2. Hippocr. 6. coac.*

We shewed how sanguification hurt by distemper may be cured. But in weakness from want of natural heat, the Liver must be strengthned, but not to be made too hot nor cold, though the disease be hot or cold; but use moderate healers, mixing meat and Medicine together, that the meat may sooner be turned into the substance of the Liver. As Livers of Creatures, as of a Calf, a Wolf, of Hens, Geese, the stones of Cocks with Spices, especially Cinnamon. But if the want of natural heat be from a hot distemper, use all things of Succory, Roses and Sunders; and though the stomach be cold, Succory is good by its bitterness. In a cold Cause, give Wormwood, Agrimony, which cleanse choler from the Liver, and strengthen. Or, Take *Spikenard six drams, Wormwood two drams, Cinnamon half a dram, make a Powder, or with Honey an Electuary.* *Indications and Cure.* *8. De compos. med. cc. lo. 8.*

Or give Electuary of Diarrhodon, with double

ble Rhubarb. Or this:

Take Currans half a pound, boyl them in Wine, add Citron peels candied an ounce, Aromaticum rosatum a dram, Diamargariton frigid two scruples, Coral a scruple, Conserve of Roses an ounce, powder of a Hares liver prepared three drams, Sanders two drams, make an Electuary, give half an ounce with Wine.. Or,

Take a Calves liver, cut it, Agrimony two handfuls, Sage, Liverwort, each a handful; Pauls Betony two handfuls, Cinnamon an ounce, add Agrimony and Succory waters, & distil them or boyl them.

Chap. 2. *Of Cachexy.*

THis signifies an evil habit of the body, that commonly follows the weakness of the liver, and is as a way to the Dropsie. *Paul* writes that it is a fault in the nourishing of the musculous flesh and skin, when they want their natural temper, and all the nourishment is wateriſh, and corrupt, so that the natural colour is changed and made pale, or blew, or lead coloured, and the body is loose, soft and swollen, especially the eyelids, face and feet. *Ætius* saies, It is when the habit of the body is wateriſh, and the whole body is looser. The whole body is the part affected, as the skin and muscles, and there is loathing and short wind.

Paul Ægin. lib. 3. c. 47.

Æt. tetr. 3. ser. 2. & 9.

The Causes The Cause is flegmatick blood that is crude, with a little choler and melancholy, which makes the divers preternatural colours, as blew and yellow. Nor is the nourishment converted to the body, by reason of crudity; nor are the parts well nourished. This blood is from a fault in the

the liver and ſpleen; ſomtimes in the ſtomach, when it is ful of crude evil nouriſhment and humors, and cannot expel them, by reaſon of weakneſs. And when the firſt concoction is bad, the nouriſhment in the whol body muſt needs be bad. The ſame may come from a fault in the brain, when a cold flegmatick humor fallen without the skul, between the skin and the muſcles is gathered under the skin, and makes a ſoft tumor; or is from the veins of the head, all over the body, though it cannot be in the whole habit of it. Somtimes it hath come from an ulcer in the kidnies when matter, by reaſon of the obſtruction of the ureters, is ſent to the kidnies, and infects the blood and the whole habit of the body.

Alſo whatſoever moiſtens and cools the liver, may cauſe a Cachexy internally and externally, as long diſeaſes, obſtructions of the Liver and ſpleen, evacuations ſtopt, weakneſs of natural heat in old men. Therefore in the vigor of age, a Cachexy is ſeldom. Alſo it may come by living in a Cell.

They are known by paleneſs, lead-like, and blew colour, and puffed habit of body, ſoft, eſpecially the face, cheeks, hands and feet, and cods, and then a Dropſie is begun. The concoction is imperfect, and the appetite remains, but in time that goes, and the body weakens. *The Signs.*

It turns often to the Dropſie Anaſarca, if it be not ſpeedily prevented. If it come from a Dropſie in the lungs or an acute diſeaſe, it is incurable. *The Prognoſtick.*

Firſt, ſeek the Cauſe. If moiſt and cold matter come from Liver, it muſt be ſtrengthened: you muſt not let blood, leaſt you cool it more. If it come from a hard tumor in any bowel, cure *Indications and Cure.*

that

that first. If it come from too much evacuation, preserve the natural heat, and restore what is dispersed: take away the external causes. If it come from suffocation of the natural heat, from stoppage of some evacuation, as the terms or Hæmorrhoids bleed a little, by fits two or three daies. Begin at the arm when there are signs of plethory, and so to the legs, but be not too hasty.

Avic. fen. 4. tr. 4. c. 20.

Use the Medicines mentioned in a cold and moist distemper of the Liver, and in the Dropsie Anasarca for Cachexy is like those diseases. First prepare the humors, then purge, especially the serous water which is moist. A vomit takes away the antecedent Cause.

After evacuation, use Wormwood any waies, and these Pills that loosen and strengthen.

Take *Dialacca or Diacurcum three scruples, Rhubarb and Mechoacan, each a dram; Diarrhodon, Galangal, each a scruple; with Syrup of Wormwood make Pills, take a dram fasting.* Or give Troches of Wormwood, of Rhubarb, Dialacca, with pouder of Rhubarb, Agarick, and a little Diarrhodon, with Syrup Byzantine, and so Agrimony, take them every morning.

Take *Steel prepared, sprinkle it with Wormwood, or Ash water, wherein their Salt is dissolved:* let it lie till it rust. Take *of the Saffron three ounces, burnt Harts horn half an ounce, Magistery of Coral, Pearl, each a dram and half; Cinnamon half a dram, Crystal of Tartar a scruple, with Sugar make Pills, give a dram.*

Or this Pouder. Take *the guts of Hens, and the inward skins of their gizards washt in white wine three ounces, burn them, and wash them in white wine and Wormwood water, add to every ounce of ashes,*

Galan-

Galangal, Cinamon, each a dram; Saffron a scruple, Cloves half an ounce, Wolves liver prepared two drams, Sugar of Roses an ounce.

Steeled Wine is good in obstructions and stoppage of terms that causeth a Cachexy.

Take *Steel prepared three ounces and half, white Wine four pints, infuse them eight daies hot, stirring them every day, give six ounces four hours afore dinner and evere se, continue it twenty daies* Add Wine to it as often as you take out, till half the steel is consumed.

For preservation against a Dropsie, make issues in the legs. If it come from stoppage or any evacuation, provoke it; if from immoderate evacuation, restore the body, heat the parts, and strengthen the Liver.

The Diet. Let the air be hot and dry. The meat of good juyce and easie concoction, drying, with Cinamon, Cloves, Saffron: or for the poor, with Onions, Garlick and Leeks. Let Wine be white, thin and sweet-scented.

Chap. 3. *Of the Dropsie and Sanguification hurt in general, and of Ascites.*

THe Dropsie signifies in general an abundance or collection of water, that fils the body, or any part, as the Dropsie of the head, womb, lungs, and arms and hands, of which hereafter.

Now I shall speak of that wherein the whole body or belly at least is swollen with water, and it is a symptom of sanguification hurt. Of other swellings of the belly, we shall speak hereafter. But

Ascites

Ascites being the chief Dropsie, I shall first speak of that.

Of the Nature and Causes of Ascites.

Ascites is a tumor of the belly, sometimes of the thighs, feet and cods. Also from water gathered in the belly, between the Peritonæum, the Omentum and the guts: or in the cavity of the abdomen, in such a quantity, that it not only stretcheth it, but compresseth the Diaphragma, and gets into the breast, and causeth difficult breathing, and a cough, and some of the water falls to the feet, and legs, and cods.

The Causes The immediate Cause is cold water that is salt, and partaketh thereby of heat, which it takes from the nearness of the bowels, and in time it stinks: sometimes it is in bladders.

Mauritius Gordæus com. 5. in lib. de mul morb. *Anno* 1640. at *Avinion* a noble Lady died, that at nine years of age had her terms appear, which was rare: at which her parents thought that marriage was good for her, because they thought she had a disease in the womb, which began to shew it self by hard tumors near the womb, like a Dropsie, or inflation or moke. At seventeen she was married, by which the tumor increased, and went over the whole belly like a Dropsie, with the navel stretched out as big as a Quince, and the legs swollen, and other Symptomes.

After she had been three years married, she died, we ordered first the water to be let out by the navel, or eased between the four navel-vessels; this had been done in her life, if the Physitians had not feared the bowels to be rotten. according to the Oracles of *Hippocrates*, *Cut for the Dropsie pr. fondo, and burn for the Phthisick pr. fundo*.

After an hundered pints of water were taken

out

out, her belly was opened, and there appeared a great tumor filling almost the belly on the right side, from the stomach to the womb; the lower part grew to the womb, and the upper by a membrane, which came from the spleen-branch (which is a branch of the gate-vein) and so went to the spleen, and after that joyned to the tumor; in the middle part, before it was fixed to the Peritonæum, under the navel, between the muscles like a purse ful of water, down to the privitie: This membranous production was a large double vessel, like a navel-vein, by which the child receives nourishment in the womb: hence the imposthume received growth, from the water in the liver and spleen. It was as big as a child with a hard membrane over it, with arms, head and feet; it affrighted the standers by, and when it was taken away, and put into a bason, we searched it throughout; after we had cut the outward membrane, we saw above thirty bags or cystes, some were long like egs or a fingers length; others like apples or quinces: And wch was more strange, every bag had little bags with it, so that they increased like Hydras heads, as we took them off, & many humors flowed out of them, so that they filled the whole bason with yellow, white, black, Oyl-like, Honey-like and whites of Eggs-like humors and water: those bags that were neareſt the womb, were full of slime like raw whites of Eggs After it was empty, and the membrane held up, they were like purches all over it, and it weighed about twenty pounds.

Then we searched into her other parts, the omentum was almost consumed and imposthumed: the liver was out of its place, and lay all under

der the true ribs, and prest upon the Diaphragma, and it was long, not round; it was found in substance, and had a stronger membrane then ordinary to defend it, the spleen was right, the left kidney performed no duty, but was eaten and consumed, but the right was sound. The lungs were full of stinking water as matter, the womb was little, and not hurt, there was no room for the lungs to breath. Her terms never flopt before nor after marriage.

The place where water breeds, is between the stomach and the kidnies, from which the Serum is sent to the liver. Also the spleen helps to cause a Dropsie (which makes blood after a way) and the Meseraicks, which carry the chyle to the liver and spleen, and concoct blood after a manner: for if whey be sufficiently evacuated by the veins, the Dropsie is not bred, or if it be not voided by stool: therefore seek the cause between the stomach, liver and spleen, and the water stopping in this place, called a Dropsie.

Now the cause why the whey is not evacuated by the veins, is in the bowels, and chiefly in the spleen, that doth not draw away all superfluities from the stomach, or because the attractive faculty is weak, or because it is stopt by too much attraction of humors, which it cannot evacuate.

But Authors dispute, how the Serum can get into the cavity of the abdomen, of which thus: if the water be much in the vessels, between the liver, spleen and stomach, it may easily get into the belly, by opening or corroding the vessels, or by transcolation; though these passages are not seen in the dead bodies.

The remote causes of a Dropsie, are whatsoe-

ver

vet hurts the attraction of Serum in the bowels, by extinguishing the natural heat, or dispersing it, or choaking it, as too much water drunk, or heat in the veins about the spleen, by which means it sucks faster then it can void. But note that in Ascites, the abdomen is seldom stretched by water alone, but with wind also, as we shall shew in Tympany.

The Differences.

One is from a fault in the liver, another in the spleen, another from a fault in the reins and ureters, from the variety of the containing cause, the water is sometimes yellow, black, like washed flesh water, and it is more or less: sometimes the belly only, sometimes the cods also do swel: sometimes it is with a feaver, sometimes without, old or new; or begins of it self, or follows some other diseases.

The Signs of a Dropsie in general.

Swelling of feet and belly, difficult breath, ill colour; but sometimes the feet swell without a Dropsie, from the faint heat of the liver or stomach, when so much blood is not made as is requisite, from whence arise vapors, and crude, and serous humors that fall into the feet: if in these be keep a good diet, there is no danger.

The Prognostick of a Dropsie in general.

It is not always hard to be cured, but as the Causes and Symptoms are; the Anasarca is less dangerous, because the cause is not so different from a natural state, the Tympany and Ascites are worst, as the circumstances are, as when there is a scirrhus of the liver or spleen. If the causes be only considered, the Tympany is worst: lastly all old Dropsies are dangerous.

The Signs of Ascites.

The belly swells by degrees, and the feet and

cod; and the swelling riseth upwards; when the patient turns from one side to the other, their is a noise of water. The upper parts pine away, the hands swell, the urin is thick and little, the pulse is small, often and hard, and with stretching. There is at length Dispnœa, that the patient cannot lie down for want of breath, thrust from saltness of the water. As for the signs of the causes, they must be exactly considered, the cure must be directed to the part affected. If a hot liver be the cause of a Dropsie, there is first a dry cough; after a desperate Dropsie, there is much spitting, while the matter by abundance gets into the cavity of the breast by hidden passages. The excrements are few and dry: it is good to consider all causes internal and external, as if there was a long quartane; it is to be supposed that the spleen is in fault. If there be an ulcer in the kidnies, or an ureter broken, or any part in the abdomen nut, it is to be suspected that the Dropsie begun there.

The Prognostick of an Ascites.

A Dropsie from hardness of the spleen, is less dangerous then from hardness of the liver; that which follows an acute disease is evil, because the bowels are dry, and the natural moisture gone. *In the beginning of a Dropsie, a softness without crudity, or want of concoction, eases it.* If there be a Scirrhus, a loosness is bad; a Dropsie is worst when little urin is made. A cough after a Dropsie causeth death, because the moisture passeth into the breast. A Dropsie from an ulcer in the kidnies is commonly deadly.

Hippo. in Coacis. Gal. & Avic.

Indications and Cure.

First, labour to evacuate the Serum in the abdomen, before the bowels rot, and let that which flows out, be turned another way, and sent out; then take away the cause that gathers

the

the water: it is a disease that requires time and many Medicines, but you must alter them, that nature be not clogged, and sometimes rest: and give solid Medicines, that water increase not: water is evacuated sensibly by cutting and purging by stool and urin, or insensibly, neither must you expect a concoction, for it admits it not, and is fit to flow being thin. If any thick flegm stick in the first passages, cut and clense it, and then evacuate, as with roots of Grass Asparagus, Butchers broom, Wormwood, Agrimony, Dodder, with Cream of Tartar, Tartar vitriolate, Mechoacan, Jalap which is excellent; also Elder, and Danewort, Cambogia, which is the juyce of a Plant: Rhubarb is better to strengthen then purge a Dropsie, therefore mix it. Soldanella or Sea-bindweed is good, the juyce taken. Or, Take *juyce of Soldanella a dram, Aniseeds and Spikenard, each half an ounce; boyl them gently, give it in the morning.* Or, Take *Soldanella half an ounce, Aniseed half a dram, Spike a scruple, boyl and strain, take five ounces of the Liquor, sweeten it with Sugar.* The stronger are Scammony, juyce of Flower-de-luce, with Manna, Honey, and decoction of Raisons. *Erastus* gives it with the yolk of an Eg.

A Conserve of Orris roots, Honey, and extract of Spurge is good: or Elaterium which is the juyce of wild Cowcumbers; give not above six grains, correct it with Bdellium, Traganth, Fleabane, Cinnamon; or give it with Mastich-pills, or Aloephanginæ, or Pills of Rhubarb: or use leaves of Mezereon steept with Vinegar, or juyce of Quinces six grains, with Mastich or Spike in pouder. Or give Euphorbium from three to ten grains, and Sagapenum from half a *Instit. lib. 5. par. 3. sec. 3. c. 5.*

scruple to a scruple, with correcters.

Chymical Medicines are of scales of Brass, or burnt Brass, Crocus Metallorum, Mercurius dulcis, Mercurius vitæ: or *Paracelsus* his Secret of Coral, Iuleb's, Mineral, Arcum Kegleri, all to be used warily.

Horatius commends a Medicine out of *Gordonius* and *Valescus* of *Taranta* thus made. Take [illegible] Cantharides and the roots of Laurel, Orris, Wormwood and Agrimony, each three ounces; Initiate, and strain the water off, add to the juice Rhubarb and Agarick, each half an ounce; Spikenard, Mastich, Saffron, Pulp of Cassia, Mastich, Trochisk Sagapen, each half a scruple; with Honey, in a glass, Mercurial Sun, give a dram.

[illegible] Medulla of Sea-bind weed. Take [illegible] Flowers of Indian nuts two ounces, Galangal, Zedoary, each two drams; Cloves, Nutmegs, each half an ounce; Scammony five drams, with Honey [illegible].

Vide 4 *Thomas Fuchsius* doth by evacuated abundance *de Arte* of Choler, with boiled Wine and Alarum roots in *Practica.* Pottage to purge the Spleen, thus made. Take Liverwort, Capers, Fumitory, Cetrach, Rockets, Pennets, Orris roots, Caper barks, Polypody, Succory, Snails without shells half an ounce; Senna an ounce and half, Schiedam wine three handfuls, Orris powder two drams, English figs dram, Wine in the pot to steep them three dayes, give a draught every other day, and a new morning Purge till ayth day, and the dayes between, he gave two or three ounces of the juice of wormwood with Syrup of Succory and Abstuents.

The golden Spirit of *Amandus*, is thus made. Take Sweet-roots [illegible] a pound, Epithymum [illegible], Polypody roots four ounces, Zedoary [illegible]

ger, Cloves, Maſtich, each a dram; Cinnamon half an ounce, Raiſons ſtampt an ounce, Sugar a pound and half: infuſe them in a glaſs in Rhenish wine and Malmſey, each three pints; ad Spirit of Vitriol a dram; infuſe them fourteen daies, ſtir them daily, diſtil them thrice.

Purging Spirit of Wine.

Take *the pith of Carthamus ſeeds a dram, Turbith, Diagredium, each two drams; Cinnamon, Ginger, Diambra, each a ſcruple; Citron peels, Quinces, each half a ſcruple; white Sugar candy two ounces*: infuſe them twenty four hours in Spirit of Wine to a pint, and then ſtrain, then give an ounce two hours afore meat.

Dr. *Andrew Doret* his Mechoacan Pills. Take *Mechoacan half an ounce, Turbith three drams, Cambogia, Danewort, and Elder ſeed, Agarick, each two drams; Spurge roots, Maſtich, each a dram and half; Cinnamon, Stil gem, each two drams*; pouder them, and with Rheniſh-wine make a Maſs, dry it, and add juyce of Orris; dry it again, and make it up with Syrup of Spina cervina, and a little Oyl of Dill.

Pills of Spurge. Take *Troches of Eſula half an ounce, Aloes ſix drams, with Honey of Roſes. and ſix drops of Oyl of Cloves make Pills.*

Troches of Spurge or Eſula, are thus made. Take *roots of ſmall Spurge, waſh and cleanſe, and then ſteep them hot twenty four hours in Goats milk, put away the Milk, and add Vinegar, in which Aniſeeds have been infuſed for a night, pour it off after two daies, and pouder it, and with Wine and Gum Traganth and drops of Oyl of Aniſeeds, make Troches.*

A rare Pouder. Take *Jalap half an ounce,*

Mechoacan, Sea-bindweed, Danewort seeds, each four scruples; Cambogia two scruples, Anise, Cinnamon, each a dram; give a dram in Wine.

Chymical Medicines.

Luna purgens, or purging Silver: first make this. Take *white Vitriol two pound, Salt-peeter a pound, distil them.* Then Take *Silver purged by lead in plates an ounce, the Water mentioned as much as you think fit, set upon the embers, and the Liquor will be sky-coloured, add Salt-peeter fixed half an ounce, or an ounce; digest it in Balneo, or in Horse-dung for a month, then distil it in Balneo, that one part of three be left, keep both diligently.* Take the third part that remains, and distil it three hours in a broad crucible in the sand; break the glass, and you shall find Silver like Alabaster, or sometimes black, sometimes very white and sparkling. Take this Silver in bits, and infuse it in B. M. or Balneo, or in sand, five or six hours in the Liquor that you took before from it, then separate the pure from the impure, and pick up that which is like Crystal in a cold place, extract a little from the other, and place it again in a Cellar, and all will be Crystal-like; dry them, and keep them well. But these Medicines disturb the bowels, therefore you must consider his strength.

Use Clysters of *Mercury, Beets, Soldanella, Chamomil flowers, each a handful; Centaury half a handful, Carthamus seeds half an ounce, Fennel and Cummin seed, each two drams; Bay berries half an ounce, boyl them to a pint;* Fernelius *his quick-silver dissolved, Oyl of Elder, Rue, each an ounce; make a Clyster:* some add the urin of a manchild with a little Leaven.

You may externally take out water. Apply the

the roots and bark of Dwarf-elder bruised to the belly, or Oyl of Dwarf-elder seeds: or Oyntment of *Agrippa*, Sowbread, or of *Fernelius de Lathritide*; or this of *Andernacus*. Take *juice of wild Cowcumbers and Dwarf-elder, each four ounces; Oyl of Jasmine and Orris, each two ounces; with Wax make an Oyntment for the navel.*

Another out of *Varandæus*. Take *wild Cowcumbers and Briony, each an ounce; boyl them in Oyl, add pulp of Coloquintida, Agarick, each two drams; Danewort seeds and Scammony, each a dram; black Hellebore, Antimony, each a scruple; with a little Wax.*

Also Diureticks are better to void that water in the reins, then that in the belly: as Sassaphras it strengthens the belly, and increaseth the natural heat, and drieth gently; or a dram of pouder of Earth-worms in a decoction of Diuretick Roots.

Or Diacurcuma, Dialacca in Troches, from a dram to two with proper Liquor, or Troches of Rhubarb or Capars: use them often to take away the antecedent cause and obstructions. Some cure with Spanish flies thus. Take *one Spanish flie without the head and feet, of the four cold Seeds, each half an ounce; Sugar candy, and of Violets, each two ounces, gum of Cherries, or Trangamb six drams, make a pouder, give half an ounce.* *Capivac. lib. de infer. affec.*

Sweats are best in an Anasarca, where the water is in the superficies, with this Water. Take *Guajacum two pound, Elicampane roots two ounces, Personata, Orris, each an ounce; Chamomil flowers a handful, juyce of Danewort berries four ounces, Treacle, Diatessaron two ounces and half, Conserve of Elder a pound and half, Cinnamon water an ounce and half, Wine two measures*: digest them twenty

four hours, then distil them in ashes, give four ounces.

Celsus lib. 5. c. 5. A hot house is good, or dry bath, and last of all cutting, onely in Ascites; when it grows great speedily, and purgers will not prevail, while there is strength, as *Hippocrates* saies he must be presently cut, while there is no feaver, ulcer in the lungs, loosness, leanness, while young, and before the bowels be rotten. This cutting is to be in the navel, as nature sheweth, when she stretcheth the navel into a large shining blister. Cupping glasses were applied by *Plauerus* to the navel. When this cutting is practised by which some are cured, or by a wound made by chance, the water must be let out by degrees, six or seven ounces every day, as the strength affords. This must be a good way which nature seeks and opens. The navel-vessels grow not together, after a child is born; nor do they loose their natural conformation, but the navel-vein and the Urachos are opened sometimes, and the urine and other water come forth, and sometimes out of the cods.

Some scarifie the legs, but it must be done warily, in the fleshy part gently; to avoid Symptoms and the wound, must be at a distance, and the water must be taken away with a soft cloath, not rubbing the part; and the part must be anointed with white Oyntment about to defend it, and inflammation prevented. There is the same reason for issues and blisters, but few have escaped by these.

Some medicines cure insensibly, the internal are Sweats and discussers, Decoction of Sassaphras, Guajacum, Salt of Wormwood, Salts of Treacle, Mithridate, these pierce wonderfully.

These

These are best when the water is in the circumference: the external remedies are better, as bags of Bran, Milium, Cummin boyled in wine, or this Plaister. Take *Oyntment of Sowbread, Agrippa, each an ounce; roots of Danewort, Arum, Briony, Orris, each two drams; Sulphur vive, Pigeons dung, each three drams; Oil of Scorpions six drams Boys urin, and Honey make a Cataplasm for the whole body*; keep it from the stomach and liver: *Galen, Mercatus* and *Platerus* have more of these

Wash the swollen leggs with salt water, with Elder and Danewort, Bay and Juniper-berries: or dip a Spunge in it, and squeeze it, and roul it on, till the tumor abates. Though the swelling of the legs and cods abate, after the distemper is abated, and the cause removed; when you fear a gangrene from ulcerated legs, wash them with Wine, wherein Coltsfoot is boyled, with Mastich, Frankincense, Mirrh, Litharge. And strenthen the bowels with this. Take *Troches of Wormwood and Mugwort, each an ounce; of Rhubarb, Lacca, each a dram and half; the liver of a Wolf half an ounce, Diarrhodon, Aromaticum rosatum, each a dram; Conserve of Elder flowers six drams, Mithridate two drams, with Syrup of Agrimony make an Electuary: or give prepared Steel.*

Of an Ascites from Colliquation or melting.

When the belly swells from Colliquation, all strength is gone, and it is almost incurable. Only; 1. Alter and correct the heat that melteth. 2. Evacuate the matter: the first is done by diet and Medicine, given and applied, to abate the heat: Outwardly Cataplasms, Epithems, cold Oyntments for the breast and liver, as in melting

sea-

seavers. The second is by Purges, and Diuretick, or Sweats.

The Diet. Abstain from moist things; let the air be hot and dry, only let broaths be of Hens, red Peaſe, Oats, the bread made with Aniseeds, Fennel, Coriander: give wild Fowl of the mountaines, and Larks. Season them with Cinnamon, Cloves, Anise, Fennel, Parsley, Thyme and Garlick. Summer fruits and herbs must be avoided, except Asparagus, Hops, Watercresses: Raisons bitter Almonds, Olives. Drink little, and that white Wine that provokes urin. drunk from a narrow mouth-vessel; or chew Raisons and Liquorish to quench thirst: let the belly be loose, and affections moderated.

Iachin. in 9. rhas. c. 22. Beniven. de abd. sanat. cap. c. 13.

Question 1. *Whether the Ascites be only from the Liver offended?*

Gal. lib. 5. de lo. aff. c. 7. Actic. lib. sect. 14. tr. 4. c. 4. Lib. 1. de morb. mulier. The Ancients thought that Ascites came only from a cold Liver, but Anatomies have proved the contrary: And *Hippocrates* saith, *That it is from the spleen, which being thin and spungy, draweth water to it.* It is also from the kidnies, guts and bladder; for if the kidnies be stopt or weak, and cannot attract the Serum, there is a Dropsie: or if the guts have holes, and the party dieth not presently, but the water falls into the cavity of the belly, the belly swells. It may also be after cutting, for the stone when the wound is not well, but superficially healed.

It may also be from the womb; when the Liver is sound, as *John Hinzius* reports of a Maid by ill diet that had her terms stopt, and her belly swollen, and desired to take away the scandal of being with child, that she might be opened after death: and her stones were swollen, ful of bladders,

ders, and they sent water into the belly.

Also *Hippocrates* saith, *That a Dropsie may be from melting, the Liver being sound, or a Dysenery, Lientery, or Diarrhœa* : So saith *Galen*. *Lib. 1. epid. sec. 2. t. 35. & 36.*

Therefore consider what part is in fault, why the water is in the belly, which is the continent cause of the Dropsie : which we shall shew in the next Question. *3. De symp. ca. 2.*

Question 2. *What is the first Cause of Collection of water in Ascites?*

Authors differ, I shal give my opinion, for the cure cannot be, except the cause and manner of collection be known.

My opinion is embraced of *Charles Piso* that famous Physitian : and I suppose that the water is gathered without the liver. First, in the stomach, from portions of chyle, that come not to the proper waies of evacuation, and cannot get to the kidnies, but stop in the meseraicks, belly, veins and omentum, because the Serum goes not to the spleen, liver, nor kidnies : therefore when the Serum is not rightly distributed, it is from hurt of the attractive faculty, because in the bowels, chiefly the liver and spleen, the natural heat is defective, which is the instrument of all actions. Now heat is wanting in these parts, because it is cooled with cold diet, or outward things, or suffocated as in Plethory ; or dissipated by things that consume the natural moisture, as Feavers, and strong Wine, and hot Medicines. *Causa collectionis aquæ.*

The distribution also of the Serum, is hindered by straitness of the vessels ; for though the attractive faculty be good, if the vessels be strait, through which the Serum should pass, there is

no attraction; hence it is, that a Dropsie often follows a Quartane. 3. The distribution of water is not from an external error, because more Serum comes to the spleen, then can be attracted from it; as when it is too hot, and draws Serum too fast.

The same is when the spleen or liver have an old Scirrhus, which cannot be cured, nor the Dropsie that comes from it.

Hence consider, that it is true in part, what the Ancients held, but they are as remote Causes only, not immediate.

But the Chymists say, of a Dropsie coming from salt dissolved, is rejected by Physitians, and I condemn it.

Question 3. *By what passages doth water in a Dropsie get to the cavity of the belly?*

I hold their opinion best, that say it goes by the branches of the gate vein that are in the Omentum, and especially by the Gastroepiploick, or Belly, Cawl-vein, from the branches of the gate-vein, where it is stopt into the Omentum, and so by their coats, being made thin, or their mouths opened, into the cavity of the abdomen. For water gathered by meat and drink, except it be drawn by the liver or spleen, to go to the kidnies, is lodged in those passages; and if it go not back to the stomach, it gets into the veins of the Omentum, and opens them: or unless it get to the spleen, and to the hollow of the liver. This *Hippocrates* teacheth, saying: *Drink is carried into the stomach, and when it is full, the spleen takes it and sends it to the veins, and to the Omentum*: and so he saith in his Book of womens Diseases. And it is reason, for a Dropsie often is from sudden ful-

Hippocr. 4. de morbis.

fulneſs of drink; and the ſpleen ſucks it in, and it is ſent to the Omentum, and ſo diſtils into the belly, the ſame may be, if it ſtops in the Meſentery, for every part ſends it to another, when it cannot contain it; and there is no nearer or fitter part for the ſpleen to diſcharge it ſelf, then the Omentum, becauſe it hath veins onely from the gate-vein: in its upper membrane it hath both Gaſtroepiplois, in the lower Epiplois, and ſo many arteries from the Cœliack and Meſentery. And experience ſhews, that the Omentum is rotten in many Anatomies.

Water is eaſily gathered alſo in the Pancreas or Sweet bread, for it hath the ſpleen-vein in the middle that goes to the ſpleen, and the left branch of the cœliack artery.

Queſtion 4. *Whether is Rhubarb good againſt Dropſies?*

Some allow it; others deny it: but look to the cauſe of a Dropſie, for if it be choler in the Meſeraicks and Liver, which corrupts the natural heat of the bowels; and if thick, cauſeth obſtructions, and turns ſometimes to ſtones, as after a long Jaundies and heavet: then Rhubarb is good, but in other cauſes, uſe purgers of water (mentioned) to which you may add Rhubarb to ſtrengthen the bowels.

Chap. 4. *Of a Tympany.*

THe Ancients to diſtinguiſh this from Aſcites, called it a dry Dropſie; the immediate cauſe being wind in the cavity of the abdomen or guts, this is ſeldom alone, but with water,

ter, so that we can scarce tell sometimes which is most; it is hard to know how this breeds: therefore we say that two things are required for breeding of wind, first a thick matter, and commonly black choler, for they who have this in the stomach, have much wind, and belch much: and if wind be detained, the belly is stretched, and this kind of Dropsie is produced.

2. As for the antecedent Cause, the heat is weak, not simply, but in respect of the matter which it cannot overcome: sometimes the heat is great, and works suddenly upon the matter, and rarifies it, as in a Tympany, which differs from Ascites in matter and in efficient.

The wind gets into the cavity of the abdomen by the mouths of the Meseraicks: or while they are held between the coats they pierce through, or some part of the Serum is turned to vapors by the heat of the bowels, and not finding passage, they get into the abdomen, and stretch it.

The Signs. The belly struck sounds like a drum, and it is less then in Ascites, the eares rumbling and belly-ach about the navel; if he lie on his back, his belly is hard and stretched out.

The Prognostick. This is most dangerous: if old, it goes into an habit. A Tympany from black choler, is commonly deadly.

Indications and Cure. First, evacuate the matter that raiseth the wind and remove the cause that breeds it, then discuss the wind; if there be water and flegm, mix things to purge them: let them against wind be most, to evacuate the antecedent matter, and that which breeds wind, use things that open the livers, spleen and meseraicks.

As, Take *pills of Hiera with Agarick, Turbith,*

Rhu-

Rhubarb, each two ſcruples; Soldanella half a dram, Aſarum roots a ſcruple, troches of Alhandal, Elaterium, Nutmeg, Galangal, Cinnamon, Pepper, Cubebs, each half a ſcruple; with juyce of Orris make Pills: give a ſcruple or two with Oxymel of Squills.

To diſcuſs wind. Take *Galangal, Cinnamon, each a dram and half; Pepper a ſcruple, dried Citron peels a dram, Aniſe, Caraway ſeed, each two drams; wood Aloes, Nutmeg. each a dram; with Sugar of Roſes as much as all, make a Pouder.* Or give Clyſters againſt wind.

After evacuation, apply Cupping-glaſſes to the belly without Scarification, the Plaiſter of Bay berries, rub with the juyce of Garlick Some fill a large earthen pot with hot aſhes, and ſprinkle Carrot ſeed, Fennel, Cummin, and cover it with a cloath, and whelm it upon the belly as hot as may be endured.

Or uſe Baggs of Milium, Salt or Bran, with ſeeds of Carrot, Aniſe, Cummin, Fennel parched, &c. *Mercatus* bids us uſe cold things, if hot do no good give Wine and Water with Saſſaphras and Citron peels.

Queſtion 1. *How doth wind breed in a Tympany.*

Not onely the ſtomach and guts are cauſes of wind that gets into the belly, but ſometimes it breeds between the coats of the Meſentery and guts, when thick matter that is crude, is in the paſſages from the ſtomach to the hollow of the liver, eſpecially when they are obſtructed, the heat acting upon that matter, cauſeth much wind.

But it is diſputed, whether a cold or a hot mat-

matter breeds wind: we say that in a Tympany the heat is parching rather then weak, so that it doth not act kindly upon the chyle, but turns the thinner parts into wind and vapors. The same heat may be said to be weak, in respect of the matter, which it cannot conquer, but it is too much, in respect of the part affected, because it is above the natural ten per.

Question 2. *Which way doth the wind get into the cavity of the belly?*

Fernel and *Plater* differ about this, *Plater* I like best, because he adds other causes of gathering wind, then *Fernel* doth; namely, that they are bred in the cavity of the belly, when water is there, and turned to wind by heat of the bowels, of which we have spoken.

Chap. 5. *Of Anasarca.*

IT is also called Leucophlegmacy, and is very like a Cachexy, onely it is greater, because here the coldness of the liver and veins is greater, and the matter which is crude in the veins and habit of the body is more, and the body all over moister.

This Pegmatick and crude blood is bred from a cold distemper of the liver; this distemper is either from too much blood, which oppreseth the heat, so that it cannot breed good blood, but crude; or from abundance of crudities, from both internal and external causes. It is often in women from stoppage of their terms, and in women with child, when the child is weak, and draws not nourishment enough. Sometimes it

is from too great a flux of terms or Hæmorrhoids, when the heat of the body is wholly weakned

I suppose it cannot be from a great cold in the feet.

The body is equally swollen, the feet especially, and the leggs at night, and they pit, nor doth the swelling abate at night as in a Cachexy; the flesh is soft, pale and loose: the urine thin and white, breath short, and a feaver. *The Signs.*

In this Dropsie there is less danger, because the flegm hath a beginning of concoction, and comes nearer to the nature of blood; if a strong Diarrhæa comes, it cures the disease, provided the strength be good to bear it, and there be not too many humors, for then the patient dies. *The Prognostick.* *Hipp. 7. aphor. 9.*

First let the water spread through the flesh be evacuated and consumed, then strengthen the liver. If it be from stoppage of terms or Hæmorrhoids or plethory, open a vein least the heat of the liver be overcome by abundance of crude blood; do it at first, and take but little: if blood be bad in the whole body, open the arm: if it be from stoppage of Hæmorrhoids, first open the arm then the foot, otherwaies open the foot-vein only. If it come from another cause that hath not fulness of blood with it, let not blood, least you cool the body. *Indications and Cure.*

After bleeding vomit and purge to empty the first passages, every week vomit twice, then prepare with Oxymel, Syrup of the two and the five roots of Hyssop, Calamints, with the Decoction of opening Roots.

Danewort and Mechoacan are good to purge, and Agarick, Turbith Diacarthamum, with Rhubarb to strengthen, so the antecedent Cause being taken away, many are cured, for nature

takes away the conjunct Cause.

If it come from loss of blood which dissipates the Spirits, and cools the liver, be wary, for things that stop blood are enemies; therefore use Wormwood, Bettony, Spike.

Gal. 1. *de simpl. med. fac.* c. 7.

To evacuate the matter from the habit of the body, rub with rough cloaths, or dip a sponge in salt water and Brimstone, and rub. Or use Sulphur, or Spaw-waters, or the Clay of Sulphur-baths.

Use dried Cow-dung with Wine, and Oxymel, and Sulphur for a Cataplasm, or add Cockle shells in pouder. Anoint the legs, hands, and other swollen parts with this Oyntment. Take

Forest. lib. 9. *obser.* 31. *quick Brimstone, Frankincense, Allum equal parts, beat them with Vinegar.* Or, Take *quick Frogs, boyl them in Oyl in a new pot, and anoint the belly downwards with it.*

Scarifying is good in the thighs, if there be strength to fetch out the water, still strengthen the liver, and give such things as provoke urin, as Wormwood-wine, and the Decoction with Elicampane, Dialacca, Diacrocuma, Troches of Rhubarb and of Wormwood.

The Diet. Let it be drying, hot and extenuating, because fasting consumes the humors. It is good to give the Decoction of Guajacum and Sassaphras for ordinary drink.

Chap. 6. *of pain in the Liver.*

INflammation and wind, are two causes of pain in the Liver, of the one we have spoken. But a stretching pain about the Liver, comes from a thick

thick matter and wind that is lodged between the membrane and substance of the Liver: but it differs from an inflammation, because in this a a fever presently appears; the pain in the bunchy part of the Liver goes to the breast, in the hollow of the Liver, to the belly and guts: if a fever comes, the matter is discussed.

In a great pain, open the Basilica or Liver-vein of the right arm, or cup below the Liver to direct: and after you have prepared the matter that breeds wind, and nourisheth it, purge it away. *The Cure.*

Then use Topicks outwardly. As, Take *Chamomil tops of Dill, Rue, each a handful; red Roses half a handful, Anise, Fennel seeds each three drams; Schœnanth two drams, boyl them in water, to two pints for a Fomentation.* Anoint after with Oyl of Wormwood, bitter Almonds, Rue. Let the diet be of things that breed not wind.

Chap. 7. *Of the Faundies.*

IT is called the Kings-disease or *Aurigo*, from gold-colour and over-flowing of the gall; it is a yellow preternatural colour of the whole body, or green or black from a humor of the colour, which is spread in the skin, therefore it is a Symptom in a visible quality changed, the subject is the skin of the whole body, the immediate cause is a humor of the same colour, the humor underneath is not alwaies one, nor hath it one cause, as we shall shew.

If you look into the white of the eyes, you may see it. *The Signs.*

One is yellow, from the obstruction of the gal, *The Differences.*

gall or its stoppage by stones. Another is from abundance of choler, and that is twofold, either from the hot distemper of the liver with a feaver, or without; or from inflammation, when the choler is so much, that the gall cannot hold it. The third is a Jaundies from biting of mad creatures, or from poyson, both yellow and black, of which by themselves.

Of the yellow Jaundies from the obstruction of the gall.

When the gall is stopt, the choler remains in the liver, and is sent with the blood into the hollow vein, and so into the whole body, and stains the skin. It is stopt either by stones or thick flegm, or choler which is much or thick.

The Signs. The excrements of the belly are white, being not stained by the choler: you must consider whether it be from a fault in the liver, for then there is stretching about the liver, and heavinesse in the right side; if the liver be not hurt, the gal is in a fault, and it comes of a sudden, and the urin is thick, there is no loss of strength, if a feaver be absent.

The Prognostick. 6. Aphor. 42. The yellow is cured easier then the black Jaundies, and that which comes from an obstruction of the gall, is cured only by a Medicine to purge choler, that from the stone is scarce cured. If the liver be hard, it is evil; and if there be great obstructions with a Scirrhus in the liver, it threatens a Dropsie.

The Cure. It is done by opening Medicines and purgers, in a strong disease, go from light to strong means. First, evacuate the passages. As, Take *Rhubarb four scruples, Cinnamon a scruple, infuse them in Dodder and Grass-water, in four ounces strained, dissolve*

dissolve Electuary of juyce of Roses two drams, Syrup bizantine, and of Roses, each an ounce and half. Vomits are good, they cleanse and fetch from the Hypochondria.

Preparatives. Take *the opening Roots three drams Succory half an ounce, Melon seeds husked two drams, red Peas half an ounce. Dodder, Agrimony, each a handful; white Horehound half a handful, Raisons six drams, juniper-berries twenty, boyl them, to 1 pint strained add Syrup bizantine four ounces: give it at thrice.* If the disease be stubborn, give steeled Wine; you may purge and open thus. Take *Horehound, Dodder, Maidenhair, each a handful; red Pease two drams, Parsley and Strawberry roots, each half an ounce; Asarum two drams, Raisons two ounces, boyl and add Senna three ounces, Agarick half an ounce, Rhubarb three drams, Anise, Fennel, Broom seeds each two drams; strain and add Manna an ounce and half: give him to drink Wine, and Grass, Asparagus or Parsley water.* Let diet be thin, with bitter Almonds fasting.

Of the Jaundies from a hot Liver without a Feaver.

Somtimes from a distemper in the liver, there is more choler then can be evacuated by usual waies; it is known when the urin and stools are of a saffron-colour, with a feaver, and burning feet and hands.

It is not very dangerous, because there is no feaver nor inflammation. *The Prognostick.*

Succory and Endive-medicines are excellent, take heed of astringents, lest they fasten the choler that staies in the small vessels, and cause inflammation, and increase obstructions. *The Cure.*

Of a critical Jaundies in an acute Feaver.

If the Jaundies comes after acute Feavers by way of Crisis, you shall know it by the presence of an acute feaver, and the signs of concoction went before, and then the urin and the stools are of their natural colour, because the choler is sent to the circumference of the body

There is no danger here, but rather the disease is cured, because the humor offending is sent to the ignoble parts.

Therefore use no Medicines, but if need be, help it out by Frictions, Sudorificks, and beholding of yellow things.

Of the Symptomatical Jaundies in Feavers.

If nature endeavor this excretion before concoction, as sometimes being forced to it by sharpness or malignity: it is known by the acute feaver, and before signs of concoction appear, one a day not critical, the stools and urin are not of a good colour, because nature doth not work fortunately.

The Prognostick. Lib. 4. 62. It is an Aphorisme in *Hippocrates*, *They who have the Jaundies by means of a Feaver, before the seventh day, it is evil.* This must be explained, for if the signs of concoction appear before the seventh day, it is not evil, and if the Jaundies appear on the eleventh or fourteenth day, before the signs of concoction, it is evil, for a Crisis is not to be esteemed by the number of the daies, but by the concoction. But *Hippocrates* in this place propounds an example onely of a critical Jaundies, before the seventh day with the chief critical day. This *Galen* teaches plainly, saying, *3 Epid. com. 1. sent. 5.* That before concoction of the matter, there is no impo-

impoſthume nor Jaundies good, for it ſignifies that the choler is hindered, that it cannot get out of the bowels by ſtool, either by inflammation or obſtruction.

Moreover obſerve, in the Jaundies if the humors be evacuated, and the ſtrength hold, and the diſeaſe vanish, then it is good: nor is the Jaundies upon a critical day alwaies good, nor that which is with hardneſs of the Hypochondria: for *Hippocrates* ſaith, *That in the Jaundies a hard Liver is evil.* The Jaundies with chilneſs cures the diſeaſe by evacuation and expulſion of the feaveriſh matter from the bowels and veins to the skin.

This deſires no peculiar Cure, for it ceaſeth with the feaver, therefore direct the whole cure to that, and regard the liver, and evacuate choler, except it be critical. *Indications and Cure.*

Of the Jaundies from inflammation of the Liver.

Look at the inflammation onely, it is known by its proper ſigns, from too much choler, which taken away, and hindered to breed, the Jaundies ceaſe.

Of the Jaundies from biting of a venemous beaſt.

Some beaſt corrupt the blood, as a Viper, whoſe bite turns the colour of the whole body, like leeks, and ſo doth poyſon.

How can this be? Authors differ; *Galen* pleaſeth me, ſaying, *It is the property for poyſons to corrupt the humors*: For the leaſt portion in the body is like leaven, and ſpreadeth into the whole maſs of blood, and corrupts it; ſo that it is of this or that colour, as the poyſon is: neither is it neceſſary that choler ſhould alwaies abound

before, nor that the evil quality be only fixed in the liver to breed choler, because the change is sudden, and that yellow or green humor is not choler, but a malignant venemous humor, from corruption of all humors.

The Signs. When there is a sudden strange colour, yellow, or black, or green, enquire if it be from a venemous heat, that can corrupt the blood, and discolour it, or from poyson which you shall hear by the party or the standers by: if there be no change of colour, the poyson will shew it self by weakness, fainting, swounding.

The Prognostick. All venemous diseases are malignant; and this is dangerous, according to the vehemency of the cause

The Cure. Suddenly expel the poyson; if it be in the first passages, take a Vomit speedily, then Antidotes proper against the nature of the poyson if it be known, or some common Antidote, as Treacle, Mithridate Bezoar: if there be a manifest hot quality with the poyson, oppose it with juyce of Citrons and Apples, juyce of Pomegranates, waters of Endive, Sorrel, Purslane.

If it be from a bite or sting, draw the venom out at the part affected: and also give Antidotes. So *Abinzoar* gave Bezoar to *Hali's* Son, with Gourd water, Bezoar to expel the poyson, and the water to abate the heat; it is good to give Pomegranate water, and juyce of sharp Apples.

THE

THE NINTH PART OF THE THIRD BOOK.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Kidnies and Ureters.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Kidnies and Ureters.

Chap. 1. *A Paradox concerning the uſe of the Kidnies.*

THE common opinion is, that their uſe is to draw the Serum from the maſs of blood, ſo that it may go more pure into the veins: but the Scripture ſeems to allow them ano-

ter use, and God is said to try the heart and reins. The Divines mean by reins, the lust and concupiscence.

Let us consider the nature of them: if they have any other use then attraction and cleansing of the Serum. *Galen* attributes elaboration to the liver, and to the making of arterial blood, and why should not the reins, being of a peculiar substance, do that which is its office? 2. The emulgent vein is the largest that comes from the hollow vein, and seems to shew the same: for it brings more blood to the kidnies, then is fit to nourish them, therefore the remainder is for other uses. 3. It needed not so great an artery, unless they had some other office, namely, to change and work the blood which is mixed both arterial and venal together, and purged from the Serum, and to make it fit for seed.

6. De decre. Hipp. & Plato l. 8.

4. In the running of the reins, we prescribe Medicines for the loyns to diminish seed, as is plain in *Aetius* and *Trallianus*.

5. Among the signs of hot kidnies, are reckoned lustful dreams, and night polutions, and the qualities of the seed are taken from the constitution of the kidnies; if it be hot and sharp, it is from the heat of the kidnies. Also the original of the preparing vessels confirms the same. Therefore, and for these reasons we may doubt of the use of the kidnies, as Authors vulgarly declare.

Chap. 2. *Of the distemper of the Kidnies, and first of a hot and dry Distemper.*

The Causes

THey have it from hot Causes, first internal and external; as heat of the parts adjacent,

cent, as the liver, the great veins, and arteries, a hot and dry matter, either gathered by the kidnies, or sent unto them.

The external Causes are nourishment or Medicines that are hot, especially if they be Diuretick, lying upon the back, upon feather-beds, hot cloaths and baths, long and violent exercise.

It is known from a hot Cause aforegoing, and sense of heat about the kidnies, hot urin, thin, and plentiful, and sharp, with fat at the top, and red gravel at the bottom, lust, often night pollutions, and lustful dreams: hot things hurt. *The Sign*

At first it is easily cured, if it be old, and dryness joyned with it, it is to be cured. *The P gnostick*

Use Coolers. As, Take *Succory roots and all, Endive, Lettice, Purslane, Bugloss, Borage, Maidenhair, each a handful; four great cold Seeds, each two drams; flowers of Violets, Water-lillies, each a pugil; boyl them in Whey, to a pint strained add juyce of Pomegranates and Lemmons, each two ounces: give it at thrice.* Or, Take *Strawberry water and Violet water, each three ounces; Syrup of Violets, Sorrel, Citrons, each an ounce; Spirit of Vitriol two drops.* Or make Emultions of cold Seeds. *The Cu*

Outward things, are Epithems of Waters and Juyces of Lettice, Purslane, Water lillies, Housleek, Oyl of Roses Violets, Water lillies, Ointment of Roses, or *Galens* Cooler, Cerot of Sanders.

Eat Ptisan of Barley, and Sauce of juyce of Pomegranates and Currans. If there be choler, purge with Cassia.

Of the cold distemper of the Kidnies.

Things that cool the kidnies too much, o the parts *The Cause*

parts adjacent, as the Guts, Liver, Spleen, cold humors, cold medicines, air, winds, snow, or baths.

It is known by causes that were cold, the Urin is little, thin and crude, little desire of venery, hot things do good.

The Prognostick. It is dangerous when the serum cannot be separated by reason of the coldness of them, these fall into a Cachexy.

Signs. The Reins are to be made hot with *roots of Fennel, Ruchers broom Sparagus, Parsley, Burnet, Eryngus, Satyrion, Pettony, Agrimony, Calaminis, Mints, Sage, Rosemary, flowers of Lavender, Betony, seeds of Rocket, Water cresses, Parsley Fennel, Juniper berries, bitter Almonds, Peach kernels and medicines thereof.* Anoynt with the oyntments of the same, and let the diet be according.

Chap. 3. *Of the number of the Kidnies altered, and some diseases in them.*

Arist. 4. de hist. anim. Gal. lib. 4. de morb. vulgar. Vesal. lib. 5. de instit. corpo. fabri. cap. 5. &

THere hath been but one Kidney found when there should be two, they have been seen whitish and blackish, brittle and rotten, hard and dry, rough above, and wind under their membranes; there is also great difference in the Emulgents, which are seldom known in live persons and cannot be cured.

Chap.

Chap. 4 Of the streitnes of the vessels in the Kidnies.

IF the vessels be not open they cannot send the humors drawn by the emulgents to the Ureters, their straitnes is by compression or obstruction, compression is from tumors or drines of the kidnies which contracts their substance, they are obstructed by thick slimy humors, matter, clotred blood, stones, so that no humor descends to the bladder, all these are either bred in the Kidnies from evil gross diet, or idlenes, or come from other parts.

Stoppage of urine or little urine shews straitnes of vessels, if there be no fault in the bladder or ureters and both kidnies are stopt, for one wil officiate for the other: there is a sense of heavines and stretching about the Loyns, the Hypochondria swell, and there are other symptomes which follow stoppage of urine, you may know the signs of the causes thus, inflammation and tumor are known by their proper signs, obstruction is known from gross slimy humors and heavines in the kidnies, there is neither feaver nor pain as in the stone, blood goes first out, and pissing of blood, the causes of opening the veins, are a fall, stroak, or riding, if matter stop them, there is an impostume or ulcer, and some of the matter is in the urine. *The Sign*

A great tumor causeth a dangerous straitnes, and the greater the cause the worse is the danger, an obstruction from a gross slimy humor is eadly opened, it is harder, if it be from a stone, and sometimes it is incurable. *The Prognostick*

It

The Cure. It is divers from the diversity of the causes: for if it be from inflammation or a tumor, it must be cured as in Chap. 8 & 9. An obstruction from thick humors is to be cured, first by a gentle evacuation, vomits pull up from the Kidnies, of Radish, Broom flowers and Asarum roots: then give Diureticks, Parsley, Restharrow, Asparagus, winter Cherry water, syrup of the two and the five roots Bisantine, and of Radishes by *Fernel.* see Chap. 2. or give spirit of Salt or of Vitriol in Quitch-grass water. If it come from clotted blood, give Oxymel of squils with the decoction or water of Chervil, Mugwort and Maidenhair. If it come from matter, cleanse that.

To Cure all diseases Read my *Sennertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus,* and *Blinus,* the last edition.

Chap. 5. *Of the opening of Veins in the Kidnies.*

THe Veins and Arteries are opened in the Kidnies by a hot and moist distemper which loosneth and maketh thin the coats of the vessels, or by hot and thin blood, and humors that are sharp, or by violent motion, roughness of stones, or by a fall or a stroak.

The Signs. They piss blood, but in small quantity when any vessel is made thin so that blood may breath or sweat through it.

The Prognostick. There is more danger when a great vessel is broke.

The Cure. It is by Astringents and Healers as Plantane, Shepherds purse, Comfrey, Tormentil, Tragacanth, Bole, sealed Earth, &c.

Chap.

Page 319 is missing
from this volume.

Page 320 is missing
from this volume.

The first sign of a stone in the kidnies is pain in the loyns, in the right or left kidney, or both, with heavinesse, because the substance of the kidnies is not of exquisite sense, and if the stone fall from the kidnies into the ureters the pain is intolerable; or when a stone bred in the substance of the kidnies moves from the flesh to the cavity of them, and being hard and sharp, tears the parts through which it passeth. *The Si*

Another sign is bloody urine, because the parts are wounded by it. And at the beginning of the stoppage, little watery urine is rendered and after that it stops, but when the stone is removed from the kidnies, there is much troubled urine with a thick sediment: a stone in the substance of the kidnies doth not stop the urine.

The certain sign of the stone, and a disposition thereunto, is when a stone is voided, numbnesse of the thigh on that side, because the nerve that goes to the muscles of the thighs, is pressed by the stone, or the muscle that the kidnies lean upon; also the stone on that side is drawn, and there is loathing and vomit, by reason of connexion of the kidnies with the stomach by the Peritonæum, both parting of its membrane and by reason of the nerves of the sixth conjugation, that come from the stomach to the coat of the kidnies.

Two things distinguish the pain of the Colick from that of the stone, the condition of the pain, and the situation of the part. That, the pain is greater in the kidnies. Secondly, if the pain be about the kidnies it is of the stone, but the colick. Also the colick changes, and moves from place to place, but the stone is fixed, and when the stone is [illegible] it moves to the

bladder it goes in the track of the ureters. There is noyse heard and fmbling in the Colick, and not in the Stone: In the Stone the urine by reason of obstruction is first thin and crude, and then is voided with some gravel or blood, but in the Colick it is red at first and thick.

The Prognostick. The greater symptoms, as violent pain watching, weakness, make the greater danger; pain from a great rough stone that cannot pass through the ureters, is deadly. If it be hæreditary, it is scarce to be cured, and also in old men.

is Cure. There is a threefold end in the cure. 1. To hinder the breeding of the Stone. 2. To take it away when it is bred. 3. To take away the pain: For the first two things are requisite. 1. Good diet that wil not breed the stone. 2. Evacuation to take away the matter bred, avoid therefore such food as breeds it, and crudities, and gluttony, and variety of meats, and use things that are of easie concoction and have but little excrement.

As mutton, Veal, yolks of Eggs, Brook-fish, bitter Almonds, Pistacha's, Pine-nuts, Peach-kernels, Cherries, Figs, red Pease, Mallows, Succory, Orange, Parsley, Asparagus, and Chervil which is excellent.

Be sure to evacuate superfluities that wil breed the stone, and arise from the best diet, before they come to the kidnies, by vomiting twice or thrice in a month, or by a gentle purge every two or three months to cleanse the first passages, nor must you only regard flegm but other humors, especially watrish and Salt.

Take *Hydromel* eight ounces, *Asparagus water* two ounces, *Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb* an ounce.

Crystal

Crystal of Tartar two scruples, or Sugar candied two drams: give it at twice.

To clense the kidnies. Take *Cassia half an ounce, Turpentine two drams, with pouder of Liquorish and sugar make a Bole.*

If blood abound open the Basilica, and then hinder the breeding of the Stone. as Saxifrage, Burnet, Parsley, Peanel Dock roots, Dropwort, Radish, Capars, Leaves of Bettony, Maidenhair, Ground Ivy, Ceterach, Chervil, Pellitory, Pauls Bettony, Broom flowers, Gromwel seeds, Parsley seed, Ivy berries, juyce of Citrons Lemons, Crystal of Tartar, Spirit of Salt and of Vitriol.

Crato commends the juyce and syrup of Pauls Bettony, with the distilled water, or whis made of the juyce of it. To take away pain and clense.

Take *Althæa two drams Raisins stoned three drams, Pauls Bettony and Ground ivy, each a pugil; boyl them, and give a draught with Sugar.*

If the heat of the Liver and Kidnies have raised a hot distemper, use a Bath of sweet water, anoynt the kidnies with oyl of Violets, Oyntment of Roses, *Galens* cooler with Fleabane seeds, Camphire, or foment with milk, Strawberry water and Purslane water, and give emulsions of the cold seeds, and things that cool and moisten.

If the Stone be bred, loosen the passages, and if it cannot be expelled break it and open a vein to prevent a Feaver, if there is open it: give clysters at first of the most Anodynes, or a Lenitive. As, Take *Cassia six drams, Rhubarb two scruples, Turbith newly powdred scruples, Liquorish pouder a scruple, with Sugar.* Or Take *Althea two drams, Prunes two in half an ounce, Li-*

querish a dram, Chamomil flowers and Paals Bettony, each a pugil; Raisons half an ounce, boyl, ad Sennæ three drams, Rowarb a scruple, Cinnamon, Schænanth, Fennel seed, each half a dram, give four ounces of it strained with an ounce of syrup of Roses in the morning.

Anoynt the kidnies with oyl of sweet Almonds, Violets, white Lillies Hens and Goose greafe, Mucilage of Althæa seeds and Fænugreek. or a Cataplasm of Pellitory and others bruised and boyled with Mucilage of Linseed, Althæa, oyl of sweet Almonds. Give syrup of Marshmallows, both in sweet water to open the passages and allay pain, and make the stone go down, Cupping under the stone one after another makes it move down also.

If it be fixed, and too big for the passages, break it, with the simples mentioned, and also with Lapis Judaicus, Spunge stone, Lapis Lyncis, Nephriticus, Crabs-eyes, stones found in the bladder of a Bore or Ox, Perch stones, jaws of Pickrel, Goats blood, Earthworms, Parsley and Gromwel seeds.

Or give a dram of species Lithontribi with fit Liquor.

Ungerus lib. 2 de Nephritide hath many simples and compounds: all are best to be given in a bath.

If pain be great, use opiates, as Treacle, Philonium half a scruple, or three grains of Laudanum when all fal and before the stone is moved from the kidnies, for when it sticks in the ureters Opiates will do no good

Question. *Whether gross meat and milk breed the stone?*

Some say no, because matter of the stone is not

not to be sought in a slimy humor. But we say that the matter or tough is not sufficient without a stone-breeding [illegible] and experience shews that tough things breed the stone. Milk by its butter moistens and softens, but there is much cheese in it which makes tough slew, being full of sharp and salt juyce. If any live upon it, and have not the stone, it is from the strength of the stomach and natural heat; or because the kidnies are not dry, and their passages are large.

Chap. 7. *Of other preternatural things bred in the Kidnies, as Worms.*

THey are not known but when they are voided by urin, and then things that kill worms will cure. *Gent. lib. 3. in Avic Fernel. l. 6. de præt. morb.*

Hairs and Locks.

Hippocrates and others shew that small flesh, or hairs, are voided by urine from the kidnies. *Galen* calls it *Trichiasis*. *Iober. de urin.*

It is probable, that they breed in the kidnies and veins, and it is not impossible, but they may breed in the vessels that come from them to the bladder. They breed of a thick humor dried in the kidnies or meters, which was caused by meat of thick juyce. *Vnier. lib. 3. de præs. dem. c. 15. Hip. 4. ap. Guardon. praf. 20. in aph.*

They are cured by attenuaters, and cutters, and a moist diet.

Chap. 8. *Of Inflammation of the Kidnies.*

The Causes IT is from plenty of blood flowing to them from the liver especially, or from outward hurts, falls, or strokes on the back, or near the kidnies, violent riding, also Diureticks given to a full body.

The Signs. It is known by the heat and redness of the kidnies: the pain either beats, or is heavy, they can neither stand nor go, and when the body is moved, the pain increaseth, there is pain in the leg on that side, the external parts are cold, especially the feet; there is difficult urine, and a feaver by reason of the nearness of the gute-vein. Sometimes they vomit choler, by reason the stomach is affected.

The Prognostick. Inflammation of the kidnies with a feaver and doting, is deadly and dangerous in lean persons. If the urin have matter, and the Symptoms abate not, it is a sign of death. If the Hæmorrhoids flow, it is good; it is worse to bring an inflammation to suppuration, then to discuss it insensibly.

The Cure. First, to open a vein in the arm, and after in the ham or ankle: apply Leeches to the Hæmorrhoids: or close Fictions and Ligatures, evacuate choler from the stomach with Cassia, Tamarinds, Manna, Syrup of Roses, Lenitive Electuary Diaprunis, Catholicon: or give a Clyster to cool and allay pain. Take *Pelitory, Mallows, and Mercury* of each a handful *Linseed* [illegible] *Fenugreek*, boyl them in [illegible] *decoction*, add *Cassia* half an

an ounce, Syrup of Roses two ounces, Oyl of Violets an ounce and half, with the yolk of an Egg make a Clysters.

Provoke not urin, but allay the heat of the blood with Emulsions, Decoctions, or Waters of Violets, Roses, Purslane, Lettice, Sorrel, Winter-cherries.

Epithems of juyce or water of Roses, Lettice, Purslane, Water-lillies, Housleek, Plantane, Gourds, or Cataplasms of the same are good.

In the increase of the disease, add Mallows, Althæa, Line, Fœnugreek seed. Bean flower. In the state you may use the same with bean flower. In the declination, let the greater part be dissolvers, and the less coolers and repellers.

When the disease declines, give gentle Diureticks, as Syrup Bizantine, of the two and five Roots, Maidenhair, with Pellitory and Strawberry water, or the decoction of Sparagus and Fennel, and Grass roots. If it tend to suppuration, help it with ripeners, with decoction of Barley, Althæa seeds, Cowcumbers, Liquorish, Mallows, Pellitory: or with Conserve of Mallow flowers.

Apply a Pultis of Mallows, Pellitory, Althæa, with roots of Lillies, Fœnugreek and Figs boyled in Milk, or make a Clyster of them.

If it come to matter, it is known by the remission of the feaver and pain, heavinesse remaining; if it break not, give things to break and void it by urin, as a decoction of Fennel roots, of Parsley, Smallage, Liquorish and Orris roots, with Maidenhair, Organ, Pennyroyal made in water and Honey: after it is broken, clense and heal.

Let it be cold and moist, Barley, Ptisan bread *The Diet.*

and Hen broath made with Lettice, Endive, Sorrel and Barley water, with Liquorish and Syrup of Violets.

Chap. 9. *Of other Tumors of the Kidnies, and the Consumption of them.*

THey have also cold Tumors and are long in curing. *Bauhinus* saw a whole kidney consumed with matter.

It is known by long pain and pissing of matter, with the Bowley, and if he lie upon his belly, you may feel the tumor, and perceive the quashing of the matter, the Patient consumes, because the ulcer is incurable. Some have cut it open with good success.

Petr. Lacerus. pr. lib. 20. c. 4.

There is sometimes also a Scirrhus from a thick tumor, that gets into a substance of them, and then the urine is little and thin, by reason the kidnies do not their office from weakness of the attractive faculty, and by reason of the stoppage and straitness of the passages, the thin is voided and the thick stays behind, and fouls the blood, and causeth Cachexy. It is incurable, all the hope is by using Emollients and gentle Digesters.

As fat broaths, decoctions of Mallows, Althea, Polypody, Fænugreek Linseed or in powders, with fat broath or water of Mallows, Actuarius, Bdellium and Ammoniacum.

Inject a little oyl of sweet Almonds, Lillies, or applicate an emollient Cataplasm with Goosegreese, Bdellium and Ammoniacum.

Con-

Consumption of the Kidnies.

It is from a hot and dry distemper, from hot and dry causes, and hard to be known at the first: but increasing, the action of the kidnies is hurt, and the substance is harder not to be felt, the serum comes forth by urin, which is white, thin and crude, there is no desire of Venery, and the whole body consumes.

It is hard to be cured, and kills lingring. The use of milk is best, and a warm bath of sweet water and things mentioned against Hecticks.

Chap. 10. *Of Wounds in the Kidnies.*

THey are known by the place where the wound is, the signs are stoppage of urine, or difficulty in voiding it, and it is bloody, the pain in the kidney reacheth to the groyns; you may know whether the wound be great or superficial, thus; if much blood be piled without urine the superficies only and fleshy part is wounded: but if much blood and water flow from the wound, it is a sign that the cavity of the kidnies is affected.

As for the Prognostick, wounds in the kidnies are often deadly and hard to be cured, by reason of the continual flux of humors to them.

The Cure. After univers, if the wound be not deep, use strong Glutinaters, and lay on a glutinating plaster. If it penetrate into the Cavity of the Kidnies, poun in wine that is sharp with Comfry, Solomons Seal and Liquorish boyled in it: or use a Cataplasm of Dates, Bran, Acacia, Hypocistis

cistis boyled in Wine, and when no more blood flows, use Glutinaters inward and outward.

The holy Oyntment is thus made. Take *Rosin twelve ounces, Oyl of Bays, Turpentine, each two ounces; Gum Elemni nine ounces, dissolve the Gums and Rosin at the fire, then add the Oyl and Turpentine, and boyl them up.*

At first, use Troches of Winter-cherries, Amber, with water or decoction of Plantane, Horstail, Solomons-seal; and when you will heal, Gum Traganth, Arabick, sealed Earth, and Turpentine. And the clotted blood stop not the bladder, anoint the pecten with Oyl of Scorpions, or apply a Cataplasm of Pellitory, Mallows and Saxifrage.

The Diet. Let it be of easie concoction, with little drink and rest; an Emultion of the cold Seeds, and broath of white Bread, Eggs, and Rice, and Oatmeal. Give juyce of Quinces in drink, Whey of Goats milk, Barley water, with Liquorish, Jujubes, Sebestens, and cold Seeds.

Chap. 11. *Of Ulcers of the Kidnies.*

They are so ulcerated sometimes, that all the substance consumeth, and only the skin about them remains.

The Causes It is from an imposthume not well cured, or when matter that is sharp, flows from other parts and corrodes them: or from stones. The outward causes are such as divide unity, as a fall or stroke, or riding.

The Signs. There is pain and weight in the loyns, but the *Hippo.* 4. urin is not stopt, but matter comes forth with u- *Apho.* 75. rin,

in, the patient will relate the outward cause.

They are dangerous, and more when they are by corrosion, because there is a continual flux to the reins, The new ulcers are curable, the old not. *The Prognostick.*

First, prevent excrementitious humors from breeding, which will flow to the kidnies, and increase the evil. If you fear inflammation by blood flowing to them, open a vein, if there be inflammation, cure it as before. When there are sharp humors, use *Violets, Mallows, cold Seeds, Barley, Poppy seeds, Liquorish Raisons in Syrups, or Waters, or Decoctions.* *The Cure.*

Use no strong Purges, but *Syrup of Roses, Violets, Cassia, Liquorish powder, Electuary Lenitive and Catholicon, Turpentine, with the yolk of an Eg, or powder of Liquorish.*

Then cure the ulcer *with Honey and Wine Barley water, with Pease, Maidenhair, Hyssop, Agrimony, Liquorish, Ptisans, with Honey, Asses and Goats milk after cleansing.*

Take *Tormentil roots an ounce and half, Winter-cherries two drams, burnt Ivory a dram, red Coral, Horstail, each two scruples; Mastich, Dragons-blood, each a scruple; Sugar of Roses an ounce and half, make a Powder, give it with Horstail and Plantane water, or in meat.*

Or, Take *sealed Earth, Bole, Tormentil roots, each a dram; Mastich, Traganth, each half a dram; Dragons blood a scruple, Sugar of Roses half an ounce, give an ounce and half.* Or use *Spirit of Turpentine.*

For diet, let it be of good juyce and easie concoction; avoid all things that corrupt, as salt, sharp and sweet, and fat things: give Ptisan, or Oatmeal and Barley broath, and Rice, a little thin

thin Wine, avoid strong motion and riding.

Chap. 12. *Of Diseases in the Ureters.*

THE veins that carry the urin, are often distempered, and dry, and contunse, are torn, obstructed and wounded.

The causes come commonly from the kidnies, and the Ureters consent with them. If they suffer, they cannot be so dried by feavers, as some say, as to stop the urin while the body lives.

Obstruction of the Ureters.

There is often a straitness from a contusion of excrements, or a stone fallen from the kidnies, or thick flegm, or clotted blood or matter.

It is known by the signs of the kidnies distempered for that which hurt them, fall down, the kidnies are veh, and the Ureters suffer with heavyness, and the pain goes from the kidnies to the groyns.

The Cure. It is as the obstructions of the kidnies, for after Medicines have been in the kidnies, they go to the Ureters, and cure them: externals do good, as a Fomentation of Pellitory, Mallows, Linseed, Oyl of sweet Almonds, Lillies, Dulcbea, Oyl of Scorpions, and a Bath of sweet Water, with the same Herbs. The way to bring the stone down to the bladder, is cupping beneath it by degrees without fear of ulcer.

Wounds and Ulcers of the Ureters.

Wounds are from stones, and from weapons out-ward: they may also be broken by a great force, and so dilated, that many stones may be

in

in them, which are after piſſed out. They are ulcerated when the wounds are not healed, whether they came from a ſharp ſtone, or from matter corrupted.

They are known by the ſame ſigns as thoſe of the kidneys, only the pain is towards the bladder, and the cure is the ſame

Alſo there are Symptoms in piſſing, as ſtoppage, when both are wholly ſtopt, and pain in piſſing, they muſt be cured as the former.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK.

THE TENTH PART.

THE SECOND SECTION.

Of the Symptomes of the Kidnies.

Chap. 1. *Of weakneſs of the Kidnies, and the ſeparating of the Serum hurt.*

The Cauſes

THe action of the Kidnies is to attract the Serum and ſend it to the ureters, if it be retained, it cauſeth great ſymptomes and death. This action is hurt or hindered by obſtructing cauſes, chiefly

chiefly the Stone, or thick flegm, or matter, or clotted blood.

Search if the fault be in the kidnies or the ureters. if it be not in these, it is in the kidnies with heavineſs and pain in the loyns. If it be from diſtemper, its ſigns will be. If from the Stone or the like, the ſigns are Chap. 4. *The Signs*

If Serum be long retained it mixeth with the blood and corrupts it, and cauſeth Cachexy or Feavers, if it be held above ſeven daies it is deadly, if he piſs before the ſeventh day he may be cured. If ſerum be declined in the veins. it goes over all the body and cauſeth divers ſymptoms according to the parts, ſome have been ſuffocated by urine ſo retained. *The Prognoſtick.*

Take away the cauſe, and ſearch firſt after it, if it be from a ſtone, or clotted blood, or flegm, the Cure is ſhewed before. If from a cold diſtemper, give hot Clyſters and contractions of Spices, uſe outwardly hot Oyls, Oyntments and Plaiſters. *The Cure.*

If ſerum be not ſeparated by reaſon of the weakneſs of the kidnies, ſeparate it from the thick juyce, that it may be thin and ſo flow to the kidnies: with Diureticks, in *lib.*5.of Inſtitutions *part* 1. *ſect* 1.*ch.*13.or give wine with Horſeradiſh, Reſtharrow, bitter Almonds bruiſed, or Peach kernels boyled in it, or Spaw waters.

Let not Diureticks be mixed with meat, for they will carry the crude chyle from the ſtomach to the ureters.

Chap. 2. *Of Diabetes.*

THe word ſignifies a quick paſſing of flux of urine, it is called *Diſpacus* from the great

6. De loc. aff. c. 3. great thirst. *Galen* never saw it but twice, *Aetius* saw it twice in men of seventy, the one died till he gushed vatted away, the other had the part it engangrened and the whole body mortified. A Virgin of eighteen, 1481 [illegible] thirty six pints, and took out [illegible] urine every day, she was forty days, and then voided 17 pints more than she took, as if she had been resolved wholly into urine. She weighed not above 150. pounds, of this and of this the Patient was not aged.

The Causes They are double, but I fix the immediate cause is the retention of the kidnies heat to a plenty or quality of urine. The cause of such urine is the heat of the bowels, especially the liver and spleen, that digest much drink, and dissolve the humors in the veins. Sometimes in bowels there is a critical pissing, which cannot be called a Diabetes,

The Signs. It increaseth by degrees, and the Patient regards it not, and it is the work of nature: therefore to distinguish a Diabetes begun from a critical pissing, consider what cause went before, for if it be natures work, it ceaseth presently, and the Patient finds much benefit, and his disease he had ceaseth. If it be symptomatical, it increaseth: men is drunk water-like, thin and crude, without a sediment, and in time thin bodies [illegible] up. The mouth is very dry, and the body puts the urine in the bowels, and [illegible] urine, his bowels, hips and stones swell with a sense of heaviness.

The Prognostick [illegible] it is not at first discerned, and [illegible] Consumption. If old men it is scarce cured, and [illegible] long fevers, it [illegible]

The

The Cure.

For excessive heat that proceeds the urine, and [illegible] and the veins.

[illegible] you must prescribe [illegible] that moderate the heat of [illegible].

[illegible], Plantane, Shepherds-purse, [illegible], Purslane, Cowslip, burnt Ivory, and [illegible].

℞. Take *Conserve of Roses, Plantane, Penidium, each an ounce, Water of Plantane, Shepherds purse, and Roses, each two ounces, Lemon pill flowers two drams, yolks of Eggs three drams, Plantane, Sorrel, Purslane, each a handful; boil them in four pints of fountain water, and Syrup of Quinces three ounces.* ℞.

Take *Conserve of Red Roses two ounces, burnt Harts-horn, Bole, and Coral prepared, each two drams; with Syrup of Quinces make an Electuary.* You may give Opiats also, as *Theriacum, Diatessaron perfumes, Requies* Nicolai *and Lohoch Sanum.*

Outwardly use Liniments, Ointments, Cataplasms that cool and bind, of juyce or water of Plantane, Purslane, Lettice, Houseleek, Venus navel, Ointment of the Quinces, cooling Cerot. ℞. Take *Oyl of Roses and Myrtles, each two ounces, Sanders white and red, Coral, each half a dram; Juice Plantane an ounce, with wax make an Ointment.*

℞. Take *Juice of Plantane Sorrel, Purslane and Lettice, each two ounces, Rose water an ounce, the yolks of two new Candles, two oyl'es burnt [illegible], Powder of Coral, Bole Armoniack, seeds of Sorrel,*

Plantane, each half a dram; make an Epithem, apply it hot.

Question 1. *Whether is the Drink altered that is pissed out in a Diabetes?*

Galen thought not. *Alexander Trallianus*, and others, that it is as in a Lientery, where the meat is cast out as it is eaten. Some say it is changed, and not pissed out without alteration. Some distinguish between Diabetes and a flux of urin, but without reason or example; I suppose there are divers degrees of a Diabetes, for at first when the altering force is not quite lost, the drink is a little changed, but after it is not. Moreover, some drinks are eaiier changed then others, water is but little changed. Other drinks are more compounded, and pass not so easily through, but endure some alteration. Moreover, in Diabetes, not only the drink is pissed, but the melting juyce of the body. *6. De loc. aff. c. 3.*

Question 2. *What is the Cause of Diabetes?*

Few find the cause in the kidnies only. The vulgar cause is a hot distemper of the kidnies, by which they suck the Serum too fast from the veins, but the difficulty is, whence is this plenty of Serum? I am of their opinion, that think the cause is in other parts besides the kidnies, namely in a resolution, or colliquation or melting in the veins and the whole body, from great heat in the liver and veins, to which I add weakness and looseness, not only of the stomach, but of other parts that carry the watery humor from the stomach and guts to the liver and spleen for these passages ought to keep the Serum . due

and

and fit time with the meat, if they do not, it suddenly runs to the kidnies. This weakness from drinking cold water as it happened to a Nobleman of whom *Fernelius* makes mention.

Chap. 3. *Of the Nephritick Pain.*

IF is a vehement pain in the kidnies, or in one, and hath divers causes that is called Nephritick which comes from sand, or gravel, or the stone, or from the consumption of the kidnies, but great pain may be from sharp humors, or matter, or serum. 10 *Lib. de cur. rat. par. hom. corp. c.* 11.

The Signs.

They are like those of the Colick, but the pain of the kidnies is fixed in the kidney, and if it be extended, it goes not to the belly, but to the ureters, bladder and groyns. The Colick is over the whole belly, there is vomiting of choler in both, and short breath. At first the urin is voided with difficulty, thin and crude, then thick and bloody, there gravel appears yellow or red; if they lie upon the part affected, the pain is abated, and increased if on the other. *Text. in cod. aph.* 47. *liq.* 6. *sec.* 2.

The Prognostick.

All great pain abates the strength, what hopes are, you may find by what is said in the stone of the kidnies.

The Cure.

First, abate the pain, as in the Chapter of the Stone, if it come from thence: if it be great, and the body plethorick, open a vein. If it come from matter or a sharp humor, temper it with the Emulsion of the four great cold Seeds, Barley water, with Strawberry leaves, and Mallows, and Liquorish. Give emollient Clysters often, they lessen the passages, and abate pain.

As, Take *Althæa* roots an ounce, *Pellitory*, *Violets*, *Althæa*, *Prunella*-roots, each a handful; *Chamomil* flowers, *Dill*, each two pugils; *Fœnugreek* and *Linseed*, each half an ounce; *Figs* six, boyl them in *Water* or *Milk* ten ounces strained, add *Caffia* an ounce, *Oyl* of sweet *Almonds*, *Lillies*, each an ounce and half; two yolks of *Eggs*, make a *Clyster*.

Give the decoction of *Althæa*, *Liquorish*, *Mallows*, *Pellitory*, *Raisons* to drink. Foment with the decoction of *Althæa*, *Lillies*, and other *Emollients*: and use *Liniments* of *Oyl* of sweet *Almonds*, *Lillies*, *Oyntment* of *Althæa*, *Hens*, *Goose* and *Ducks greese*.

If they help not, use a Bath of sweet Water, and other things mentioned in the Chapter of the Stone.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK.

THE ELEVENTH PART:

Of præternatural Diſeaſes of the Bladder.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Bladder.

Chap. 1. *Of the Diſtemper and ſtraitneſs of the Bladder, and the number changed.*

THERE is often a cold diſtemper in the Bladder from cold cauſes, it is known by the urine, being white, slimy, foamy, made by drops, and from cauſes that are cold.

It is cured by hot means, as Nutmeg, Mace, Betony, Liquorice, Juniper berries: by anoynting outwardly with oyl of Nard and Dill, &c.

Of the straitness of the Bladder.

It is from the birth, and is uncurable, of which *Galen de arte med. c. 71.*

The fault in number.

A Virgin had two bladders, one in the natural place, another in the right side of the womb, twice as big as the natural and full of Urine,

Chap. 2. *Of the Stone in the Bladder.*

WHat was spoken in general of the Stone of the kidnies is here also proper and we say that there is a Stone-breeding quality in the matter, which makes it naturally to congeal, heat and cold are not sufficient, but it is probable that the mine is altered in the bladder therefore if that be distempered, the thick and terrarous parts are not exactly mixed with the thin, but settle at the bottom of the bladder, and there turn to a Stone; as in the Strangury the urin being not concocted is sharp, and pricks nature to let it out: now if the watery part be sent out and the thick remain, it breeds the Stone: Therefore *Galen* saith the thick urin gathered in the bladder, and continuing long there together with what other matter, comes

comes after, as Stones grow in water, and the cause is the quality of the matter.

Hippocrates laies down five signs. 1. Pain in pissing. 2. Dropping of the urine. 3. Inflammation of the bladder. 4 Bloody and sandy urine. 5. Small stones: and he saith that boys which have the Stone rub and pull their yards: There is also stretching of the yard, and sense of weight in the bladder, and they move often their legs by turns: There is Tenesmus or needing; you may feel a great stone if you put your finger into the fundament, or with a searing Candle into the bladder, or a Catheter; or when the urine stops, let him lie upon his back with his knees up, and be shaken, and if he then make water, the stone that stopt the mouth of the bladder is shaked off, we must put these signs together, that we may certainly know it. *The Signs.* 4. *De morbis.* *Lib. de acre lo. & aq.*

Some think that stones in the bladder may eatily be broken by medicines and mention experiences. *Schenkius* and others say it cannot be. It is often deadly to be cut for it, for great stones are taken out with difficulty, and danger of Convulsions, and small ones can scarce be taken hold of; when the stone sticks to the bladder it is almost incurable, stones are easier taken from women then men, because the passage is short and large. *The Prognostick.* *Lib.* 3. *observat.* 218.

First prevent the breeding of it, and the increase, and when it is bred take it away, and allay the pain, let the diet be such as will not breed the matter, and give necessary evacuations, let the stone bred be broken or drawn out, but begin betimes least the matter increase, *The Cure.*

therefore if you perceive by burning of the urin, and flegmatick excretions, that the matter of the stone is in the bladder presently break the matter, with Medicines mentioned in the Stone of the kidnies.

Some think that Medicines have little force to break the stone in the bladder, against experience by *Gesner*. *Scaliger*, and *Libavius*, and *Augenius* reports of two that were cured, and he was cured of the stone after universals. *William Laurembergius* Professor of *Rostock*, reports of himself that he used a good diet, and these; *Wood-lice prepared a dram, Spirit of Juniper two drams, red Beets fresh ten ounces.* He took it in the morning, and three or four hours after, found a straitness in his breast, and a kind of fainting, therefore he added to it a dram of Treacle. He used it fifteen daies, and because he perceived no gravel to be voided, he took this.

Tom. 2. Pisi. medic. lib. 9.

Take *Woodlice prepared two ounces, a Hare prepared, Goats blood prepared, Spunge, wild Roses, Violet seeds, each an ounce; Species Lithontribon two drams, the diuretick Decoction ten ounces, spirit of Juniper two scruples.* By this, after two daies he pissed a little, with red scales which turned to sand being touched, though they seemed slimy. for it was the coat and crust of the great stone dissolved: a little after he voided great pieces of the stone while he was bathing, and they wounded the neck of the bladder, against which he used Anodynes; in seventeen weeks by the use of these he was freed from the stone.

His Diuretick Decoction. Take *Liquorish six ounces, Althea, Grass and Restharrow roots, each half*

half an ounce, Winter-cherries twenty, red Peaſe four ounces, Raiſons an ounce, the four great cold Seeds, each a dram; Barley two handfuls. boyl them in Winter-cherry, Reſtharrow, Strawberry and Bean-flower water, each a pint and half; ſtrain and add Syrup of Marſh-mallows three ounces. The Wood-lice were thus prepared. *Take of them alive two pints, waſh them with Reſtharrow water clean, then drown them in Sack, pour it off by degrees, and put them into many little glaſſed pots, the more the better, that they may dry without putrefaction or burning; ſtop them well, and put them into an oven, after the bread is taken out, that they may be powdered, add Sack to this powder as before, and dry it thrice, and the fourth time ſprinkle this water. Take Strawberry water three ounces, Spirit of Vitriol a ſcruple and half, dry the powder again, and keep it in a glaſs.*

Some are of that opinion which ought not to be denied, that ſome waters ſent into the bladder by a Catheter, will break the ſtone, becauſe they come directly to it, and exerciſe their full power *Cardan* ſaith, They muſt be ſuch as break the ſtone, and hurt not the bladder. He commends the water of burnt Scorpions and Parſley roots, Crabs eyes, Pigeons dung, Pellitory, and he rather deſires a Water to be made of mixed Powders then of one alone.

If no means will break it, he muſt be cut, which is dangerous, but it is better to adventure it then live in miſery.

Chap.

Chap. 3. *Of Worms and præternatural things bred in the Bladder.*

Alb. Mus. Munsterus lib. 4. Dodon. Benivenius & alii. Paræus lib. 19. c. 3.

WOrms are bred in the bladder according to the Histories, but they are not certainly known, till they are pissed out; some have pissed them six fingers long, alive and red: others have voided them of another shape white, short and slender. Some say they have seen a winged Dragon pissed out, *Ludovicus Duretus*, as *Paræus* reports, voided a living creature red, and like a wood-louse. Others have pissed bodies like pearls and shells.

Chap. 4. *Of stretching and inflammation of the Bladder, and of the place of it changed, and first of stretching.*

WHen urin fills the bladder, and stretcheth it much, as when by business or modesty it is kept in, there is pain at the bottome of the belly, and the urin is sometimes wholly stopt, because the fibres of the bladder being stretched, cannot contract themselves to expel the urine: This is dangerous, and the bladder inflameth, and causeth death, as it did in a Mathematician.

First, use Emollients outwardly to loosen the bladder, and if that will not do, use the Cathe ter to let it out, but this must be done before inflammation.

Of

Of the Inflammation of the Bladder.

The Causes.

It is from blood flowing extraordinarily to it, from external or internal causes External are strokes, falls, riding long, a wound, or when the stone beats upon it, and tears it. The internal are abundance of blood in the body, or the parts adjacent, as kidnies, womb, guts.

The Signs.

They are stretching, hardness, burning, and pain in the privities; the urin is stopt, and there is a Tenesmus or needing, by the consent of the fundament; the body is often bound with a fever, watching, doting, thirst, and coldness of the external parts.

The Prognostick.

It is dangerous, and often deadly, commonly the seventh day, because there is a constant feaver, with stoppage of urin and stools: the worse the Symptoms are, the worse is the disease, especially if a gangrene follow. If the sediment be white and equal, the inflammation is less, when the feaver and pain remit, it shews that the inflamation is turned into matter: if an Erylipelas arise in the skin it often ceaseth presently.

The Cure.

Suddenly let blood in the arm, as the strength is, then to derive, open the ankle vein, or apply Cupping glasses with Scarification to the hipps. If there be not much blood, open the ham or ankle-vein first.

Then give this Clyster. Take *Mallows, Pellitory, Violets, Lettice, each a handful; the four great cold Seeds, each two drams; Linseed three drams, boyl them in Barley water, to ten ounces strained, add Cassia an ounce, Oyl of Violets two ounces, make a Clyster.*

If pain be great. Take *new Milk a pint, with juyce of Lettice or Nightshade, and Oyl of Violets, each two ounces.*

Use

Use outwardly this Fomentation. Take *Althæa roots* an ounce, *Pellitory, Mallows, Althæa*, each a handful; *Chamomil flowers* half a handful, *Winter-cherries* half an ounce, boil them.

Take *Oyl of sweet Almonds* an ounce, *Winter-cherries* bruised a dram and half, with Wax make an *Ointment.* Use Emulsions of the cold Seeds with Syrup of Violets, Water-lilies, Lettice, and Purslane.

Then use stronger Liniment; anoint the privities with Oyl of Roses once et Almonds, Chamomil with Linseed, Fenugreek, Hens grease. If the inflammation turn to a Scirrhus, soften it with Cataplasms and Oyl of sweet Almonds, and a Decoction of Althæa, Mallows and Chamomil-flowers. You may with care use Catheter to let out urin.

The place of the Bladder altered.

Paterus. A Fisher-man had his bladder fallen into his cods, and there lay swelled, and the urin would not come forth by a Catheter, the Chirurgion desired to cut, & unnaturally cut the bladder, which he thought not to be there, and out came the urin with ease to the patient, but great danger: but he had a quil, through which he always pissed from that orifice.

Chap. 5. *Of Wounds in the Bladder.*

IT is known by pain about the Pubes, stoppage of urin, or voiding it by the wound, the stomach contents, and there is vomiting of choler, and hickets.

The Prognostick. When the nervous part of the bladder is wounded,

ed, there is inflammation and Convulsion, and often no cure, for seldom perfect: but a wound in the neck of the bladder, being a fleshy part, is not deadly, as we see in cutting for the stone.

For the Cure, put glutinaters into the wound, and anoint with Oyl of Lillies and Mastich, and inject with decoction of Roses, Comfrey roots, Mirtle leaves in Wine with Honey of Roses. let him drink little.

Chap. 6. *Of Scabs and Ulcers in the Bladder.*

THe Scabs are from salt and sharp humors that corrode the inward Superficies. The signs are itch in the pecten, stinking urine, and branny sediment; he pisseth often, and sometimes blood. In old men it is incurable for the most part.

Evacuate the sharp and salt humors, with Syrup of Roses, Manna, Cassia, then temper the humors with Violets, Letrice, cold Seeds; it is to inject the jayce of Mirtle berries with Wine, and to use cool and binding things outwardly. *The Cure.*

Ulcers in the Bladder.

The Scabs breed ulcers from a sharp and corroding humor, or Medicine, as Cantharides taken in or applied, or carried about, I never observed the last, though I have applied them behind the ears, and to the arms often. The stone may cause the same, or breaking of the vessels by a stroke or fall: the ulcer is either in the body or neck of the bladder. *Schenkius. lib. 3. obs.*

Pissing of scales and matter, pain the Pubes, dissi- *The Signs*

difficult pissing. If the ulcer be in the yard, matter comes out first, or without urin: if in the bladder, they come together. The ulcers of the bladder and kidnies, are known by the place where the pain is. If the ulcer be at the bottom of the bladder there is pain about the Pubes; if it be about the passage of the urin, it is perceived more at the time of pissing, especially when they begin and cease pissing.

The Prognostick. The healing of the ulcer is hindered by a constant flux of urin, which twitcheth the ulcers that come by erosion, are the worst, and are seldom cured in old men.

The Cure. Correct the sharp humors, and turn them another way, allay the pain: this Electuary is good. Take *Roots of Liquorish and Polypody, each half an ounce; the four great cold Seeds, each three drams; Violets, Borage flowers, each half a handful; Jujubes twelve, Prunes fifteen, Currans half an ounce, Senna an ounce and half, infuse them in Barley water, boyl and strain them.*

To cleanse: Take *Spike half a dram, Smallage seeds three drams, strain and add Pine nuts twenty, the four great cold Seeds half an ounce, with Barley-water make an Emulsion.* Or,

Take *Turpentine washt with Horstail water two drams, Liquorish two scruples, Troches of Hiera-cherries a scruple; make Pills like Pease, give three at a time.*

Inject Cleansers with the Catheter. To heal,

Take *Juice of Plantane and Comfrey, each half a pint; Rose water three ounces, Sugar a pound, boyl them to a Julep.* Or,

Take *Comfrey and Althæa roots, each half an ounce; Mouse-ear and Horstail, each a handful; Lady mantle, Comfrey, red Roses, each half a handful,*

Hiera-

Winter-cherries, Liquorish, Raisins, each half an ounce; boyl them to two pints, strain and sweeten it with Sugar and Cinnamon a dram.

Or, Take *Confect of Roses an ounce, Bole, sealed Earth, Diastich, each a scruple; Starch two drams, with Syrup of Coralls, make an Electuary.*

The Troches of *Gordonius* are good, they cleanse allay pain, and abate heat of urin, and glutinate. The passage from the stomach to the bladder is long, therefore they are better injected by the Catheter, then taken at the mouth.

To be a skilful Physitian study my *Sennertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus*, and *Riolanus*, of the last Editions.

Anoint with this. Take *Oyl of Mastich Mirtles, Quinces, each an ounce; Storax liquid, Wax, each a dram; Bole two ounces*: then apply this Pultis.

Take *Mastich, Frankincense, sealed Earth, Bole, Hypocistis, Mirtles, each two drams; Meal of Siligo an ounce and half, Oyl of Roses, Mirtes, each as much as will make a Cataplasm.*

An ulce. from Cantharides is cured by much Milk given, or Emulsions of cold Seeds, white Poppies.

Fabricius tells of a Cure of a great ulcer of the bladder. *Centur. 3. obs. 69.*

Avoid hot air, Southern winds, and all things that turn to choler, are bitter, sharp or salt, spiced; let him drink little, Milk is best, and Barley and Rice boyled in it, and things that abate the acrimony of the bladder. *The Diet.*

Fistula in the Bladder.

Wounds and ulcers often turn to Fistula's; *Langius* cured them thus. *Lib. 2. epist. epist. 5.*

Injections. Take *Cassia half an ounce, Diapruna four drams, Rhoarb half a dram, Crocus Martis 15 grains, with Aqua Cardui make a Bolus.*

Then

Then this Liniment. Take *Diachylon with the Gums* two ounces and half, *of Diachylon* an ounce, ripen it in the dependent part, and apply Oil of Roses and an Egg to keep it open: when good matter comes, and the pain vanisheth, give this Drink. Take *Barley* two handfuls and half, *Liquorish* a dram, *Anise-seed* two scruples, *Dates* &c. *Sebestens* twenty five, *boyl them in twelve pints of water for ordinary drink, without wine,* and every third day give *half an ounce of Turpentine washt with water of Mallows, and a draught of Posset-broath three hours after*; three dayes after, Take *Syrup of Maiden-hair* three ounces and half, *Liquorish* an ounce and half give half a spoonful, *the fourth day let him take Turpentine again.*

To take away the Callus from a Fistula, use black Hellebore roots or a Tent of Verdigreece, and salt Ammoniack with Vinegar. To melt the Callus by Suppuration, make Tents of Turpentine and Fingle-w, with Precipitate, and in twenty four hours they fall off, and come away in pieces with the corruption.

To cleanse after, use this Liniment morning and evening. Take *Honey of Roses* an ounce, *Turpentine* two drams, *round Birthwort* a scruple, *Orris Misch*, two half a dram; *Verdigreece* a scruple and three grains, *Goats suet* three drams. If sponguous flesh grow under, which the Ointment will not take away, apply Precipitate and Lint on a Pledget of Diapalm. When the matter is clean and [illegible] Take *Turpentine*, [illegible], *Oil of Mastick*; *Virgin Colophony*, [illegible] each [illegible], of [illegible] each [illegible], of [illegible] each [illegible] Oil of Roses [illegible] Oil of Spike [illegible]

ana.

and half, with a hot pestle make a Plaister.

Chap. 7. *Of Diseases of the passages of the Urin, and first of the cooling of the Sphincter of the Bladder, and the double passage of the Urin.*

THe Sphincter-muscle of the Bladder is cooled by air, and cold baths, or sitting upon a cold stone, and then the urin cannot be held; it is cured as other Palsies from cold, and I shall speak of it hereafter.

Fabricius Hildanus observed a double passage of urin in a Boy of twelve, born at *Colonia Agripina*. *Cent. 1. observ. 76.*

Chap. 8. *Of straitnes of the passage of Urin.*

IT is either in the passage or in the mouth of it, either by obstruction, or compression, or binding; it is stopt by a stone fallen into the orifice: or by a clot of blood, thick matter, or flegm; it is pressed from an external thing, as sitting upon a hard thing; from an internal cause, as hard dung, or wind, or when the yard, neck of the bladder are swollen; it is bound by a Carunde or Callus, or wart growing in it.

Obstructions from the stone are manifest from *The Signs.* what is said. The signs of clotted blood and a vessel broken, is when the bladder comes forth with the urin, if matter obstruct, you may know

that by an ulcer in the kidnies or bladder, or there is an imposthume broke, and the matter falls into the bladder. If it be from thick flegm, the same was voided before. A compression from external causes is known by the patients relation: constipation from a Caruncle, Callus, or wart in the passage, is manifest from the marks of an ulcer aforegoing, and is found by a Catheter.

The Prognostick. It is a bad disease, sometimes easier to be cured, sometimes worse from the greatness of the cause, and the difficulty in removing of it.

The Cure. It is by the Causes wholly, if from the stone, that is to be removed by fomenting the part with loosners, and by putting things into the passage that may break it.

Sometimes the passage must be cut open, to take it out, as we shewed in our Institutions.

Lib. 5. par. 1. sect. 2. c. 14. If it be from clotted blood, give Oxymel, or decoction of Thyme and Organ, or Marjoram, with honey'd Water, and inject the same, or put a Wax-candle in with a Medicine good against it.

If from matter or thick flegm, use attenuaters and cutters, and use Fomentations and Insessions of the decoction of Organ, Thyme, Centaury, with Oyl of Scorpions, or Rue, or Nard injected. If the bladder fall into the cods put it up.

Chap. 9. *Of a Caruncle, Callus, or Warts in the passage of Urin and of Ulcers.*

MAny a time an ulcer is from a venereal gonorrhœa, which if not healed, produceth a spun-

a ſpungy fleſh. The ſigns are great pain: or it is found by a Catheter or Wax-candle; it differs from an obſtruction by the ſtone, for ſtoppage of urin from a Caruncle it alwaies flows alike, but not in the ſtone, but ſometimes it is plentifully voided, ſometimes quite ſtopped ſuddenly, as when the ſtone from the bottom of the bladder falls into the orifice; alſo it is known by a Catheter from the ſtone. Alſo from thick humors the urin is totally ſtopt.

This is dangerous, and of long continuance commonly.

The Cure. Firſt, purge generally, then give the decoction of China and Sarſa, and after uſe Topicks, or the Collyrium of *Philip*, of which *Amatus Luſitanus*.

Take *Centaury, Smallage, Horſtail, each half a handful; Barley bruiſed an ounce, boyl them in two pints of water to half, ſtrain and add Honey of Roſes or of Centaury two ounces, inject with a Syringe*; uſe this till the Caruncle be conſumed. After uſe a Wax-candle, and dry it with this Medicine.

Take *Plantane and Roſe-water, each four ounces; Whey two ounces, Ceruſs ſix drams, Aloes, Myrrh, Marble, burnt Ivory, Cryſtal, each a dram and half; Camphire half a ſcruple*: let the Pouders be fine. *Amatus* thinks this dangerous, becauſe it is made of the pouder of the ſtones which ought not be put into the bladder.

Amatus uſed theſe happily for a Noble man, and calls it an Herculean remedy. Take *Verdigreece, Orpiment, Vitriol, Allum each two ounces; pouder them with Vinegar between two Marbles, and dry them at the Sun, do it again*: this will take away all acrimony in eight daies. Then, Take

Centur 4. *Curat.* 19.

Oyl of Roses four ounces, Litharge two ounces, boyl them to a Plaister, then add two ounces of the pouder, and make it fit (by stirring it) to stick to a Wax-candle.

He also had twenty Wax-candles, with a little Rolin and Turpentine two fingers long, and as thick as the passage. And three rods of Lead, of the same length and thickness, which he used instead of the Candles, when the Caruncles were stubborn. After eight daies he put nothing in but the dry Candle, and then clensed thus.

Take *Barley two pugils, round Birthwort an ounce and half, Plantane two pugils, boyl and add Honey of Roses two ounces: inject it with a Syringe twice or thrice in a day, for six daies together.*

Stronger. Take *Allum, Verdigreece, each half an ounce; Orpiment a dram, boyl them in two pints of Plantane water, to half a pint strain and ad Camphire six grains: inject.*

To dry up. Take *Ceruss an ounce, Litharge, Allum, each two drams; boyl them in Horstail-water to halfs.*

THE

THE THIRD BOOK.

THE TWELFTH PART.

THE SECOND SECTION.

Of the Symptoms of the Bladder.

Chap. 1. *Of pain of the Bladder, and numneſs and reſolution of the Sphincter of the Bladder.*

THE Bladder is pained from many Cauſes, as when it is overſtretched, inflamed, wounded, ulcerated, of which before, either all over, or in the neck or paſſage of urin; for the Cure

before mentioned.

The Sphincter-muscle is made to keep the urin from flowing out constantly, but at pleasure. It is sometimes hurt and stupified, so that the urin cannot be held; this is when the nerves of the sixth conjugation are hurt, or those from the outward part of the marrow of the back, being either cold, or obstructed, or compressed.

It is cured as other Palsies, with Fomentations, Oyls, Ointments, Plaisters to the bladder.

Chap. 2. *Of suppression of urin called Ischury, and diminution of Urin called Dysury.*

When Urin is wholly stopt, it is Ischury, either when there is no urin or when it cannot be voided. For in this actiō four things are necessary; first that there be urin in the bladder, which may stir up nature to void it. 2. That the pricking be felt by the nerve of the sixth pair and others. 3. That the expulsive faculty arise with the assistance of the muscles of the belly. 4. That the orifice of the bladder be open. If there be no urin in the bladder, the fault is in the kidnies or ureters, or emulgent veins, or arteries, being stopt with a stone, or with thick flegm. We shall speak of this stoppage, supposing urin to be in the bladder.

The Causes Gal. 1 de loc. aff. c. 1. Urin is stopt by the faculty hindered by diseases of the bladder, the faculty is either sensitive or expulsive. The sensitive is hurt by the nerves hurt,

hurt, that bring feeling, as by a stone, fall or luxation of the Vertebræ. The expulsive is hurt, from hurt of the transverse fibres, by a cold or moist distemper, or when they are extended too much, and loose their own: so that they cannot after be contracted. The same is by a tumor without the bladder, or the guts, or other parts adjacent that are swollen. Also by wounds or fistula's of the bladder and its passage, when the serum goes that waies.

The Sign.

The Symptom is manifest, but the Cause is to be found; if it come from a fault in the ureters or kidnies, there is no heavinesse nor stretching in the bladder, and no pain about the pubes, and there are signs of the distempers of the kidnies and bladder. If it be from the fault of the bladder, the kidnies, and ureters are free from all distempers, and the signs are about the pubes and bladder: see *Galen* 1. *de lo. aff c.* 1.

The Prognostick.

It is dangerous, and a man cannot live long with it, because it oppresseth the liver, and fouls the blood, and flows back into the whole body; or it makes the brain consent, and brings numnesse: the danger is more or lesse, according to the cause. That suppression of urin is worst, which is from the quenching of the natural heat It is dangerous from clotted blood

Indications and Cure.

Take away the Causes, as in the diseases of the kidnies and ureters, and if it be from numnesse and weaknesse, stir up heat and sense by sharp Clysters and Suppositories.

If the Cause cannot be suddenly removed, provoke urin, press the bladder and muscles of the belly with the hand, and hold the breath, that

by the Diaphragma the bladder may be pressed; if they will not do, use a Catheter if there be no inflammation, or a candle of Wax anointed with Oyl of sweet Almonds, or with Honey of Roses, or inject Honey-water with Pennyroyal, Calamints, Rue and Castor infused. And foment with the decoction of the same, or put him in a Bath to the navel, and then anoint the Pubes, Perinæum and Perinæum with Oyl of Scorpions, Orris, Costus, Nard Rue. Take heed of too much drink and Diuretick.

If it be from too great stretching of the bladder, foment the Pubes and Perinæum with Emollients, as the decoction of Pellitory, Dill, Chamomil flowers, Melilot, Line and Fœnugreek seed. Or, Take *Diachalæ, Oyl of Scorpions, of bitter Almonds, each an ounce; Turpentine, fresh Butter, each half an ounce; Saffron a dram, make a Liniment.*

Chap. 3. *Of little Pissing.*

THis is twofold, either too little urine is made, or it is made at too long distance.

It is little when nature carries the humors to the circumference of the body, or when the belly is loose, by which means the serous humors are evacuated; but after a short time these cease. Here we speak only of that diminution of urin, which is by a fault in the kidnies or bladder. The causes are the same in the last Chapter, only not so strong, and yet they are known by the same signs.

The Prognosis. Diminution of urine is a less evil then total sup-

ſuppreſſion, becauſe the obſtruction is leſs, and the cauſes are eaſier removed; if there be pain, the danger is more. In burning Feavers it is bad.

Remove the cauſes as in the laſt Chapter. Abate the pain with Fomentations, Cataplaſmes, and laxative Oyntments of *Mints, Mallows, Pellitory, Violets, Fænugreek and Lineſeed, &c.* *The Cure.*

Slownèſs in Piſſing.

The Cauſes are a ſmall quantity in the bladder, or the dulneſs and ſenſleſneſs of the bladder, ſo that it is not ſtirred up by ſharp or little urin. It is cured by removing the Cauſes.

Chap. 4. *Of the Strangury.*

WHen the urin continually drops out, with a deſire to piſs, and pain, it is called *Stillicidium*: The immediate cauſe is ſharpneſs of urin, that alwaies provokes nature, and becauſe there is pain, it is voided by drops. Now the urin is ſharp of it ſelf, or by accident; of it ſelf, when it comes crude to the bladder, like a Lientery. Or it is ſharper in reſpect of the bladder, when that is excoriated or ulcerated, and then it is like a Teneſmus, for the Sphincter of the bladder is affected from ſomthing that pricks it; alſo it is ſharp, from the mixture of ſharp matter.

But every ſharp humor doth not breed a ſtrangury, but that chiefly which is clammy, by which it ſticks cloſe to the orifice of the bladder, or a ſtone which pricks the orifice. Or a diſeaſe in the parts adjacent, as the inflammation of the

t ſtraight

straight gut, or the womb may cause it. Many times those pricking humors are sent to the bladder, as matter from the kidnies, or salt humors from the veins, or from the stomach, or brain, or whole body.

A cold distemper doth not immediately cause the Strangury, but as it makes for the breeding of sic a urin, which if it be too cold, corrupts in the bladder, and by that corruption puts on a quantity that pricks the orifice of the bladder.

The Signs. The signs of the causes are to be found out, because the disease it self is apparent. Therefore search whether it be in the urin, or in the bladder. It is in the urin, if there be no signs of the bladder distempered in it self, or from another part; there are signs also of sharp humors, from immoderate use of sharp and salt meats. If it be from the bladde , it is known by the signs of the bladder affected, that there is a stone, excoriation or ulcer. If it be from a cold distemper, the urin is white; if it be from a part adjacent, the signs of that will appear.

The Prognostick. It is scarce cured in old men, a sharp humor held long, often ulcerateth the bladder; if it come from an ulcer in a part adjacent, it is seldom cured. *Hipp. 6. Aph. 44. They who have the Ileos from a Strangury, die in seven days, except a Feaver come, and they piss freely.* By the Ileos, he means not that which comes from an inflammation, for that is exasperated by a fever.

The Cure. Seneca for the Cause; if it come from sharp humors, purge gently at first, with Cassia and Turpentine, which loosneth the belly and clenseth the kidnies and bladder, then correct the sharp humor, thus. Take *Mallow roots, Liquorish, each half an ounce; the four great cold Seeds, each*

Gal. 5. de uen. san. c. 9.

each three drams; white Poppy seeds two drams, boyl them in Barley water, strain and add Syrup of Violets, Liquorish, Jujubes, each half an ounce; troches of Winter-cherries without Opium a scruple; give it morning and evening. Have a care of the bowels, as the stomach, liver, kidnies, and mend their hot and dry distemper, as was shewed, least sharp humors breed. Spaw-waters are good, which purge by stool urin and sweat, and correct the distemper of the bowels. And a Bath of sweet Water afore dinner, or to sit in *a decoction of Violets, Water-lillies, Lettice, Mallows, Willow, and the Liniments and Oyntments mentioned in the hot and dry distemper of the kidnies, to anoint the Pubes, Reins and Perinæum.*

Also *Emulsions of cold Seeds, with Violet water, or Mallow seed, or Water lillies to inject, or Whey to drink, with Syrup of Roses, Violets* If it come from sharpness of urin, hold it not in.

If it come from cold in the bladder, use healers, as *Diagalangal, Treacle, Mithridate, Aureæ Alexandrina.* Anoint the Pubes and Perinæum with Oyl of Rue, and the like. If it be by consent from parts adjacent, cure them as the disease requires, with Fomentations, Baths to sit in, and other Topicks which also abate pain.

Let it be all to temper and mitigate sharp humors; if the Strangury come from them, *Milk and Barley, Ptisans are best: Cream of sweet Almonds, and other Almond-meats are next. rear Egs, meats of good juyce; drink of Barley water, or Raisons, or very weak white Wine.* Fasting, passions of mind, and great exercise do hurt. If it come from other Causes, let the diet be fitted for the removing of them. *The Diet.*

Que-

Question. *Whether a Strangury comes from the coldness and weakness of the Bladder?*

It is usual in old men from a cold distemper, and is cured often with a draught of wine. But the question is how cold produceth it? whether it weakens the bladder, and its retention, and so doth it, or another way? I suppose it is not from weakness, for that would rather produce a flux of urin that would come by drops, and then the pain would be all over the bladder, which is not in a Strangury. I suppose that the bladder hath a peculiar force to alter the urin by its natural heat, and if that be weakened by cold, the urin hath a vitious quality, which pricks the bladder, and causeth a Strangury.

Chap. 5. *Of Dysury, and heat of Urin.*

DYsury is difficulty of pissing with pain, and it is hard to distinguish it from a strangury; but in a Strangury there is less urine made then should be, and there is not always pain but only dropping; but in this, there is a scalding heat like fire in pissing, whether there be more or less voided. If urin be only voided without pain, then it is to be referred in pissing diminished, of which before. Here we take Dysury for a depraved action only, and pissing with pain.

The Causes It is a sharp urin, the passage being ulcerated when choler, or salt flegm, or adust humors, or matter is mixed with urin. Also sharp meats, and purging Medicines, and poysons that ulcerate the bladder, as Spanish-flies, Præcipitate, &c.

&c. Sometimes milk-like urin is pissed plentifully, and causeth scalding, of the breeding of which there is a Controversie. I suppose that it is from an ill concoction, in the stomach first, then in the liver, for the second concoction mends not the faults of the first: so that the chyle, and then the blood is crude, nor are they cleansed from the Salt and Tartar, which ought to be separated in the first concoction. These crudities sucked by the kidnies, and sent to the bladder, cause the pain in pissing. The same is from a stone in the bladder, knocking against the neck of it, and from seed retained in the muscles which being removed, gets an acrimony or malignant quality, as in the French pox.

It is manifest, but the causes are to be distin- *The Signs.*
guished by what hath been said.

It is not of it self deadly, but very troublesom, *The Pro-*
and is easie or hard to be cured according to the *gnostick.*
cause: in old people it is scarce cured. Scalding urin from poyson is worst.

The chief end is to remove the Cause. First, *The Cure.*
give this Potion. Take *Sebestens, Jujubes, each ten; Mallows half a handful, boyl them in Barley water, strain and ad Cassia ten drams, Syrup of Violets an ounce.* If pain be great, and weakness appear, remove pain, and oppose the Cause also. As, Take *Fleabane seeds six drams, Quince seeds three drams, the four great cold Seeds two drams, white Poppy seeds a dram and half, bruise them, and with Mallow water make a Mucilage: give it with Barley water, and inject it also.* Or, Take *the four great cold seeds each half an ounce; Gum Arabick, Tragacanth, each a dram and half; Purslane and white Poppy seeds, each two drams; red Sanders, Hembane seeds, each a dram and half, with Muc-*

-lage

lage of Fleabane make Troches of a dram weight; give one every morning, and another afore supper, with eight ounces of Bean flower water: it is good against scalding urin.

Outwardly use Oyl of sweet Almonds, Violets, Water-lillies, Poppies to the Pubes and Perinæum; or a Bath to sit in of the decoction of Mallows, Althæa, Pellitory, Chamomil-flowers, Poppy heads, and Clysters of the same, and inject Milk into the yard often. In great pain, give Treacle and Laudanum. If it be from poyson, give Antidotes with abaters of pain. If it be from Spanish flies, Milk alone is good, and Mucilage of Mallow seeds, Althæa, or Emulsions of Fleabane, and Poppy seeds, and the great cold Seeds.

Chap. 6. Of *involuntary pissing, and not holding the urin.*

IT is either sleeping or waking. If waking, the party observes it not, as in Apoplexies, and Palsies, and the like. If it be sleeping, then the fault is that the imagination cannot rule the motive faculty of the muscles, to contain the urin, for a fit time and place. These two diseases have distinct Causes.

The Causes The fault both sleeping and waking, is in the loosness of the Sphincter muscle of the bladder, being weak, so that it cannot contract it self, and shut the orifice of the bladder; the causes of this weakness we shewed in Chap. 1.

Sometimes urin is made involuntary, when the muscles of the belly are in a Convulsion, so that the belly is pressed thereby, and the bladder being

Page 367 is missing
from this volume.

Page 368 is missing
from this volume.

Page 369 is missing
from this volume.

Page 370 is missing
from this volume.

out of the right ear, two measures at a time for some daies together. He gave Diureticks and Turpentine, and she pissed freely, and then he gave other remedies, and the flux at the ear ceased, and she recovered. We did not shew the Cure of these, for they either follow diseases from the birth, or are incurable.

THE THIRD BOOK.

THE THIRTEENTH PART.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Privities in Men.

THE FIRST SECTION.

Of the Diſeaſes of Mens privie Parts: and firſt of the Diſeaſes of the Stones.

Chap. 1. *Of Diſtemper of the Stones.*

THERE is often a diſtemper in the ſtones; the cauſes are internal or external. The internal are from the diſtemper of the liver, heart, reins, for they ſend matter to the parts made for generation, by which they eaſily communicate their own diſeaſes. The external cauſes are cold air, which eaſily troubles the ſtones alſo meat, drink or medicines that exceed in any qua-

quality, and vehement exercise.

A hot distemper is known by hot causes afore-going: also if the stones and seed-vessels are actually hot, there is an inclination to Venery and there is much and hot seed. The contrary signs are in a cold distemper. *The Signs.*

If the distemper be moist, they are loose, and seed is quickly spent, but it hurts less then a dry distemper. In a dry distemper, all signs are contrary. *Vide Gal. art. medic. c. 45. & seq.*

It is not mortal, but hinders generation; for cold and drineſs exceeding, bring barreneſs: it is easier to correct the excess of heat then of cold. *The Prognostick.*

A hot distemper must have cold remedies, as Lettice, Violets Roses, Poppy seeds, cold seeds, and Emulsions made of them. Foment with water or juyce of Lettice, Endive, Violets, Venus-navel, Purslane. Let the diet be as the Medicines are, drink no Wine, or much Water with it. *The Cure.*

A cold distemper is cured with hot things internally and externally, as Bettony, Calamints, Majoram, Sage, roots of Asparagus, Eryngus, Parsley, Fennel, Carots, Aniseeds, Fennel seeds, Rocket, Turneps, and Medicines made of these.

Foment outwardly with the Decoction of the same made in Wine, and anoint with Oyl of Nard, Costus, Nutmegs, Ambergreece, and Civet.

Let the Diet be according to the Indications.

If the distemper be moist or dry, you must amend it with the Contraries.

Chap. 2. *Of the number of the Stones vitiated, and of Pibles or Stones found in the Stones or Testicles.*

Monta. co. 4. c. 37. NAturally they are but two, but there have been found more, and fewer sometimes, and sometimes none, of which read Histories. They who have three, are excessively hurtful: they who want stones, or have them cut off by diseases, or were so born, cannot be cured.

Stones found in the Stones or Testicles.

Lib. 4. obser. *Schenkius* observed many, and these pibles or stones are bred when the Serum being fit to breed stones, is mixed with the blood with it, to be the matter of the seed.

Chap. 3. *Of great Stones or Testicles; and of Inflammation and other Tumors thereof.*

Lib. de Diff morb. c. 9. lib. 21. de curat. memb. c. 2. GAlen saith they grow sometimes very great, and (if it be natural), that fault cannot be mended. Sometimes they consume away, of which *Vidus Vidius* hath an Example.

Inflammation of the Testicles.

The Causes The stones may swell, whether inflamed, or not. They are inflamed by blood flowing to them, which heats and swells them, as when there is a stroke or a crush.

The Signs. There is pain, heat and redness, and if the cods be inflamed, it is worse, often a Fever is joyned with it.

Cur

Cure it speedily, least there be a gangrene, by reason of the great moisture and softness of the parts. *The Prognostick.*

Repel, intercept, revel the blood that is flowing to them; that blood which is there, must be discussed, and if nature tend to suppuration, help her: open a vein in the arm presently, then in the ham or ankle on the same side, and for derivation, apply Cupping-glasses to the hipps the day after. If other humors abound in the body, as choler, evacuate them, wrap the cods in Cataplasms of Bean meal, red Roses, Myrtles, Pomegranate flowers boyled in red Wine, or steeled Water, with oyl of Roses and Myrtles, bind them up that they hang not down. Intercept the blood on the side of the pubes, where the veins and arteries come from the belly to the cods. Make an Intercepter of Barley flour, red Roses, Bole, Mastich, with Rose water, and whites of Eggs. Or use the Countesses Oyntment, or Plaister against the Rupture. After some daies mix digesters with repellers, and at length use digesters alone, as Oyl of Roses, Oyntment of Althæa, Oyl of Chamomil, or Diachylon and Oyl of Roses to digest. *Ætius* commends this Cerot. Take *Wax, Rosin, Oyl of Dill, Daffodils, each ten ounces; Cummin seed, Ass-dung three baks, dry and sift the dung, and ad Cummin seed, then stir rest with Wax.* If there be pain, Take *Mallows, Violets, each a handful; Bran two pugils, boyl and apply them.* Or, Take *Barley flour two ounces, Line and Fænugreek seed, each an ounce; Mallows, Holyoaks boyled fast, each half a handful; Hogs grease, Oyl of Violets as much as will make a Cataplasm.* Or make a Cataplasm of Henbane boyled and Rampt. *The Cure.*

If there be signs of Suppuration, help it, when the impostume is ripe, open it with a Lancet, then cleanse and heal it as other tumors.

Inflation of the Testicles.

When they swell without a Feaver, it is from thick vapors, use Medicines that discuss wind. Take *powder of Althæa roots half an ounce, Bean flour, Fœnugreek and Linseed, each an ounce; Cummin half an ounce, boyl them in Wine, add Oyl of Dill, and make a Cataplasme.* Or. Take *powder of Chamomil flowers, and Melilot flower, and Bean flour or meal, each six drams; Goats dung, Bay berries, each half an ounce; with Wine and Oyl of Dil make a Bulbis.*

Hard cold Tumors and Scirrhus in the Testicles.

When after an inflammation the humors are not discussed, nor turned to matter, they stick in the part, and grow hard, and make an obstinate tumor.

It is known by touch or sight; it is without pain, and heat, and feaver, and hard to be cured.

The Cure. After Universals, use Emollients and Discussers, as Althæa roots, Linseed, Wheat flour, Raisons, Lettice roots boyled in Wine or Water is excellent, or with Barley meal, Linseed and Fœnugreek. Or use Oyntment Martiatum, and Emplaister Diachylon simple and compound.

Or, Take *Bean meal an ounce, Linseed two drams, Diachylon simple half an ounce, Melilot flowers an ounce and half, Oyl of Dill, Chamomil and Horehane, each an ounce; Cummin seed a dram, boyl them to a soft Cerot.* Or,

Take

Take, *Colewort leaves and Henbane, each a handful; Figs five, boyl them soft, and strain them through a sieve, add Bean flour, Lineseed, and Fenugreek, and Chamomil flowers, each half an ounce; with fat of the Kidnies of a Goat, make a Pultis.*

This is most excellent. Take *Althæa roots, Henbane and Winter cherries, each a handful; green Mandrake roots half a pound, boyl them in Wine, stamp them, add Opoponax, Bdellium, and Ammoniacum melted, each six drams, Storax three drams, with Oyl of Chamomil make a Cataplasme.* If this humor turn to matter, suddenly evacuate it, least it corrupt the stones, and be an incurable ulcer or gangrene.

Chap. 4. *Of the alteration of the Cods.*

WHen they hang down, it is from cold matter and loosness, the Cremasters and strength is low. Sometimes it is from riding, sometimes from swimming in cold water. If the body be cacochymick, purge it, then apply hot dryers to the stones, and pubes, and os sacrum, as Sage, Bettony, Marjoram, Primrose, and the like. Sometimes they are drawn towards the belly; sometimes they are hidden in the belly: if this be from the birth, it is incurable.

Chap. 5. *Of Wounds, Ulcers, and Cancers, and Gangrene in the Cods.*

THese wounds are dangerous, by reason of the great Symptoms. A young man was wounded

wounded with a Spear in the stones, they swelled very large, he had pain and Delirium, but he was cured by a Clyster, and opening the ankle-vein, and anointing the parts adjacent, and applying a digesting and strengthening Pultis.

Ulcers of the Cods.

After an inflammation there is often an ulcer, which from the Cod goes to the stones; these are in danger to gangrene. To cure such, first purge, then clense the ulcer with Unguentum Apostolorum, and a little Ægyptiacum, wash it with the decoction of Pomegranate flowers, Roses and Myrtles, with a little Frankincense made of Plantane water and red Wine. Then make this Oyntment. Take *Tutty prepared, red Lead, and burnt Lead and Antimony, each two drams; with Oyl of Myrtles and Wax, make an Oyntment;* then fill up the ulcer with flesh thus. Take *Aloes, Sarcocol, Dill, burnt Frankincense, Bloodstone, each two drams; Burnt Allum, flower of Brass, each half a dram; with Oyl of Roses make an Oyntment,* then heal it up with *Oyntment of Lead.*

Cancer of the Cods.

Sometimes these ulcers gangrene, of which *Vnierus* hath a History of a young man, that before his death, was very sorry that he took not the counsel of *Vnierus*, who perswaded him to abstain from Emollients which exasperated a Cancer, but to hinder the spreading of it with gentle Coolers and Dryers.

From an inflammation and ulcer, if a gangrene follow, it is deadly.

Foreest. observ. 6. lib. 27.

Chap.

Chap. 6. *Of Diſeaſes in the Cods.*

THe Cods are inflamed ſomtimes alone, and ſomtimes with the ſtones, the cauſes are the ſame as the other. Somtimes in Feavers nature disburdens her ſelf in theſe parts, and there is a ſwelling and hardneſs, redneſs and heat, tearing pain, that is worſe when touched, and a fever commonly, it is in danger to gangrene, by reaſon of the moiſtneſs of the part; it is cured as inflammation of the ſtones.

So is a wound, there is ſomtimes a rawneſs in children from piſs: Pompholigos, and Oyntment of Cerus, and Litharge cure it.

The ulcers are cured as the other.

Somtimes the cods gangrene after inflammation, as in one with a malignant Feaver, nature ſent the filthy matter preſently thither, and in one day there was a gangrene all over the cods to the belly: he recovered by the uſe of means. It is not ſo dangerous as in other parts, for nature about the belly, ſeparates the foul from the ſound, and that which is corrupt is eaſily taken off by the Chirurgion.

Chap. 7. *Of a rupture and tumor in the Cods.*

SOmtimes the Scrotum or cod is ſwelled with wind, and that is called a windy Rupture, or with water, and that is a watery Rupture, or with fleſh, and that is a fleſhy Rupture; or the guts

fall into the cod, and that is called *Enterocele* or Rupture of the guts; or the Omentum falls into the cod, and that is called *Epiplocele*. The two last only differ in the nature of an *Hernia* or Rupture, of which we spake before.

A windy Hernia, is a tumor from wind in the cods, sometimes it is with water.

The Causes. It is wind from the guts, or gathered in the cods, it is usual in children.

The Signs. The cods are stretched, and the stones also, without weight or heaviness, you may feel the wind more from place to place with noise.

The Prognostick. It is easily cured, because wind is easily discussed.

The Cure. It is by discussers of wind, after Universals and Evacuations of that which breeds wind: therefore make a Clyster as in the Colick. Take *Rue half a handful, Chamomil, Melilot flowers, Dill-seeds, each half a handful; Caraway, Cummin, Linseed, each two drams; boyl, and to a pint strained, add Benedicta laxativa an ounce, Electuary of Bay berries half an ounce, Oyl of Rue and Dill, each an ounce and half; make a Clyster.*

Apply a Bagg to the belly of Chamomil and Melilot flowers, Millium, Cummin, Caraway, Dill, give Treacle, Mithridate, *Theriacal* water, and things against wind, and apply this to the cods.

Take *Organ, Calamints, Rue, Chamomil flowers, Melilot flowers, each a handful; Caraway, Cummin, Dill seeds, each two drams; boyl them in wine for a Fomentation:* then anoint with *Oyl of Rue.*

Or, Take *Cow-dung two pounds, quick Brimstone, Cummin seed, each two ounces; with Honey and Oyl of Dill, make a Cataplasm.* Use for children the said Oyls, *Aqua vitæ*, or dissolve Plaisters in Oyl.

Of

Of Hydrocele or Water-rupture.

It is a tumor in the cod from water: it is sometimes with the Dropsie Ascites, the water is contained between the tunicle *Erythroides* and *Arcon*, or between that and the adjacent membranes or skins, or in the proper skin. There is sometimes a double rupture, when the first water is between the tunicle *Arcon*, and the other in the proper skin. Somtimes wind is joyned as in the Dropsie Ascites, and a fleshy substance growing about the seed vessels, the water lies hid and when the cod is opened, it turns to a malignant Cancer. *Guilh. Fabri. cent. 4. obser. 65 & 67.*

The water is first gathered in the cavity of the belly, and falls into the cods by degrees; it may also fall from the kidnies, or be gathered in the cods by the weakness of the parts, the tumor which is sometimes as big as a head on the right or left side, and when the cod swells on one side only without an external cause, the tumor is in the membrane *Erythroides* that contains the stone, and then the right stone swells not, but the left, because the left kidney is affected *The Causes*

It is from water, when it fluctuates or rumbles, with heavinesse, and the cod shines, if you hold a candle to it. If the stones only swel, the cod is wrinkled: and if the water be within the *Erythroides* tunicle, the tumor is round a little long, and there the stone lies, if the water be without the *Erythroides*, you may feel the stone, and the cod is more stretched. If the humor be in its own tunicle or coat, it is perfect round, and like another stone or testicle. *The Signs.* *Dodoneus obser. 39.*

If it come from the Dropsie Ascites, it is incurable, except the Dropsie original cured. If it be from *The Prognostick.*

from an external cause, it is easily cured. Hydrocele or water-rupture in the left testicle, that comes from a fault in the left kidney, is not cured, except the kidney be hard, and in time the stone corrupts by the water.

The Cure. First, stop the flux of humors. 2. Evacuate that in the cod, and if an Ascites be joyned, cure that first, when the tumor is only in the left testicle, be wary, least being cured, worse Symptoms follow; for if it come from a fault in the left kidney, you must either not meddle with it, or open the cod only in the dependent part to let the water out, this must be done every year. When the fault is not in the kidney, make incision in the upper part of the cod, near the groyns, and take out the water by degrees, as *Fabricius* teacheth.

Fabr. cent. 4. obser. 66.

The water contained in the cods, is either sensibly evacuated by opening it, or insensibly by discussing it, with Fomentations, Cataplasmes, Oyntments, Plaisters. As, Take *Calaminis, Organ, Rue, Chamomil, Melilot flowers, each a handful; Carot seed, Caraway, Cummin, Agnus castus, each half an ounce; bruise them, and boyl them,* let the cod be fomented with a Spunge, and then apply this Cataplasm. Take *Bean flour three ounces, Lineseed and Fœnugreek, Chamomil, Melilot flowers, each an ounce; make a Cataplasm, add Oyl of Chamomil, Rue.* Or,

Take *Snails with the shells bruised four ounces, Bayberries, Sulphur, each two ounces; Goats dung three ounces, with Lixivium make a Cataplasm.* Or use Oyntment of *Agrippa* or *Aregon*, or this Plaster. Take *Wax a pound, Turpentine two ounces and half, Bdellium Ammoniacum, each two ounces; make a Plaister.*

If the water cannot be evacuated insensibly, open

open it with a Lancet, which is safe, and if the water be in the cod onely, *Paul* shews the way, but if it lie between the proper tunicles of the stones, it doth less good: or you may open it with an actual or potential Caustick. *Paulus lib. 6. c. 62. Cels. lib. 7. c. 28.*

If flesh grow with a water-rupture, about the testicles, be wary, for it easily turns to a Cancer, as *Dodonæus* observed: then you must cut the cod, and cut off whatsoever is about the testicle, at the root if it may be: and if the matter be not malignant, you may take it off with Emollients. *In observ. c. 40.*

Some make another sort of rupture, called *Humoralis* or of all humors, except choler, but this may be referred to the other.

Of Sarcocele, or fleshy Hernia.

It is when flesh grows in the cod, about the stones, and swells.

It comes of impure blood that flows plentifully to the part, and by heat is made like flesh: this flux is from a stroke or fall, or an evil cutting for the rupture, and this matter sometimes turns to a Scirrhus. *The Causes*

This fleshy rupture is usually in the right stone, as the water is in the left, because the vessel preparing or seed-vein of the right stone, comes immediately from the hollow vein, and that of the left, from the emulgent.

There is a hard and scirrhous tumor without heat or pain; if there be malignity, there is pricking. Sometimes the water lies so low, that it is taken for a water-rupture, as *Foresius* observed, and you must distinguish carefully. *The Signs. Lib. 27. observ. 25. in scholio.*

If it be old it cannot be cured, but by Chirurgery, and one stone must be cut off. *The Prognostick.*

After Universals, first hinder the increase of *The Cure.*

the

Dioſc. lib. 3. c. 18. the tumor by dryers. If the ſuperfluous fleſh will not be taken off ſo, then cut it off. Some ſay that the pouder of Reſtharrow roots cures the fleſhy rupture taken many months.

Foreſt. 17. obſer. 23. in ſcholio. Some commend theſe outward Medicines. As, Take *Mallows, Pellitory, Chamomil, Melilot flowers, each a handful; Wormwood tops a pugil, boyl them ſoft, add Bean and Orobus flower, each four ounces; Line and Cummin ſeed, each an ounce; with Rhenish-wine, juyce of Coleworts and Honey, make a Cataplaſm.*

Or, Take *Roſes, Myrtles, Sumach, Pomegranate flowers and peels, Cypreſs-nuts, each two drams; Acacia, Allum, each a dram; boyl them in Smiths-water to a pint and half, ad Vinegar two ounces* Or, Take *Horehound, Rue, Chamomil, Melilot flowers, each a handful; Mallows, Pellitory, each half a handful; Miſs of a dead mans skull. Wormwood-tops, each a pugil; boyl them ſoft, add Bean and Orobus flower, each two ounces; Cummin and Cypreſs Nuts, each an ounce; Mummy an ounce and half, Sheeps dung half a pound, with Lixivium, juyce of Coleworts and Honey, make a Cataplaſm.*

If theſe will not cure the tumor which is troubleſom, cut it off on the ſide of the cod, and let the ſtone with the fleſh that grows to it, be drawn out.

Ciſſocele, or varicous Hernia.

This is when like crooked veins, the veſſels containing the ſtones, are dilated, the cauſe is a melancholick humor, and it is in the end of melancholick diſeaſes.

The Signs. Tumor is heedleſs, and it is onely about the veſſels that contain the ſtones, like grapes, there is eaſing when the veſſels are ſtretched.

The Pro-

It is [illegible] cauſe is [illegible]

Prog-

as other melancholick diseases are.

First, purge Melancholy, then prescribe diets, and carry the stones to a frontier. *Fallopius* saith one was cured with that alone. *The Cure.*

Some cure it by Lenitives and Discussers with Oyl of Althea and Linseed, &c. And anoint it with Oyl of Jessamine sweet Almonds or Bdellium four eight dates. Then they bath with Linseed, with Chamomil flowers and Fenugreek and then apply this Cataplasm.

Take *Scropindaria* or *Consound-leaves Bryony, each half a pound; boyl them soft, stamp and ad powder of Chamomil and Melilot flowers, and Dill seed each an ounce; of Orobus two ounces, Bran four ounces, Saffron half a dram, with Oyl of sweet Almonds and Lillies, make a Cataplasm.*

Stones in the Cods.

They are sometimes found, but seldom, as appears by the History that *Jacob Mosle* mentions, which *Schenkius* relates, and in the Observations of *Joachim Camerarius.* *Lib. 4. obser.*

Chap. 8. *Of the Diseases of the Yard: and first of the diseases of the passages of the Yard.*

Vesalius observes that one had two passages in his Yard, at the end thereof one for seed, another for urine. *Platerus* observed the same, and some have had two Yards, but such are not to be cured. *Lib. 5. de corpor. humani Fab. c. 14. Lib 3. observ. ex Platero.*

The crookedness of the Yard.

A crooked Yard is unfit for generation, because

De tumoribus præter nat. c. 50. the seed alwaies ſtaies in the neck of the womb. *Julius Cæſar Arantius* writes of this, and the natural form was acquired by a leaden or ſilver canal wherein it was put, and ſo came to his natural form, and the man got children.

Inflation of the Yard.

This is from wind, either cold or hot, and that which is from water as in a Dropſie, hinders excretion of urin, and doth no other hurt. Foment it with *Mints, Chamomil, Wormwood, Rue, Dill, Lineſeed, Fennel ſeed*; or make a Pultis of them. *Gordonius* uſed *Wormwood, Bran, and Dores-foot boyled in Wine.* If there be heat and pain, uſe not hot things.

Inflammation of the Yard.

If blood flows preternaturally to the Yard, there is an inflammation, but commonly it comes from outward cauſes, too much Venery, or lying with a foul woman, or from a fall, ſtroke, or wound.

It is dangerous, for there is ſwelling, redneſs, heat, and ſometimes a feaver. It is cured as other inflammations. Firſt, bleed and purge, and repel with *Barley meal, red Roſes, Henbane in a Cataplaſm.* In the increaſe, add *Althæa, Mallows and Chamomil.* In the ſtate, *Chamomil flowers, Fænugreek, Lineſeed, Oyl of Lillies and Chamomil.*

Chap. 9. *Of Tumors and Verrucæ or Warts of the Yard.*

Parte 8. ſect. 1. c. 9. THoſe tumors that ſtop the paſſage, are cured if they appear outwardly, as other tumors mentioned.

Ver-

Verrucæ are fleshy excrescences, soft and fungous about the glans, and under the præputice, they are wet, and stink, and increase til the glans cannot be cured; they are usual in the French pox.

The Cure is by tying them at the root with silk, by which the nourishment will not come to them, and then they will fal off: and then sprinkle a little Allum upon the place, and lay a clout dipt in Rose water upon it, or you may cut them off. *Fabricius* tells of a remarkable Wart at the top of the Yard. *Centur. 3. observ. 88*

Chap. 10. *Of the Glans not perforated, or without a hole.*

SOme are born so, and nature opens it, or if there be any sign of the hole, cut it till you come to the passage, and put in a leaden or silver Canal anointed with Oyl of Roses And then use a cicatrizing Liniment to it, till the passages be skined.

Chap. 11. *Of Wounds, Ulcers, Fistula's and Gangrenes of the Yard.*

WOunds of the Yard are dangerous, by reason of bleeding, inflammation and pain. Cure it as other wounds in membranous parts, with Lythargy, Cerus, wash'd Myrrh, Sarcocol, Tutty prepared, Traganth, in pouder; wash and sprinkle it on, or with Oyl of Roses make an Ointment.

Ulcers, Fistulaes, and Gangrenes of the Yard.

Imposthumes and Inflammations turn to Ulcers from a Stroak, Venery, or contagion, or corrupt seed, they sometimes cancerate or gangrene, so that either the whole yard or some part is cut off.

These ulcers are inwardly or outwardly to the passage, they are old or new, sordid or malignant

The signs of the internal (for the outward are manifest) are pain in the passage of urine, and matter going forth before or with it.

The Prognostick. They are dangerous, especially if at the root of the yard, because they are wet, if they are from the pox they are not cured, till it be cured; these often cancerate or gangrenate, so that the yard is cut off

The Cure. Use strong dryers in new ulcers, Aloes in pouder, or Pompholyx, burnt Paper, Dill, or Gourds burnt; if the glans be ulcerated use only dryers. therefore

At first clense with Rose, Plantane water, and Hydromel or Allum water, and then with Wine boyled with Cypress nuts, Pomgranate flowers & Allum, dip clouts in it and wash the yard; then use Sugar of Lead. As, Take *Litharge half an ounce, Lead burnt and washt three drams, Tuty prepared two drams, Aloes a dram and half, dried Pine bark four scruples, Bloodstone a dram, Dill seeds and Gourds burnt, each two scruples; oyl of Roses three drams, with Wax make an Oyntment.* If the Ulcer be old and foul, wash it with Hydromel and Allum. Or,

Take *white Wine four ounces, Plantane and Rose water, each two ounces; flour of Bread half a dram*

dram, burnt Allum a dram, boyl them a little. In virulent Ulcers, use Precipitate, and things mentioned against the French pox.

If there be a Gangrene, See Gangrene. Or, Take *Turpentine washt in Goats beard water six drams, Honey of Roses, syrup of dried Roses, each two drams; Sanguis draconis half a dram, Myrrh half an ounce, Aegyptiacum two scruples.* If it be all over gangrened, cut it off. *Gene. 3. obser. 88.*

An Ulcer in the passage of the Yard.

It comes from an inward Apostumme, or from virulent seed, or sharp urine, or stones that are rough and stop there; there is pain in pissing and matter comes forth first: it differs from an ulcer in the bladder, for then matter is mixed with the urine, and there are scales: they are cured easier in youth, in age seldom or never.

Let the diet be such as opposeth acrimony, as Barley ptisan with sweet Almonds and the great cold seeds: To clense, use Plantane, Horstail water, or of Myrtles or the juyces.

A wonderful Oyntment against a Cancer in the yard. Take *juyce of Brambles, Roses Sorrel, each two ounces; Frankincense, Mastich, each three drams, Litharge of Gold an ounce, Malmsey four ounces juyce of Hemlock three ounces, Aquae vitae four ounces, Verdigrese two drams and half, Vitriol and burnt Allum, each a dram and half; Camphire a dram, oyl of Roses six ounces, boyl all but the Camphire, and with Wax make an Oyntment.*

Chap. 12. *Of Diseases of the Fore-skin or Prepuce.*

Phimosis is when the Prepuce cannot come back: not the Seed let in, *Paraphimosis* is when

when the Prepuce being brought down, cannot be brought to cover the glans again. The first is by birth or an ulcer evil cured, or from a scar or proud flesh: the last is from too much venery or when it is drawn back with violence, so that the glans swels: the first is cured by cutting in a right line, so that the internal and external skin is alike. If the Prepuce grow hard and cannot cover the glans again, *Fallopius* shews the way of cure without cutting; *Paraphimosis* is cured by Emollients, of which *Fabricius*.

Vesl. p. de mirab. gall. c. 84. tab. cent. 5. obser. 57.

Observat. 57.

If these come from unclean venery, beware of Repellents and Coolers least the malignant matter get to the bowels, See *Fabricius* for the cure of it.

In sucking Children they have it, it is from evil diet in the Nurse, by which the sharp humors come to the yard and there cause an itching, the flux of humor is upon the prepuce which is extended and inflamed sometimes. Let the Nurse have a cool thin diet, and be purged and the Infant also with syrup of Roses. Then make this Cataplasm. Take *crums of white bread three ounces, red Roses and Pomegranate flowers, each two ounces; Saffron a scruple fresh Butter an ounce, boyl them in milk, add the yolk of an Egg.*

If it continue Take *Bean flour two ounces, Wormwood, Stœchas, Chamomil, Elder buds, each three drams; Fœnugreek and Caraway seed, each four scruples; boyl them in red Wine to a Cataplasm.*

Sometimes the *Frenum* or Bridle grows to the glans about the hole, and when the yard stands, it is pulled down so that the seed cannot be rightly spent, for the cure, turn in the prepuce and cut the *Frenum* or Bridle, take heed of the veins and arteries; then extend the Prepuce and

and apply a clout with the white of an Egg under it, and then a digestive and drying plaister between the glans and the prepuce least it grow together again, take heed you cut off none of the glans, but rather cut off some of the Prepuce.

Some have a Prepuce so short that it will not cover the whole glans, this doth no hurt.

When the Prepuce grows black from a disease in the yard, divide it where it is black, and use scales of Brass with Honey, if it bleed, use a cautery, if the glans be consumed, use a Leaden pipe to piss through.

Chap. 13. *Of Hermophrodites and change of Sex.*

SOme say there is no Hermophrodite, that is both male and female in one person, and the women that are thought so have only a Nymph grown to be like a yard, but it is without a hole, if you look into them they are all natural, and men that are thought to have a womb, had but a cleft in the privity which pierce not, as *Aristotle* saies they who have two privy members one of the male another of the female, one of them is alwaies of no virtue or efficacy, and the Histories mention no otherwise.

Iul. obsequens & Lycostones varo. lib. 4 anat. 4. De generat. anim. c. 4.

How Hermaphrodites come to be, is hard to say, I shal give my opinion, the making of the parts is to be given to the forming faculty, and the monstrous changes are aferibed to it, therefore it is probable, that if the forming faculty intend a male, and if any thing be objected to the imagination of the privities of a woman, it makes strong impression, and disturbs the form-

ing faculty in its work and blots the male sex: the contrary is when the forming faculty intends a female, and the image of a mans yard is presented to the fancy.

As to change of sex it is not a meer fable, for some women have turn'd men, as ancient Histories mention, but men never turn'd into women, *Cardan* and *Albertus* have written of these things, the last thus. *In one of our time the stones were contained up in the skin, and they seemed like two tips of a womans commodity, and there was a cleft between: but incision was made, and out started a yard and a pair of stones, he married after and got many Children* Schenkius in his Book 4. of Observations hath many such Stories.

de mir. qu. lib. 8. Albert. de anim. tr. 2. c. 3.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK.

THE FOURTEENTH PART.

THE SECOND SECTION.

Of Symptomes in the Privities, and Generation in Men.

Chap. 1. *Of Sterility in Men, and first of the Generation of Seed hurt.*

MANY things are required for generation, but chiefly that the two seeds may be fruitful, that seed may be fruitful, two things are requisite, the matter and the efficient cause The matter is the best blood, especially of the arte-

ries,

ries, and much vital Spirit, these two are put together in the vessels that breed seed. The efficient cause, is the faculty in the parts for generation, namely the preparing vessels, the stones and Parastatæ, to turn the blood and spirit into substance called Seed, therefore they have a Seed-making faculty, which is done only by the natural heat of those parts Therefore when the stones are cut out, there is a great change in the whole body, in strength, and Eunuches are without beards and lust

Therefore seed is unfruitful, from defect of heat in the parts for generation, either when blood and spirits that make seed, are wholly wanting, or not enough; as after great diseases that dry the principal parts, and consume the nourishment of these. Moreover though the matter of the seed be not wanting, it is not made, except it go to the stones, but is drawn to other parts, as in children and creatures gelt, that are therefore fat, because the matter of the seed is turned to fat.

Also if the matter of which seed is, be too hot or too cold, or distempered, the seed is unfruitful.

Also the seed-making faculty of the stones being hurt by a native or acquired distemper, there is sterility; also when the preparing and seed-carrying vessels are ill made, also inchantments and witchcraft cause sterility.

Fern. lib. 6. de part. morb. c. 13.

The Signs. They are to be sought after, which shew diseases in the stones or parts that are to make seed. If there be distemper of the stones, it is known by the signs of distempered stones mentioned: it is a cold distemper, when there is little or no desire

fire of Venery, little pulse, heaviness and sloth, little or no pleasure in spending the seed, it being water-like and crude. There were before cooling causes, or too much Venery, or copulation, or loss of seed before ripe age. A moist distemper is known when the least courtesie from a woman makes them let flie.

The Prognostick.

Sterility is not so bad to the individual person as to the propagation of the spicies, except it cause a Gonorrhæa, and that a Consumption: they that are by nature steril or unfruitful, are incurable.

The Cure.

Direct the Cure at the causes: therefore if it be from a fault in a principal part that seed is not bred, as the heart or liver, amend them. If there be a distemper in the stones, mend that by things proper for the stones, and give things that breed seed simple and compound. Of Compounds. Take *candied Satyrion roots two ounces, Eryngus an ounce, sweet Almonds, Pine and Pistacha-nuts, each half an ounce; Rocket seed, Pepper, Cinnamon, Stags pizzle, each two drams; Diambra a dram, with Sugar make Cakes, or with conserve of Ginger, an Electuary.* Or, Take *Cockes stones dried an ounce. Galangal, Cubebs, each a dram and half; with Sugar as much as all the rest, make a Pouder, give a dram with sweet Wine.*

Or, Take *roots of Satyrion, candied Eryngus, each an ounce; Pine and Pistacha Nuts parched, Hazel nuts, each three ounces; Dates half a pound, Rocket seed and Ash keys, each two drams; long Pepper and white, Cardamoms, Galangal, each an ounce; kernels of the Indian Cacoa-nuts half an ounce, with Sugar make Cakes.* Or, Take *Rocket*

seed

seed a dram, Nettle, Anise, Fennel seed, Ashen keys, each half a dram; Pine-nuts and sweet Almonds, each half an ounce; Cubibs, Cardamoms, each half a dram; Stags pizzle rasped, candied Satyron roots, each half an ounce; Dr. musc. Diambra, each half a scruple; with Sugar dissolved in Balm water, make Cakes. See *Aetius, Avicen, Fen.* 23. *c.* 15, 16. *&c.*

Tenab. 3. *ser.* 3. *c.* 35.

Anoint the Perinæum and Loyns with oyl of Lillies, Mastich, or oyl of Pepper and Nutmegs.

For diet, the yolk of a new laid Egg, with Wine and a little Oyl of sweet Almonds is excellent. Or eat Egs with Wine, Cinnamon, Saffron and Sugar. Sleep long, and in soft beds, be merry, avoid care and sadness, cold meats, and drunkenness, and too much Venery, and Baths, too often bleeding and purging.

Question 1. *Why are the Scythians barren?*

There is a great consent of the brain with the parts for generation, and it is manifest that no part is more hurt by Venery then the brain. And *Aristotle* saith, *That the Seed hath a community with the Brain*; therefore the cause of sterility in the Scythians is great cold, which is in the whole body from much bleeding: for as *Hippocrates* saies, That the Scythians bleed so much in the veins behind the ears, till they sleep from weakness, and they have many issues. And though all that have issues are not barren, yet because there is great consent of the brain with the genitals by the nerves, whereof two great nerves go to the privities, and many branches and arteries, it comes to pass, that by the loss of too much blood,

1. *De generat. ani. c.* 7.

blood, the Spirits, especially vital, leave the blood which administer matter to the animal, so the seed becomes unfruitful and waterish, and this makes them barren.

Question 2. *Whether Eunuchs do engender?*

If seed in the stones doth generate, then certainly the Eunuchs do not generate, because they have none; yet they either have no seed, or such as is unfruitful.

Chap. 2. *Of the impediment in standing of the Yard, and spending of Seed.*

ANother hinderance of generation, is the not right sending of seed into the womb, which is when the Yard will not stand, or when it is short or crooked, or too long. And moreover the seed of the male and the female must be spent both at a time, or there is no conception. The Yard hath arteries all over, and they have holes where they are fastned to the Yard, that they may easily receive the vital Spirits, which make the Yard swell, and grow stiff at the imagination of a fair woman, by which means lust is stir'd up; also the muscles conduce to the erection or standing, not the distention of it. Therefore the erection of the Yard is either diminished, or enlarged, or quite taken away, or depraved; and this is called Impotency.

We have spoken of that impotency which is for want of formation of the Yard, but besides which, men are impotent for three causes, either be-

cause

cause they have no seed, or because there is a palsie in the muscles that lift up the yard, or the seed is little and crude, or the spirits come not to it, so that there can be no erection: of the defect of seed we spake in the Chapter aforegoing.

There is impotency from defect of vital spirits which swell and make stiff the yard, for assoon as the seed begins to swell and move in its vessels to get out, nature sends the vital spirits to the yard, which fill its spungy and porous substance and stretch it. Now spirits are wanting when they are not bred, or when they are sent another way, in long and dayly meditation, fear, shamefac'dness, and too great rejoycing: And the spirits are not received, when the yard is cold, stupid and insensible from benumming causes, so that it feels not the tickling and pricking of the seed; And the palsie of the yard is from the same causes as other palsies, and from inchantment and witchcraft. Besides all these it is requisite that the passages of the seed be right, which are from the stones to the root of the yard.

The Signs. The diseases is discovered by the Patient or his wife, but the causes are to be found out by the signs, if it be from want of seed the signs will shew it, in the last Chapter aforegoing. If it be from coldness of the stones and vessels, the seed is waterish and spent without pleasure. When vital spirits are wanting, the yard will scarce stand, and the heart is sick. If there be a palsie the yard hangs loose and will not stand. If there be straitness in the passages, it is sent with great difficulty. If the yard be ill shaped, it is to be seen. If it be from incantation and witchcraft

the man was fit for the sport before, nor was there any manifest cause that hurt him.

The erection of the yard hurt is bad for married people, and odious to women: cold distemper of the yard from age is not curable: a short yard by nature or otherwise is not cured. If seed be spent by any other hole then the natural, conception is hindered. *The Prognostick.*

Remedies were mentioned for curing the want of seed, a cold distemper is to be cured by hot means mentioned, and with Oyls. As, Take *oyl of Cestus, of the Indian nut, each an ounce; Euphorbium two drams, Musk a dram, Aliptæ moschata a dram and half, with Wax make an Ointment.* *The Cure.*

If there be a node in the yard, use Astringents not Emollients and Discussers. As, Take *water of Pine nuts and Cypress nuts, and Myrtles, each two ounces; dip a cloth in it and wrap the yard in it.* If seed pass another way, cut off the lips of that hole, and cure and heal it, and close it up as a green wound that the seed may pass only by the natural way, if it be spent too soon by reason of the looseness of the passages, use a drying tomentation or the Sulphur baths: thin seed must be made thick, and the heat of the privities increased.

Chap. 3. Of *Lechery, and stiff standing Priapism.*

WE spake *lib.* 1. *part* 2. *c.* 10 of Salacity or Lasciviousness, Satyriasis is a perpetual inclination to lust, and desire of copulation, with erection of the yard, it is called so from

from the Satyres. It is called Priapisme from God *Priapus*, who was alwaies pictured with a standing yard, and it is the stretching of the yard in length and breath, yet these differ: for in Satyriasis there is alwaies a desire, but after the action, the yard doth no longer stand. But in Priapism without any desire of copulation, the yard is stretched out, and so remains after copulation.

The Causes Too much Lechery is from too much blood, and heat of the seedvessels: and if there be sharpness of seed, they are very lecherous. The seed is made sharp and hot by hot meats and spices, also by sharp humors in the seed, or by purging Medicines with spices, as the aromatick Pills.

Plat. obser. lib. 1.

Satyriasis and Priapismus are from vital windy Spirits that fill and stretch the yard, but in Satyriasis that seed swells more, and is sharper by reason of the abundance of vital Spirits, and much wind, as some say.

The Signs. These diseases are never revealed til they bring trouble; sometimes they come from outward causes, as heat of the reins, lying on the back, or Venery forborn, which the patient will declare: if it be from a gross wind, there is a palpitation in the yard.

The Prognostick. Too much Lechery is a filthy vice, and is usual with such as drink wine, and are idle. If Priapism or Satyriasis are with pain that lasteth, they shew either an impostume, or convulsion, or death to be at hand. Some die presently of a convulsion, their belly swels, and they have cold sweats.

The Cure. Lechery in married people, if it come from too much seed, is cured by bleeding: if the humors be sharp, temper and allay them.

To

To prevent the breeding of so much seed, and to quench the heat, give coolers, and such as quench the seed, as Agnus castus seed, leaves of Lettice, Waterlillies, Purslane, Plantane, &c. As, Take *conserve of Mints, Waterlillies, each an ounce and half; of Lettice an ounce, Agnus castus seed a dram, Coral half a dram, with Syrup of Waterlillies make an Electuary*: of which in nocturnal pollutions.

Make Fomentations of Plants, and their Juyces that cool, for the loyns, feet, and privities, adding Vinegar. Or, Take *Oyl of Waterlillies two ounces, juyce of Lettice an ounce and half, Agnus castus seed two scruples: boyl them to the consumption of the juyce, and with Wax make an Oyntment.* Or use *Galen's* Cooler, or Cerot of Sanders, or a Plate of Lead with holes. The last remedy against Lechery, is gelding.

Also abstaining from spices, hot meats and wine, cures Lechery, but especially marriage: lie not in soft beds.

Satyriasis and Priapism are cured alike: if it be from too long abstinence from Venery, use temperate and lawful copulation, take heed of venereal thoughts, and things that provoke lust.

Chap. 4. *Of running of the Reins, and loss of Seed.*

GOnorrhæa or running of the Reins, is a loss of Seed without tickling in the yard without Venery or dreams, and without sense of pleasure.

It is the office of the retentive faculty, to hold the seed so long, till it be cast into the womb by *The Causes*

a venereal action, otherwise it is hurt, either by weakness, or from a fault in the object. It is weakned by a cold and moist distemper, from such humors, or by much eating of fish or fruit, cold bathing. Also from the seed-vessels being weak and loose, so that this cannot contain the seed. It is also hurt by a fault in the object, when it offends in quantity or quality, occult or manifest, when the seed is hot & sharp, or corrupt, or malignant.

In Epilepticks there is loss of seed in the fit, and it is from the hurt of the retentive faculty, and the expulsive provoked, for in that violent motion, the seed-vessels being shaken, cast out the seed.

The Signs. The body and loyns especially decay, there is weakness, and paleness, and hollow eyes. If it be from a cold distemper, there were cold causes: if from the fault in the object, and crude seed, there are signs of crudities in the stones, liver and reins: and the seed comes forth, if a woman do but touch, and without pleasure; there is pain in the loyns. If the seed be sharp, there is a Priapism usually with it, and there are signs of hot stones, liver and reins, and he used hot meats. In a virulent Gonorrhæa the seed stinks, and comes out with pain, it is at first white and yellowish, and after green, stinking and sharp; and the passage of the yard is ulcerated, and there is pain and Dysury, or difficult pissing.

The Prognostick. It is a filthy and dangerous disease, hinders generation, and breeds a Consumption, when the retentive faculty is weakned. It is safer cured at first, except it be from crude and wateriſh seed. In old men when it comes from the French pox, they carry it to their graves. In young men, if you cure the French pox, you cure it.

It

It is divers as the causes are. After universals; if it be from weakness of the retentive faculty, give this Electuary.

Take *Conserve of red Roses two ounces, Coral and Harts horn prepared, each a scruple; Pomegranate flowers two scruples.*

And this Oyntment. Take *Oyl of Roses, Mastich, Mirtles, each an ounce; powder of Pomegranate flowers half a dram with Wax.*

If there be cold with it: Take *Oyl of Mastich, Lentiscus, each an ounce and half; juyce of Mirtles five drams, Spike half a dram, with Wax make an Oyntment.* Use astringent Baths natural or artificial.

If the seed be hot and sharp, give Glysters first, let blood, and purge choler, and then cool thus.

Take *the four great cold Seeds three drams, Purslane and Lettice, each a dram; red Roses a dram and half, Waterlillies half a dram, Gum Tragacanth a dram, make a Powder.* Anoint the Privities, Loyns and Back-bone with Coolers. As, Take *Cerot of Sanders, Oyl of Waterlillies, Oyntment of the Countess, juyce of Nightshade, each an ounce; Camphire half a scruple.*

If the Seed be thin and watrish. Take *Mints, Roman Wormwood, each a handful; Seeds of Agnus castus, Mirtle berries and red Roses, each two drams; boyl them in red Wine, and Sugar.* Or, Take *Conserve of Roses an ounce and half, Amber, red Coral prepared, each a dram; Cloves, Mace, Frankincense, each a scruple; with Syrup of Mirtles, make an Electuary.* Keep a good diet, and eat often Rise milk.

In the Cure of the Gonorrhœa observe, that it is not always crude and watrish seed that flows *Langius.*

Rondel. l. de cur. Metho. 37.

out, but corrupt humors from the whole body, and then give things to correct the crudities of the stomach, and take away Cacochymy.

If the seed be virulent, take heed of astringents, but use driers that resist putrefaction, as Treacle, Mithridate, decoction of Guajacum, and purging decoctions, if there be the French pox use things proper against that. If there be no suspicion of the pox make this pouder. Take *white Amber, Eg-shels hatcht, inner skins of Hens gizzards, Pomegranate seeds, each three drams; red Coral prepared and burnt Hartshorn, each an ounce; Cinnamon two drams, Manus Christi with Pearl as much as all the rest, make a pouder, give it every day, or with syrup of dried Roses make Pills.*

Question. *Whether the word* Gonorrhæa *be proper for all the runnings of the Reins?*

Langius saies there are three sorts. The first is from the heat of the Reins, Liver and Seed-vessels in hairy men full of juyce, that have much seed, and loose it by night in dreams, and lying upon their backs. The second sort is from corruption of salt and crude flegm mixed with a little seed, that comes from the brain by the back and reins, and from the liver by the veins and nerves to the privities, from whence it drops with corroding of the yard: the same is in women, and is called the flegmatick terms. The third kind is that from the French pox or the foul disease, when sleeping or waking they void a white or yellowish matter from the Seed-vessels that eats the yard, stinks, burns, and causeth dysury. This different Gonorrhæa require different cures, the first is done by coolers and dryers, which wil hurt in the second kind of Gonorrhæa

Lib. 2. epist. Epist. 5.

norrhæa, the third is to be cured as the Pox by Guajacum and Mercury.

This Doctrine of *Langius* is true, and the name of Gonorrhæa is not proper for all, for the first is from much hot seed and may be so called, but he omitted that kind that is from the weakness of the seed vessels that may be so called though the seed be crude and thin; for the stones by weakness may breed crudities, as the stomach and the liver.

Chap. 5. *Of Nocturnal Pollution.*

WHen a man unawares looseth his seed in his sleep, it is called a Gonorrhæa, some have this constantly when they but see or think upon a woman, some loose their seed without pleasure or imagination aforegoing.

The immediate cause is the provoking of the expulsive faculty by the plenty or sharpness of the seed, especially in yong men that are hot, and have looser passages and stronger imaginations. *The Causes*

It is known by his relation, it differs from a Gonorrhæa, because this only is at night as *Horace* saies, *The Signs.*

Thou foulst thy sheets by lying on thy back.

But the Gonorrhæa is in the day also.

They that have it often are of an ill habit of body, and they become weak, slender and pale, and if they abstain from venery they are vexed with heat, and are not better for being continent and chast, and when they loose seed in their sleep *The Prognostick.*

...are as if they were in copulation. A nocturnal pollution in the beginning of a disease signifieth much matter and a long disease.

...full body open a vein, take heed of seeding meats, as Pine nuts, Pistachaes, Beans, ...Rapes, Rocket, and strong Wine, use a cool and binding diet, lie upon Willow, Agnus castus, Lettice, Waterlillies, Roses, Violets, never sleep upon the back, use things that dry and bind and diminish seed. As, Take *Purslane and Agnus castus seeds, each half a dram; Plantane and Rue seed, each a dram; Conserve of red Roses two ounces, with syrup of Myrtles make an Electuary.* Or,

Take *Agnus castus seed, Coriander prepared, each two drams; Plantane, Rue, Mints, each a dram; Amber and Coral, each half a dram; Mastich two scruples, make a powder, give a dram, add Sugar of Roses.*

Outwardly, Take *Acrons poudered and whites of Eggs beaten with Rose water, make a Cataplasm for the Pection and the Loyns.* If seed flows when the yard is stiff, use things against Priapism, if it be from wind, use the decoction of Lentiles.

Chap. 6. *Of Symptoms happening in Copulation.*

SOme cannot spend their seed in the time of copulation, though they do in their sleep, the reason is hard to be given, some impute it to bashfulness or strong imagination, *Dantus* will have neither, but saies that the seed vessels cannot be hot by reason of the great moisture with coldness, because the heat is sent outward in copulation;

Lib. de hist mirab. 4. c. 18.

pulation, but the vessels are hotter in sleep. And he commands exercise of the inward parts for the cure, by riding especially, he also gave Castor and all hot and dry meats.

Aëtius hath a History of a yong man that vehemently lusted, but could perform nothing but only farted oftē, he cured him with a good moist diet, *Amatus Lusitanus* hath the same. *Cent. 6. curat. 95. in scholio.*

Mathæus de Gradibus hath another, that could not mount in time of service, but spent his seed, and it was from the great loosnes of the seed vessels, from too much venery, or an old Gonorrhæa, the spirits being dissipated.

Avicen mentions another disease, in them that by often copulation void their seed and dung both at a time, this is from resolution of spirits and of the whole body, whence the adjacent parts wanting spirits, the muscle of the strait gut is relaxed. *Fen. 20. 3. tract. c. 40.*

Chap. 7. *Of strange things voided at the Yard.*

SOme void blood, not from the bladder, but seed vessels, with as much pleasure as seed, and in their sleep, and in time of copulation the cause of which is the opening of the mouths of the spermatick vessels, that make seed of blood, for by often copulation the vessels that contain the seed are exhausted. *Fern. lib. 6. pathol. c. 14. Hollerii scholiogr. ad cap. 52. l. 1. de morb inter.*

It is cured by continency and Astringents that correct the loosnes of the seed vessels as in Chap. 5.

Plutarch reports of a yong man at *Athens* that *Lib. 8. sym. pos. prob. 1.*

that voided a little Serpent with many feet at his yard with much seed.

Chap. 8. *Of pain in the Testicles, and Yard, and itching of the Cods and Prepuce.*

SOmtimes the stones are pained by inflammation or cold air, or an ulcer, or by an outward cause, as contusion or wound.

We shewed the Cure of inflammation and pain from cold: if the stones have been struck, and the pain is great, presently open a vein, and apply things to hinder a flux of humors, as Violets, Roses, Waterlillies, and then use Discussers and Anodynes.

Pain of the Yard.

Is from the same causes, use Fomentations of the Decoctions of Mallows, Althæa, Lineseed, Dill seed, Chamomil, Melilot flowers; or make a Cataplasm of the same, or boyl white Bread in Milk, and add the yolks of Egs and oyl of Roses.

Itching of the Cods, and Prepuce or Fore-skin.

When sharp humors flow to the outside of the Cods or Fore-skin, they ulcerate and breed scales or scabs.

They are cured (after Universals are given) by cleansers, as Ægyptiacum, Bean flower, Orobus and Jesamine seed with Honey. Or with this Ointment of *Bays*.

Take

Take *Ceruss six drams, Sulphur two drams, Opium a scruple, mix them well with Vinegar, and anoint the part.* Or,

Take *white Oyntment with Camphire an ounce, Diapompholigos half an ounce, Litharge of Gold and of Silver, each half a dram; sealed Earth a dram; Chalk two scruples and half, Sublime a scruple, mix them in a leaden Mortar and Pestle of lead.* The last remedy is Salt Ammoniack mixed with Vinegar.

The itch of the Prepuce is taken away with a Decoction of Lentils and Pomegranate peels.

THE

THE THIRD BOOK. THE LAST PART.

Of the outward diſeaſes of the Navel and Belly.

Chap. 1. *Of the opening of the Navel, and the voiding of divers things by it.*

THe Navel-veſſels have their diſeaſes, though they have little ſenſe, but communicate their diſeaſes to the bowels ordained for nouriſhment: therefore we apply Medicines to the Navel, that their vertue may be ſent to the guts and bowels.

Cul-

Childrens navels do bleed, and except they be well tied by the Midwife, they cause death, as *Fabricius* observed in two children of *Cullen*, that bled so violent, that their strength failed, and they died. *Philip. Hechester tetrus dec. 2. obser. medi. casu. 9.*

Fabricius also mentions an Apothecary of *Soledur* that was fat and flegmatick, aged sixty, whose navel opened, and he bled the first day a pint and half, and for two daies after he bled not by drops, but twice in a day with violence, between seven and eight in the morning, and two and three in the afternoon, and once a day he bled at the nose also; so that in eleven daies he bled twenty seven pints, it was in Summer. And he did so again the Summer following, and he used *Spaw waters with great benefit.* *Cent. 1. obser. 52. Centur. 3. obser. 37.*

Sometimes water flows out at the navel, as in a Boy that was cured of a Dropsie, after drinking much water he was at deaths door, and suddenly his navel opened, and spouted out with water, so that if they had not stopt it, he had died, but he was after cured. *Anth. Beniven. de abd. sanat. & morb. cau. c. 12.*

Cardan also mentions excrements or dung that came out at the navel in a Boy of nine years old. *Lib. 18. de subtilit.*

Chap. 2. *Of the Navel-rupture.*

THe navel hath divers tumors called *Exomphali* or starting out of the navel.

It is either from a gut, or the Omentum, or Caule, or wind, or water, or flesh that grows there. The first is called *Enterophalos.* 2. *Epiplomphalos.* 3. *Pneumatomphalos.* 4. From water is called *Hydrerphalos.* 5. From flesh called *Sarcomphalos.* *The Causes*

It

It is from the Navel or Omentum, when the Peritonæum is there loosned or broken by a stroke or fall, leap, or lifting a burden, hard travail, riding, or by wind contained in the belly, &c. Sometimes it is as big as two mens heads, as *Fabricius* records.

Centur. 3. obser. 63.

The Signs. The tumor from the guts, is neither hard nor very soft, and grows bigger when the breath is held and when he lies upon his his back the guts return in with rumbling, and the tumor falls: it is almost the same from the Omentum, onely in this the tumor is softer in one part, broad at the bottom, and narrow at the top. There is no pain when it is prest, the Omentum comes to its place; and if it be from both, the signs are mixed, and the skin is of the same colour as in other parts.

The Prognostick. If new, it is easily cured, and easier in a soft body: but it sometimes turns to an *Ileus* or *Convolvulus*.

The Cure. After purging, use astringents and closers. As, Take *Comfrey roots, Sanicle and Adders tongue, each a dram and half; Mastich, red Coral, Bole, each a dram; red Comfrey an ounce, Cinnamon half a dram, with Syrup of Mirtles make an Electuary.*

Topicks must not be used till the guts or caul are put into their places. Take *Pitch, Mastich, each half an ounce; Sarcocol, Hypocistis, Sanguis Draconis, Aloes, Frankincense, each two drams; powder of Comfrey roots three drams, Misleto of the Oak two drams, with Turpentine, Frankincense, Wax make a Plaister.* Or, Take *powder of Comfrey roots, Sanguis Draconis, each half an ounce; Mastich an ounce, Frankincense, Bole, Cypress-nuts, each half an ounce; Pitch six ounces, with Turpentine and the Pitch melted, and the Powders put in after, make a Plaister.*

Let

Let diet be, in avoiding cold air and wind, and abstaining from windy meats, and roaring, singing, crying, and lifting of burdens: some use incision, but I approve it not.

Some make a Girdle of Linnen about the belly, and lay a Bolster upon the navel, with a bullet or bottom of lint, and this Cerot first laid on. Take *Bole, Sanguis Draconis, Mastich, Sarcocol, each 2 dram; powder of Tiles four drams, Rosin an ounce and half, with whites of Eggs and Wax, make a Cerot.* *Ab Aquapendente de oper. chirurg.*

William Fabricius hath another way of bondage or tying. *Cent. 3. obser. 64.*

Of the watery Navel-rupture.

It is a tumor from water gathered between the Peritonæum and the skin of the belly, sometimes flowing by the navel-vein loosned, and is gathered as in a Dropsie. In infants it is from thin serous milk.

The Signs. It is known by pressing it with the fingers, by which it is neither diminished nor increased, but it maketh a noise, and if a candle be held against it, it shineth.

The Prognostick. In infants it is without danger, if the Nurse be ordained: in men, if it be with a Dropsie, it is dangerous.

The Cure. In infants, see that the milk be not thin, and in men prevent the increase of Serum, and evacuate what is gathered as in a Dropsie. Then use Topicks that dry and discuss: in children, use a Cataplasm of Lambs tongue, and Lentils boyled in men. Take *Lupines an ounce, red Roses, and Chamomil flowers in powder, each half an ounce; Bole two drams, with Wine make a Cataplasm.*

In a stubborn disease make incision, and take out

Paulus Ægi. l. 6. c. 51. out the water by degrees, and then strengthen thus. Take *Organ, Pennyroyal, Betony, Sage, Dill, Chamomil flowers, red Roses, Pomegranate flowers, Myrtle berries, Cypress nuts, boyl them in Wine, and foment with a Sponge*

Of the windy Rupture in the Navil.

It is from much wind gathered in the belly, that drives out the navil as it is in a Tympany.

The Signs. It is soft and yeilds to the finger, and returns again presently, being struck, it makes a noyse.

The Prognostick. If it come from a secret fault in any bowel, it is scarce curable, but it yeilds sometimes to discussers.

The Cure. Use things mentioned in the windy Rupture, as Bags, and discussing Fomentations, If there be any fault in any bowel that sends wind to it, cure that first.

Of the fleshy Rupture of the Navil.

The Causes are the same as in a fleshy Rupture called *Sarcocele*, namely impure blood that flows plentifully to the navil, and turn'd into a substance like flesh: It is known by its hardness and not yeilding to the finger, whether the patient lie down stand or walk, or lie upon his back.

Lib. de abd sanat. & mor. cau. c. 6. For cure, take it off with a Caustick medicine, or with an Iron, and then cure the wound, if it be not cancerous, for then it is incurable, *William Fabricius* hath an example, of three spungy puff-like flesh balls that grew to the navil in a noble man of *Bergen* age twenty five, *See Cent. 5. Obser. 62.*

Chap.

Chap. 3. *Of Inflammation Impofthume and Ulcer of the Navil.*

INflammation is from hot blood that flows thither, which comes by a fall, or ſtroke, or a cut by which the veins and arteries are broken and bleed. Infants have it by crying, or evil lying of the Navil, or from flux of matter to the part.

The Signs are pain and redneſs, and beating, and heat, and there are ſigns of the falling out of the Guts or Cawl, and of other tumors.

It is dangerous, for if it impoſthumate and break, the guts come out, and the child dies.

To cure it, abate the pain and hinder the flux of humors, and diſcuſs that which is there, and digeſt it as in other inflammations of the ſtones and breaſts.

Impoſthumes and Ulcers.

Theſe are from an inflammation, and are deadly when they pierce into the belly and inſect the guts.

Chap. 4. *Of Worms and Stones bred in the Navil.*

John George of *Breneger* writes, That he ſaw a Girl of half a year old that had a Worm in the navil, ſhee was very froward and feaveriſh, the mother ſuſpected worms, and after other things

things not helping, shee ties a live fish to the navil called *Fundulus* or Flounder, and left it twenty four hours, the worm eat up the whole Fish except the bones, and went again into the navil vein, after eight or ten daies the rowlers fell off from the Navil with the bait, the worm followed the bait and fell out of the navil, and could not find the way in again, and was found upon the belly of the child being round and half a foot long shining, and yellowish.

Dr. *Rupert Sculzbepger* hath the like story. And the vulgar women usually suppose, if a child cry, with blew lips, and tos the head to and fro, and there is no sign of another disease, that there is a worm in the navil, to try which, they bind a live fish called *Fundulus* or Flounder to the navil, if it be eaten up, they know the disease, and kill the worm with half a Walnut shel full of Venice Glass finely poudered with bread and Honey.

In pisput. de verm. in homine.

The Author of the Physical definitions, saith that he found stones in the navil, and so saith *Marcellus Donatus.*

Lib. de hist med. mirab. l. 4. c. 30.

An Addition of the cause of Worms being in the Navil.

By the Navil-vein while the Child is in the womb it sucks the nourishment, this is left with some filthy juyce which breeds Worms from the reliques of nourishment, or nature using to send the nourishing humor thither, that humor putrifies after the navil is tied, and cannot get out by reason of thickness, and then the natural heat working, a worm is bred by the same reason, as in other parts or the guts.

Of the cause of the Stone we also say, that the

the matter came thither rather fit to breed a stone then a worm, for things are produced according to the disposition of the matter.

Chap. 5. *Of the wounds of the Navil, and breaking of its Vessels.*

THese are dangerous, as *William Fabricius* saw in a Youth that died of a little wound with a Rapier between the Navil and the small Ribs, the Navil being cut. *Cent* 1. *obs.* 13.

Chap. 6. *Of Diseases of the Peritoneum.*

OF breaking of the Peritonæum at the groyns and navil we have spoken, but it is broken and loosned in other places as *Marcellus Donatus* reports of a Lady that by hard Travail had it broken about the navil, and carried the rupture long without a Truss, so that it is dayly enlarged and the small guts fell into it, so that the meat digested in the stomach, could not be distributed, but every third or fourth day shee vomited all up which shee did eat or drink half concocted, at length there was an inflammation, and the coat of the guts broke with the skin of the belly, and matter came forth two dayes before shee died I saw a woman that from a Rupture of the Peritonæum had a tumor on her side four fingers breadth from the Navil, and *Platerus* saith that a Merchant that *Lib.* 4. *de histor. med. mirab. c.* 3. *Lib.* 3. *obs.*

was gored about the navel by a Bull, and had a feaver, and vomited up his dung, and despaired of life: at length he was cut, by which with difficulty, he thrust in his finger, and put up the guts, and he recovered.

The Cure is as in a Rupture of the navel. The Ancients had many waies, but I think it safest to use Roulers.

Chap. 7. *Of Inflammation of the Muscles, of the Abdomen, and Impostbumes.*

5. *De lo. aff. c. 7. Val. lib. 4. obs. 5.*

THis doth often deceive Physitians, for they take it for an inflammation of the liver, or an impostbume of the same: *Galen* and *Valeriola* say as much.

The Signs.

P. 4. sect. 1. c. 6.

The signs of the inflammation of the liver are mentioned in their place. But if the muscles be inflamed, the colour of the body is not so much changed, the tumor is extended to the shape of the muscle, nor is it round as an inflammation of the liver: if the strait muscles of the belly are inflamed, the tumors are long, and reach over all the belly, the skin cannot so wel be laid hold on, by reason of the stretching. There is redness, especially if the external muscles are affected, and which way soever he lies, they are of the same bigness. If the transverse muscles are affected, the pain is greater and deeper; these muscles are often inflamed, because great vessels pass through them, ascending and descending.

Valeriola cured them thus. First, he let sixteen ounces of blood (for the body was plethorick) from

from the inward vein of the right arm; by this stopt a great flux of blood, but he gave a Clyster first.

After bleeding the pain and tumor abated, and then he ordered this Apozem.

Take *Borage, both Bugloſſes, Succory, Sorrel-roots and all, each a handful; Agrimony, tops of Hops, Fumitory, Docks, Maidenhair, Ceterach, Hyſſop, Fennel, Balm, each half a handful; Melon-ſeeds with the husks bruiſed, half an ounce, Sorrel, Endive, Purſlane, each a dram; Parſley, Smallage, each two ſcruples; Raiſons twenty, Prunes twelve, Liquoriſh ſix drams, Polypody half an ounce, Cordial flowers, Thyme, each two pugils; boyl them in Barley water, to two pints ſtrain and diſſolve Syrup of Roſes, Endive, Compound of the two Roots and Maidenhair, each two ounces and half, with Sugar make a Syrup for four Doſes, with Cinnamon and Sanders, each a dram.*

To Conquer all Infirmities Study my *Sennertus, Platerus, Riverius, Bartholinus* and *Riolanus*, of the laſt Editions.

After Concoction appeared, he gave this to purge choler and flegm. Take *Agarick two drams, Rhubarb a dram and half, Ginger, Shœnanth, Maſtich, Cinnamon, each half a ſcruple; infuſe them in Endive, Bugloſs, and Hyſſop water, and Honey of Roſes a night. Strain and add Electuary of Roſes and Diaphœnicon, each two drams; Syrup of Roſes an ounce, with the decoction of the Apozem mentioned, make a Potion.* The next day he gave a waſhing Clyſter, of Bran, Lineſeed and Melon ſeed, with Catholicon, Oyl of Violets, Honey of Roſes. Then he fomented the tumor thus. Take *Mallows, Althæa roots and all, each a handful; Briony roots half a handful, Wormwood a handful, Organ half a handful, Fœnugreek and Lineſeed, each an ounce; Aniſe and Dill ſeed, each half an ounce; Chamomil, Melilot and Roſemary flowers,*

each a pugil; boil them in two pints of water, and one of Wine, for a Fomentation before meat. Then he used this Ointment. Take *Dialthæa* five ounces, *Plaister of Zachary's Son* two ounces, *Wax, oyl of Lillies*, each an ounce; *Ducks and Hens grease*, each two drams; *Ammoniacum, Bdellium, Mastich*, each four scruples; *Storax Calamite, Benzoin, roots of Orris*, each a dram; with *Wax and Oyl of Orris*, make an Ointment. He used it after the Fomentation, in twelve daies the tumor and pain abated: by these Topicks, and because the belly swelled, he first gave Pills of Hiera, Agarick, Rhubarb, with Senna, and Mastich, and Diagredium. Then he gave the Decoction of China to sweat, and take away the reliques, and applied a Cataplasm to the belly of Cow dung and Goats dung made hot with Vinegar, with Cummin, Aniseed and Dill seed, and a little Turpentine. This was not a pure inflammation, but mixed with gross clammy juyce.

Cent. 2. curer. 35 *Fabricius* hath many stories of these, and adviseth young Chirurgions to be wary in opening great impostthumes, and not to let the matter out at once, but by degrees.

Lib. 1. c. 6. de hist. med. mir. ab. These tumors are sometimes discussed, as *Donatus* writes of an old Weaver, that had a tumor on his yard, that was not in pain when touched, and it vanished with discussing Medicines.

Chap. 8. *Of the Cramp in the Belly.*

Obser. dec. 5. cas. 1. THis disease is seldome, but *Philip Hagstetter* makes mention of it concerning a Jesuite of a dry rough body melancholick, and a middle age

age that had the Cramp in his belly, it began in the muſcles of the abdomen, and ended in the muſcles of the breaſt and Diaphragma. The breaſt was as it were in a Convulſion, and breathed ſhort with difficulty, and in the fit he doted a little, from the hurt of the Diaphragma, that hath a nerve from the brain. There was rumbling in the belly, much wind, a long Hypochondria paſſion, and his ſeed came forth involuntarily.

The Cauſes, are wind or water that gets from the Hypochondrion and Meſentery by the meſeraick arteries, between the Peritonæum and the muſcles of the belly, and twitcheth the membranes, tendons and fibres of the muſcles, and aſcends by the ſame arteries, to the Diaphragma and muſcles of the breaſt.

And becauſe the cauſe is in the Hypochondria, you muſt purge choler and flegm, and expel wind, becauſe of the filth that is in the guts, veins and meſentery, and firſt paſſages, and you muſt refreſh the muſculous and nervous parts, with Anodyne Oyls, and things that diſcuſs wind, and the reſt muſt be as in Hypochondriack Diſeaſes.

Chap. 9. *Of the Tumors of the Belly.*

THe Belly often ſwels from wind or humors or the like. Somtimes according to nature, as in women with child. Somtimes beſides nature, as in a falſe conception or mole: in a Dropſie and Tympany, worms that ſtick in the guts; ſomtimes from hard tumors in the Meſentery and Cawl: if theſe be many, they ſeem to be a Dropſie or with child, of which in their places.

Chap. 10. *Of Wounds in the Belly.*

THey are either final and superficial, or they penetrate to the Peritonæum, and that is sometimes hurt, and some of the bowels come forth, as the Cawl or guts.

The Signs. The wounds of the belly are known by a probe thrust in, but if they have turnings, you may be deceived: and if you pour wine or any liquor in, and it come out again the same way, the wound doth not penetrate.

You may know the bowel that is hurt, if it come forth.

The Prognostick. Wounds in the middle of the belly, are more dangerous then in the sides, by reason of the membranes and nerves there, because also it is hard to be stitched, and the bowels come easier forth: a great wound is more dangerous, a little one is bad enough. And if the guts or Cawl come forth, the air will taint them easily, and then they cannot be put up, and it is deadly.

The Cure. If they penetrate not, they are cured as other fleshy wounds. Use a long and large rouler, beginning at the part opposite to the wound, and make it in form of an X.

If the wound penetrate, and no bowel is hurt, it is cured as other wounds. But first put the parts into their places: but if the wound be too little, so that the guts cannot be put in, because they are puft up, enlarge it a little. If there be nothing fallen, make a stitch as *Galen*, and *Fabricius ab Aqua pendente* teacheth. *6. Meth. c. 1.*

Chap.

Chap. 11. *Of Fistulaes and burning of the Belly.*

FIstula's are easily made above the sides of the Pubes, because the humors easily flow down thither, after wounds, imposthumes and ulcers; by which the guts are often rotten, and the excrements of dung come forth.

When the guts suffer, these Fistula's are hard to be cured. And *Fabricius* saw some cured only with Spaw-waters, seldom by the hand, iron, or fire; they must sit in these Waters in the morning, that they may get into the Fistula's, and so to the guts, and heal them. Or you may make a Bath of Allum, Sulphur and Salt. Outward fistula's are cured by incision. *Par. 2. sec. 2. cap. 9. De oper. chir.*

Of burning of the Belly.

The Ancients burnt the belly for two causes. 1. To amend the moist distemper. 2. To evacuate humors, but they could do neither: therefore it is better to let the patient die, then to kill him.

As for imposthumes of the liver and spleen, which they used to burn for, till they come to it, it seems to me as if they had killed them that were so used.

FINIS.